


**PROPERTY OF
BOARD OF EDUCATION**



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2023 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation



" LENTULUS AD VILLAM SUAM PROPERAVIT "
(See page 207)

LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1909, 1911, BY BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

717.6

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY • PRO-
PRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

FILIOLO · MEO
QUI · ME · NON · SOLUM · DICENDA
SED · ETIAM · TACENDA · DOCUIT
HOC · OPUSCULUM · EST
DEDICATUM

PREFACE

To make the course preparatory to Cæsar at the same time systematic, thorough, clear, and interesting is the purpose of this series of lessons.

The first pages are devoted to a brief discussion of the Latin language, its history, and its educational value. The body of the book, consisting of seventy-nine lessons, is divided into three parts.

Part I is devoted to pronunciation, quantity, accent, and kindred introductory essentials.

Part II carries the work through the first sixty lessons, and is devoted to the study of forms and vocabulary, together with some elementary constructions, a knowledge of which is necessary for the translation of the exercises and reading matter. The first few lessons have been made unusually simple, to meet the wants of pupils not well grounded in English grammar.

Part III contains nineteen lessons, and is concerned primarily with the study of syntax and of subjunctive and irregular verb forms. The last three of these lessons constitute a review of all the constructions presented in the book. There is abundant easy reading matter; and, in order to secure proper concentration of effort upon syntax and translation, no new vocabularies are introduced, but the vocabularies in Part II are reviewed.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers:

The forms are presented in their natural sequence, and are given, for the most part, in the body of the book as well as in a grammatical appendix. The work on the verb is intensive in character, work in other directions being reduced to a minimum while this is going on. The forms of the subjunctive are studied in correlation with the subjunctive constructions.

The vocabulary has been selected with the greatest care, using Lodge's "Dictionary of Secondary Latin" and Browne's "Latin Word List" as a basis. There are about six hundred words, exclusive of proper names, in the special vocabularies, and these are among the simplest and commonest words in the language. More than ninety-five per cent of those chosen are Cæsarian, and of these more than ninety per cent are used in Cæsar five or more times. The few words not Cæsarian are of such frequent occurrence in Cicero, Vergil, and other authors as to justify their appearance here. But teachers desiring to confine word study to Cæsar can easily do so, as the Cæsarian words are printed in the vocabularies in distinctive type. Concrete nouns have been preferred to abstract, root words to compounds and derivatives, even when the latter were of more frequent occurrence in Cæsar. To assist the memory, related English words are added in each special vocabulary. To insure more careful preparation, the special vocabularies have been removed from their respective lessons and placed by themselves. The general vocabulary contains about twelve hundred words, and of these above eighty-five per cent are found in Cæsar.

The syntax has been limited to those essentials which recent investigations, such as those of Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators, have shown to belong properly to the work of the first year. The constructions are presented, as far as possible, from the standpoint of English, the English usage being given first and the Latin compared or contrasted with it. Special attention has been given to the constructions of participles, the gerund and gerundive, and the infinitive in indirect statements. Constructions having a logical connection are not separated but are treated together.

Exercises for translation occur throughout, those for translation into Latin being, as a rule, only half as long as those for translation into English. In Part III a few of the commoner idioms in Cæsar are introduced and the sentences are drawn mainly from that author. From first to last a consistent effort is made to instill a proper regard for Latin word order, the first principles of which are laid down early in the course.

Selections for reading are unusually abundant and are introduced from the earliest possible moment. These increase in number and length as the book progresses, and, for the most part, are made an integral part of the lessons instead of being massed at the end of the book. This arrangement insures a more constant and thorough drill in forms and vocabulary, promotes reading power, and affords a breathing spell between succeeding subjects. The material is drawn from historical and mythological sources, and the vocabulary employed includes but few words not already learned. The book closes with a continued story which recounts the chief incidents in the life of a Roman boy. The last chapters record his experiences in Cæsar's army, and contain much information that will facilitate the interpretation of the Commentaries. The early emphasis placed on word order and sentence structure, the simplicity of the syntax, and the familiarity of the vocabulary, make the reading selections especially useful for work in sight translation.

Reviews are called for at frequent intervals, and to facilitate this branch of the work an Appendix of Reviews has been prepared, covering both the vocabulary and the grammar.

The illustrations are numerous, and will, it is hoped, do much to stimulate interest in the ancient world and to create true and lasting impressions of Roman life and times.

A consistent effort has been made to use simple language and clear explanation throughout.

As an aid to teachers using this book a "Teacher's Manual" has been prepared, which contains, in addition to general suggestions, notes on each lesson.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to the numerous teachers who tested the advance pages in their classes, and, as a result of their experience, have given much valuable aid by criticism and suggestion. Particular acknowledgments are due to Miss A. Susan Jones of the Central High School, Grand Rapids, Michigan; to Miss Clara Allison of the High School at Hastings, Michigan; and to Miss Helen B. Muir and Mr. Orland O. Norris, teachers of Latin in this institution.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
TO THE STUDENT—By way of Introduction	I-4

PART I. THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

ALPHABET, SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT, HOW TO READ LATIN.	5-11
---	------

PART II. WORDS AND FORMS

I-VI. FIRST PRINCIPLES— <i>Subject and Predicate, Inflection, Number, Nominative Subject, Possessive Genitive, Agreement of Verb, Direct Object, Indirect Object, etc.</i> —DIALOGUE . . .	12-24
VII-VIII. FIRST OR <i>Ā</i> -DECLENSION— <i>Gender, Agreement of Adjectives, Word Order</i>	25-30
IX-X. SECOND OR <i>O</i> -DECLENSION—GENERAL RULES FOR DECLENSION— <i>Predicate Noun, Apposition</i> —DIALOGUE . . .	31-35
XI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . . .	36-37
XII. NOUNS IN -ius AND -ium —GERMĀNIA.	38-39
XIII. SECOND DECLENSION (<i>Continued</i>)—Nouns in -er and -ir —ITALIA—DIALOGUE	39-41
XIV. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS	42-43
XV. ABLATIVE DENOTING WITH— <i>Cause, Means, Accompaniment, Manner</i> —THE ROMANS PREPARE FOR WAR . . .	44-46
XVI. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	46-47
XVII. THE DEMONSTRATIVE is , ea , id —DIALOGUE	48-50
XVIII. CONJUGATION—Present, Imperfect, and Future of sum —DIALOGUE	51-53
XIX. PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF amō AND moneō . . .	54-56
XX. IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF amō AND moneō — <i>Meaning of the Imperfect</i> —NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN . . .	56-57
XXI. FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF amō AND moneō —NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN (<i>Concluded</i>)	58-59
XXII. REVIEW OF VERBS— <i>The Dative with Adjectives</i> —CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS	59-61

CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XXIII. PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF regō AND audiō — CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (<i>Concluded</i>)	61-63
XXIV. IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF regō AND audiō — <i>The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs</i>	63-65
XXV. FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF regō AND audiō	65-66
XXVI. VERBS IN -iō — Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of capiō — <i>The Imperative</i>	66-68
XXVII. PASSIVE VOICE — Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of amō and moneō — PERSEUS AND AN- DROMEDA	68-72
XXVIII. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF regō AND audiō — PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (<i>Continued</i>)	72-73
XXIX. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF -iō VERBS — PRESENT PASSIVE INFINI- TIVE AND IMPERATIVE	73-75
XXX. SYNOPSES IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS—THE ABLA- TIVE DENOTING FROM— <i>Place from Which, Sepa- ration, Personal Agent</i>	75-78
XXXI. PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF sum — DIALOGUE	79-81
XXXII. PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS— <i>Meanings of the Perfect</i> —PER- SEUS AND ANDROMEDA (<i>Continued</i>)	81-83
XXXIII. PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICA- TIVE—PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	84-85
XXXIV. REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE—PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (<i>Concluded</i>)	86-87
XXXV. PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE—PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE	88-90
XXXVI. REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS— <i>Prepositions, Yes-or- No Questions</i>	90-93
XXXVII. CONJUGATION OF possum — <i>The Infinitive used as in English—Accusative Subject of an Infinitive— THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA</i>	93-96
XXXVIII. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN— <i>Agreement of the Relative—THE FAITH- LESS TARPEIA (Concluded)</i>	97-101
XXXIX-XLI. THE THIRD DECLENSION—Consonant Stems	101-106
XLII. REVIEW LESSON—TERROR CIMBRICUS	107
XLIII. THIRD DECLENSION— <i>I</i> -Stems	108-110

LESSON	PAGE
XLIV. IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION — GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION — THE FIRST BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE	III-112
XLV. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION — THE ROMANS INVADE THE ENEMY'S COUNTRY.	113-115
XLVI. THE FOURTH OR <i>U</i> -DECLENSION	116-117
XLVII. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE — <i>Place to Which, Place from Which,</i> <i>Place at or in Which, the Locative</i> — Declension of domus — DÆDALUS AND ICARUS	117-121
XLVIII. THE FIFTH OR <i>Ē</i> -DECLENSION — <i>Ablative of Time</i> — DÆDALUS AND ICARUS (<i>Continued</i>)	121-123
XLIX. PRONOUNS — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns — DÆDA- LUS AND ICARUS (<i>Concluded</i>)	123-126
L. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN ipse AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE idem — HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE	126-127
LI. THE DEMONSTRATIVES hic, iste, ille — A GERMAN CHIEF- TAIN ADDRESSES HIS FOLLOWERS — HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (<i>Continued</i>)	128-130
LII. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS — HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (<i>Concluded</i>)	130-132
LIII. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	133-135
LIV. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES — <i>Ablative with</i> <i>Comparatives</i>	135-136
LV. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>Continued</i>) — Declension of plūs	137-138
LVI. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>Concluded</i>) — <i>Ablative of the Measure of Difference</i>	138-139
LVII. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	140-142
LVIII. NUMERALS — <i>Partitive Genitive</i>	142-144
LIX. NUMERALS (<i>Continued</i>) — <i>Accusative of Extent</i> — CÆSAR IN GAUL	144-146
LX. DEPONENT VERBS — <i>Prepositions with the Accusative</i>	146-147

PART III. CONSTRUCTIONS

LXI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — Inflection of the Present — <i>Indicative and Subjunctive Compared</i>	148-151
LXII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE	151-153
LXIII. INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE — <i>Sequence</i> <i>of Tenses</i>	153-155
LXIV. INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNC- TIVE — <i>Substantive Clauses of Purpose</i>	156-159

CONTENTS

xi

LESSON

PAGE

LXV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF possum — <i>Verbs of Fearing</i>	160-161
LXVI. THE PARTICIPLES — Tenses and Declension	161-164
LXVII. THE IRREGULAR VERBS volō , nōlō , mālō — <i>Ablative Absolute</i>	164-166
LXVIII. THE IRREGULAR VERB fiō — <i>Subjunctive of Result</i>	167-168
LXIX. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC — <i>Predicate Accusative</i>	169-171
LXX. CONSTRUCTIONS WITH cum — <i>Ablative of Specification</i>	171-173
LXXI. VOCABULARY REVIEW — <i>Gerund and Gerundive — Predicate Genitive</i>	173-177
LXXII. THE IRREGULAR VERB eō — <i>Indirect Statements</i>	177-180
LXXIII. VOCABULARY REVIEW — THE IRREGULAR VERB ferō — <i>Dative with Compounds</i>	181-183
LXXIV. VOCABULARY REVIEW — <i>Subjunctive in Indirect Questions</i>	183-185
LXXV. VOCABULARY REVIEW — <i>Dative of Purpose or End for Which</i>	185-186
LXXVI. VOCABULARY REVIEW — <i>Genitive and Ablative of Quality or Description</i>	186-188
LXXVII. REVIEW OF AGREEMENT — <i>Review of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative</i>	189-190
LXXVIII. REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE	191-192
LXXIX. REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS	192-193

READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS	194-195
THE LABORS OF HERCULES	196-203
P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY	204-225

APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES

APPENDIX I. TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.	226-260
APPENDIX II. RULES OF SYNTAX	261-264
APPENDIX III. REVIEWS	265-282
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES	283-298
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	299-331
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	332-343
INDEX	344-348

ILLUSTRATIONS IN COLOR

PLATE I

PAGE

"LENTULUS AD VILLAM SUAM PROPERAVIT" . . . *Frontispiece*

By E. Forti, Rome. From a facsimile colored under the
direction of the artist.

PLATE II

"STABIANA PORTA URBEM INGRESSI SUNT" 52

By E. Forti, Rome. From a facsimile colored under the
direction of the artist.

PLATE III

CAPTIVI INTERROGANTUR 148

By Edmund H. Garrett, Boston. From an original painting
in oil.

PLATE IV

"ECCE CAESAR NUNC TRIUMPHAT" 212

By Edmund H. Garrett, Boston. From an original painting
in oil.

MAP

ITALIA ANTIQUA 1



LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

What is Latin? If you will look at the map of Italy on the opposite page, you will find near the middle of the peninsula and facing the west coast a district called Latium,¹ and Rome its capital. The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the ancient Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language far beyond its original boundaries. As the English of to-day is not quite the same as that spoken two or three hundred years ago, so Latin was not always the same at all times, but changed more or less in the course of centuries. The sort of Latin you are going to learn was in use about two thousand years ago. And that period has been selected because the language was then at its best and the greatest works of Roman literature were being produced. This period, because of its supreme excellence, is called the Golden Age of Roman letters.

The Spread of Latin. For some centuries after Rome was founded, the Romans were a feeble and insignificant people, their territory was limited to Latium, and their existence constantly threatened by warlike neighbors. But after the third century before Christ, Rome's power grew rapidly. She conquered all Italy, then reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally ruled over the whole ancient world. The empire thus established lasted for more than four

¹ Pronounce *Lă'shĕ-ŭm*.

hundred years. The importance of Latin increased with the growth of Roman power, and what had been a dialect spoken by a single tribe became the universal language. Gradually the language changed somewhat, developing differently in different countries. In Italy it has become Italian, in Spain Spanish, and in France French. All these nations, therefore, are speaking a modernized form of Latin.

The Romans and the Greeks. In their career of conquest the Romans came into conflict with the Greeks. The Greeks were inferior to the Romans in military power, but far superior to them in culture. They excelled in art, literature, music, science, and philosophy. Of all these pursuits the Romans were ignorant until contact with Greece revealed to them the value of education and filled them with the thirst for knowledge. And so it came about that while Rome conquered Greece by force of arms, Greece conquered Rome by force of her intellectual superiority and became her schoolmaster. It was soon the established custom for young Romans to go to Athens and to other centers of Greek learning to finish their training, and the knowledge of the Greek language among the educated classes became universal. At the same time many cultured Greeks — poets, artists, orators, and philosophers — flocked to Rome, opened schools, and taught their arts. Indeed, the preëminence of Greek culture became so great that Rome almost lost her ambition to be original, and her writers vied with each other in their efforts to reproduce in Latin what was choicest in Greek literature. As a consequence of all this, the civilization and national life of Rome became largely Grecian, and to Greece she owed her literature and her art.

Rome and the Modern World. After conquering the world, Rome impressed her language, laws, customs of living, and modes of thinking upon the subject nations, and they became Roman; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since. Latin continued to live, and the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that burned steadily through the dark ages that followed the downfall of the Roman Empire. Latin was the common language of scholars and remained so even down to the days of Shakespeare. Even yet it is

more nearly than any other tongue the universal language of the learned. The life of to-day is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Cæsar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, much unlike men of to-day.

Latin and English. Do you know that more than half of the words in the English dictionary are Latin, and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day? How has this come about? In the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans. The Normans spoke French — which, you remember, is descended from Latin — and spread their language to a considerable extent over England, and so Norman-French played an important part in the formation of English and forms a large proportion of our vocabulary. Furthermore, great numbers of almost pure Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and every new scientific discovery is marked by the addition of new terms of Latin derivation. Hence, while the simpler and commoner words of our mother tongue are Anglo-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon forms the staple of our colloquial language, yet in the realms of literature, and especially in poetry, words of Latin derivation are very abundant. Also in the learned professions, as in law, medicine, and engineering, a knowledge of Latin is necessary for the successful interpretation of technical and scientific terms.

Why study Latin? The foregoing paragraphs make it clear why Latin forms so important a part of modern education. We have seen that our civilization rests upon that of Greece and Rome, and that we must look to the past if we would understand the present. It is obvious, too, that the knowledge of Latin not only leads to a more exact and effective use of our own language, but that it is of vital importance and of great practical value to any one preparing for a literary or professional career. To this it may be added that the study of Latin throws a flood of light upon the structure of language in general and lays an excellent foundation for all grammatical study.

Finally, it has been abundantly proved that there is no more effective means of strengthening the mind than by the earnest pursuit of this branch of learning.

Review Questions. Whence does Latin get its name? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? Was Latin always the same? What sort of Latin are we to study? Describe the growth of Rome's power and the spread of Latin. What can you say of the origin of Italian, French, and Spanish? How did the ancient Greeks and Romans compare? How did Greece influence Rome? How did Rome influence the world? In what sense are we Romans still? What did Latin have to do with the formation of English? What proportion of English words are of Latin origin, and what kind of words are they? Why should we study Latin?

PART I

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English except that it has no *w* and no *j*.

2. The vowels, as in English, are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The other letters are consonants.

3. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the value of a consonant and is called *I consonant*.

Thus in *Iū-li-us* the first *i* is a consonant, the second a vowel.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS¹

4. Latin was not pronounced like English. The Romans at the beginning of the Christian era pronounced their language substantially as described below.

5. The vowels have the following sounds:

VOWELS ²	LATIN EXAMPLES
<i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i>	<i>hāc, stās</i>
<i>ă</i> like the first <i>a</i> in <i>aha'</i> , never as in <i>hat</i>	<i>ă'-măt, că'-nās</i>
<i>ē</i> as in <i>they</i>	<i>tē'-lă, mē'-tă</i>
<i>ě</i> as in <i>met</i>	<i>tě'-nět, měr'-cēs</i>
<i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i>	<i>sěr'-tī, prā'-tī</i>

¹ N.B. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in this section is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.

² Long vowels are marked *-*, short ones *˘*.

VOWELS

ĩ as in *bit*ō as in *holy*ǒ as in *wholly*, never as in *hot*ū as in *rude*, or as *oo* in *boot*ŭ as in *full*, or as *oo* in *foot*

LATIN EXAMPLES

sĩ'-tĩs, bĩ'-bĩ

Rō'-mă, ō'-rĩs

mǒ'-dǒ, bǒ'-nōs

ū'-mōr, tū'-bēr

ŭt, tū'-tŭs

NOTE. It is to be observed that there is a decided difference in sound, except in the case of *a*, between the long and the short vowels. It is not merely a matter of *quantity* but also of *quality*.

6. In **diphthongs** (two-vowel sounds) both vowels are heard in a single syllable.

DIPHTHONGS

ae as *ai* in *aisle*au as *ou* in *out*ei as *ei* in *eight*eu as *ě'ōō* (a short *e* followed by a short *u* in one syllable)oe like *oi* in *toil*ui like *ō'ĩ* (a short *u* followed by a short *i* in one syllable. Cf. English *we*)

LATIN EXAMPLES

tae'-dae

gau'-dēt

hei

seu

foe'-dŭs

cui, huic

NOTE. Give all the vowels and diphthongs their proper sounds and do not slur over them in unaccented syllables, as is done in English.

7. **Consonants** are pronounced as in English, except that

CONSONANTS

c is always like *c* in *cat*, never as in *cent*g is always like *g* in *get*, never as in *gem*i consonant is always like *y* in *yes*n before *c*, *qu*, or *g* is like *ng* in *sing* (compare the sound of *n* in *anchor*)qu, gu, and sometimes su before a vowel have the sound of *qw*, *gw*, and *sw*.

Here *u* has the value of consonant *v* and is not counted a vowel

s is like *s* in *sea*, never as in *ease*t is always like *t* in *native*, never as in *nation*

LATIN EXAMPLES

că'-dō, cĩ'-bŭs, cē'-nă

gě'-mō, gĩg'-nō

iăm, iō'-cŭs

ăn'-cō-ră (ang'-ko-ra)

ĩn'-quĩt, quĩ, lĩn'-guă,

săn'-guĩs, suă'-dē-ō

rō'-să, ĩs

ră'-tĩ-ō, nă'-tĩ-ō

CONSONANTS

v is like *w* in *wine*, never as in *vine*
x has the value of two consonants (*cs* or *gs*)
 and is like *x* in *extract*, not as in *exact*
bs is like *ps* and **bt** like *pt*
ch, **ph**, and **th** are like *c*, *p*, *t*

LATIN EXAMPLES

vī'-nŭm, **vīr**
ĕx'-trā, **ĕx-āc'-tŭs**
ŭrbs, **ŏb-tŭ'-nĕ-ŏ**
pŭl'-chĕr, **Phoe'-bĕ**, **thĕ-ā'-trŭm**

a. In combinations of consonants give each its distinct sound. Doubled consonants should be pronounced with a slight pause between the two sounds. Thus pronounce *tt* as in *rat-trap*, not as in *rattle*; *pp* as in *hop-pole*, not as in *upper*. Examples, **mĭt'-tŏ**, **Āp'pĭ-ŭs**, **bĕl'-lŭm**.

SYLLABLES

8. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. Thus **aes-tā'-tĕ** has three syllables, **au-dĭ-ĕn'-dŭs** has four.

a. Two vowels with a consonant between them never make one syllable, as is so often the case in English. Compare English *inside* with Latin **in-sĭ'-dĕ**.

9. Words are divided into syllables as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second. Thus **ā-mā'-bĭ-lĭs**, **mĕ-mŏ'-rĭ-ā**, **ĭn-tĕ'-rĕ-ā**, **ā'-bĕst**, **pĕ-rĕ'-gĭt**.¹

2. Combinations of two or more consonants:

a. A consonant followed by *l* or *r* goes with the *l* or *r*. Thus **pŭ'-blĭ-cŭs**, **ā'-grĭ**.

EXCEPTION. Prepositional compounds of this nature, as also *ll* and *rr*, follow rule *b*. Thus **āb'-lŭ-ŏ**, **āb-rŭm'-pŏ**, **ĭl'-lĕ**, **fĕr'-rŭm**.

b. In all other combinations of consonants the first consonant goes with the preceding vowel.² Thus **māg'-nŭs**, **ĕ-gĕs'-tās**, **vĭc-tŏ'-rĭ-ā**, **hŏs'-pĕs**, **ān'-nŭs**, **sŭ-bāc'-tŭs**.

3. The last syllable of a word is called the *ul'-ti-ma*; the one next to the last, the *pe-nult'*; the one before the penult, the *an'-te-pe-nult'*.

¹ In writing and printing it is customary to divide the parts of a compound, as *inter-eā*, *ab-est*, *sub-actus*, *per-ēgit*, contrary to the correct phonetic rule.

² The combination *nct* is divided *nc-t*, as *fŭnc-tŭs*, *sānc-tŭs*.

10.

EXERCISE

Divide the words in the following passage into syllables and pronounce them, placing the accent as indicated :

Vādē ād förmícām, Ō pīgēr, ēt cōnsidērā vīās ēiūs ēt dīscē sāpiēntiām : quae cūm nōn hābēāt dūcēm nēc praecēptōrēm nēc prīncipēm, pārat īn aestātē cibūm sibi ēt cōngregāt īn mēssē quōd cōmēdāt.

[Go to the ant, thou sluggard ; consider her ways, and be wise : which, having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer and gathereth her food in the harvest.]

QUANTITY

11. The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is the time it takes to pronounce it. Correct pronunciation and accent depend upon the proper observance of quantity.

12. Quantity of Vowels. Vowels are either long (—) or short (◡). In this book the long vowels are marked. Unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or *h* ; as pŏ-ē'-ta, trā'-hō.

2. A vowel is short before *nt* and *nd*, before final *m* or *t*, and, except in words of one syllable, before final *l* or *r*. Thus a'-mānt, a-mān'-dus, a-mā'-bām, a-mā'-bāt, a'-ni-māl, a'-mŏr.

3. A vowel is long before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*. Thus īn'-fe-rō, re'-gēns, sān'-xī, sānc'-tus.

4. Diphthongs are always long, and are not marked.

13. Quantity of Syllables. Syllables are either long or short, and their quantity must be carefully distinguished from that of vowels.

1. A syllable is short,

a. If it ends in a short vowel ; as ā'-mō, pī'-grī.

NOTE. In final syllables the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant. Thus the word mē-mŏ'-rī-ām contains four short syllables. In the first three a short vowel ends the syllable, in the last the short vowel is followed by a final consonant.

2. A syllable is long,

a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as **cū'-rō**, **poe'-nae**, **aes-tā'-te**.

b. If it ends in a consonant which is followed by another consonant, as **cor'-pus**, **mag'-nus**.

NOTE. The vowel in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly. Thus in **ter'-ra**, **in'-ter**, the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In words like **saxum** the first syllable is long because *x* has the value of two consonants (*cs* or *gs*).

3. In determining quantity *h* is not counted a consonant.

NOTE. Give about twice as much time to the long syllables as to the short ones. It takes about as long to pronounce a short vowel plus a consonant as it does to pronounce a long vowel or a diphthong, and so these quantities are considered equally long. For example, it takes about as long to say **cūr'-rō** as it does **cū'-rō**, and so each of these first syllables is long. Compare **mōl'-lis** and **mō'-lis**, **ā-mīs'-sī** and **ā-mī'-sī**.

ACCENT

14. Words of two syllables are accented on the first, as **mēn'-sa**, **Cae'-sar**.

15. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long. If the penult is short, accent the antepenult. Thus **mo-nē'-mus**, **re'-gi-tur**, **a-gri'-co-la**, **a-man'-dus**.

NOTE. Observe that the position of the accent is determined by the length of the *syllable* and not by the length of the vowel in the syllable. (Cf. § 13. 2, Note.)

16. Certain little words called *enclitics*,¹ which have no separate existence, are added to and pronounced with a preceding word. The most common are **-que**, *and*; **-ve**, *or*; and **-ne**, the question sign. The syllable before an enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its quantity. Thus **populus'que**, **dea'que**, **rēgna've**, **audit'ne**.

¹ Enclitic means *leaning back*, and that is, as you see, just what these little words do. They cannot stand alone and so they lean back for support upon the preceding word.

HOW TO READ LATIN

17. To read Latin well is not so difficult, if you begin right. Correct habits of reading should be formed now. Notice the quantities carefully, especially the quantity of the penult, to insure your getting the accent on the right syllable. (Cf. § 15.) Give every vowel its proper sound and every syllable its proper length. Then bear in mind that we should read Latin as we read English, in phrases rather than in separate words. Group together words that are closely connected in thought. No good reader halts at the end of each word.

18. Read the stanzas of the following poem by Longfellow, one at a time, first the English and then the Latin version. The syllables inclosed in parentheses are to be slurred or omitted to secure smoothness of meter.

EXCELSIOR [HIGHER]!¹

The shades of night were falling fast,
As through an Alpine village passed
A youth, who bore, 'mid snow and ice,
A banner with the strange device,
 Excelsior!

Cadēbant noctis umbrae, dum
Ībat per vīcum Alpicum
Gelū nivequ(e) adolēscēns,
Vēxillum cum signō ferēns,
 Excelsior!

His brow was sad; his eye beneath,
Flashed like a falchion from its sheath,
And like a silver clarion rung
The accents of that unknown tongue,
 Excelsior!

Frōns trīstis, micat oculus
Velut ē vāgīnā gladius;
Sonantque similēs tubae
Accentūs lingu(ae) incognitae,
 Excelsior!

In happy homes he saw the light
Of household fires gleam warm and bright;
Above, the spectral glaciers shone,
And from his lips escaped a groan,
 Excelsior!

In domibus videt clārās
Focōrum lūcēs calidās;
Relūcet glaciēs ācris,
Et rumpit gemitūs labrīs,
 Excelsior!

"Try not the Pass!" the old man said;
"Dark lowers the tempest overhead,

Dīcit senex, "Nē trānseās!
Suprā nigrēscit tempestās;

¹ Translation by C. W. Goodchild in *Praeco Latinus*, October, 1898.

The roaring torrent is deep and wide!"
And loud that clarion voice replied,
Excelsior!

At break of day, as heavenward
The pious monks of Saint Bernard
Uttered the oft-repeated prayer,
A voice cried through the startled air,
Excelsior!

A traveler, by the faithful hound,
Half-buried in the snow was found,
Still grasping in his hand of ice
That banner with the strange device,
Excelsior!

There in the twilight cold and gray,
Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay,
And from the sky, serene and far,
A voice fell, like a falling star,
Excelsior!

Lātus et altus est torrēns."
Clāra vēnīt vōx respondēns,
Excelsior!

Iam lūcēscēbat, et frātrēs
Sānctī Bernardī vigilēs
Ōrābant precēs solitās,
Cum vōx clāmāvit per aurās,
Excelsior!

Sēmi-sepultus viātor
Can(e) ā fīdō reperītur,
Comprēndēns pugnō gelidō
Illud vēxillum cum signō,
Excelsior!

Iacet corpus exanimū
Sed lūce frīgidā pulchrū;
Et caelō procul exiēns
Cadit vōx, ut stella cadēns,
Excelsior!

PART II

WORDS AND FORMS

LESSON I

FIRST PRINCIPLES

19. Subject and Predicate. 1. Latin, like English, expresses thoughts by means of sentences. A sentence is a combination of words that expresses a thought, and in its simplest form is the statement of a single fact. Thus,

Galba is a farmer
Galba est agricola

The sailor fights
Nauta pugnat

In each of these sentences there are two parts :

SUBJECT	{	<i>Galba</i> Galba <i>The sailor</i> Nauta	PREDICATE	{	<i>is a farmer</i> est agricola <i>fights</i> pugnat
---------	---	---	-----------	---	---

2. The subject is that person, place, or thing about which something is said, and is therefore a *noun* or some word which can serve the same purpose.

a. Pronouns, as their name implies (*pro*, "instead of," and *noun*), often take the place of nouns, usually to save repeating the same noun, as, *Galba is a farmer; he is a sturdy fellow.*

3. The predicate is that which is said about the subject, and consists of a verb with or without modifiers.

a. A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) concerning a person, place, or thing.

20. The Object. In the two sentences, *The boy hit the ball* and *The ball hit the boy*, the same words are used, but the meaning is different, and depends upon the order of the words. The **doer** of the act, that about which something is said, is, as we have seen above, the **subject**. **That to which something is done** is the **direct object** of the verb. *The boy hit the ball* is therefore analyzed as follows:

SUBJECT	PREDICATE
<i>The boy</i>	<i>hit the ball</i> (verb) (direct object)

a. A verb whose action passes over to the object directly, as in the sentence above, is called a **transitive verb**. A verb which does not admit of a direct object is called **intransitive**, as, *I walk, he comes*.

21. The Copula. The verb *to be* in its different forms — *are, is, was*, etc. — does not tell us anything about the subject; neither does it govern an object. It simply connects the subject with the word or words in the predicate that possess a distinct meaning. Hence it is called the **copula**, that is, the *joiner* or *link*.

22. In the following sentences pronounce the Latin and name the *nouns, verbs, subjects, objects, predicates, copulas*:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>America est patria mea</i>
<i>America is fatherland my</i> | 2. <i>Agricola filiam amat</i>
<i>(The) farmer (his) daughter loves</i> |
| 3. <i>Filia est Iūlia</i>
<i>(His) daughter is Julia</i> | 4. <i>Iūlia et agricola sunt in insulā</i>
<i>Julia and (the) farmer are on (the) island</i> |
| 5. <i>Iūlia aquam portat</i>
<i>Julia water carries</i> | 6. <i>Rosam in comīs habet</i>
<i>(A) rose in (her) hair (she) has</i> |
| 7. <i>Iūlia est puella pulchra</i>
<i>Julia is (a) girl pretty</i> | 8. <i>Domina filiam pulchram habet</i>
<i>(The) lady (a) daughter beautiful has</i> |

a. The sentences above show that Latin does not express some words which are necessary in English. First of all, *Latin has no article the or a*; thus *agricola* may mean *the farmer, a farmer, or simply farmer*. Then, too, the personal pronouns, *I, you, he, she*, etc., and the possessive pronouns, *my, your, his, her*, etc., are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them.

LESSON II

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

23. Inflection. Words may change their forms to indicate some change in sense or use, as, *is, are; was, were; who, whose, whom; farmer, farmer's; woman, women*. This is called **inflection**. The inflection of a noun, adjective, or pronoun is called its **declension**, that of a verb its **conjugation**.

24. Number. Latin, like English, has two numbers, singular and plural. In English we usually form the plural by adding *-s* or *-es* to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending of the word. Compare

Naut-a pugnat	<i>The sailor fights</i>
Naut-ae pugnant	<i>The sailors fight</i>

25. RULE. *Nouns that end in -a in the singular end in -ae in the plural.*

26. Learn the following nouns so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English. Write the plural of each.

agri'cola , <i>farmer</i> (agriculture) ¹	fuga , <i>flight</i> (fugitive)
aqua , <i>water</i> (aquarium)	iniū'ria , <i>wrong, injury</i>
causa , <i>cause, reason</i>	lūna , <i>moon</i> (lunar)
do'mina , <i>lady of the house,</i> <i>mistress</i> (dominate)	nauta , <i>sailor</i> (nautical)
filia , <i>daughter</i> (filial)	puel'la , <i>girl</i>
fortū'na , <i>fortune</i>	silva , <i>forest</i> (silvan)
	terra , <i>land</i> (terrace)

27. Compare again the sentences

Nauta pugna-t	<i>The sailor fights</i>
Nautae pugna-nt	<i>The sailors fight</i>

In the first sentence the verb **pugna-t** is in the third person singular, in the second sentence **pugna-nt** is in the third person plural.

¹ The words in parentheses are English words related to the Latin. When the words are practically identical, as **causa**, *cause*, no comparison is needed.

28. RULE. Agreement of Verb. *A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject.*

29. RULE. *In the conjugation of the Latin verb the third person singular active ends in -t, the third person plural in -nt. The endings which show the person and number of the verb are called personal endings.*

30. Learn the following verbs and write the plural of each. The personal pronouns *he, she, it*, etc., which are necessary in the inflection of the English verb, are not needed in the Latin, because the personal endings take their place. Of course, if the verb's subject is expressed we do not translate the personal ending by a pronoun; thus **nauta pugnāt** is translated *the sailor fights*, not *the sailor he fights*.

ama-t	he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love (amity, amiable)
labō'ra-t	" " " labors, is laboring, does labor
nūntia-t ¹	" " " announces, is announcing, does announce
porta-t	" " " carries, is carrying, does carry (porter)
pugna-t	" " " fights, is fighting, does fight (pugnacious)

31.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. The daughter loves, the daughters love. 2. The sailor is carrying, the sailors carry. 3. The farmer does labor, the farmers labor. 4. The girl is announcing, the girls do announce. 5. The ladies are carrying, the lady carries.

II. 1. Nauta pugnāt, nautae pugnant. 2. Puella amat, puellae amant. 3. Agricola portat, agricolae portant. 4. Filia labōrat, filiae labōrant. 5. Nauta nūntiat, nautae nūntiant. 6. Dominae amant, domina amat.

¹ The *u* in nūntiō is long by exception. (Cf. § 12. 2.)



DOMINA

LESSON III

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

32. Declension of Nouns. We learned above (§§ 19, 20) the difference between the subject and object, and that in English they may be distinguished by the order of the words. Sometimes, however, the order is such that we are left in doubt. For example, the sentence *The lady her daughter loves* might mean either that the lady loves her daughter, or that the daughter loves the lady.

1. If the sentence were in Latin, no doubt could arise, because the subject and the object are distinguished, not by the order of the words, but by the endings of the words themselves. Compare the following sentences :

Domina filiam amat	}	<i>The lady loves her daughter</i>
Filiam domina amat		
Amat filiam domina		
Domina amat filiam		
Filia dominam amat	}	<i>The daughter loves the lady</i>
Dominam filia amat		
Amat dominam filia		
Filia amat dominam		

a. Observe that in each case the subject of the sentence ends in *-a* and the object in *-am*. The *form* of the noun shows how it is used in the sentence, and the order of the words has no effect on the essential meaning.

2. As stated above (§ 23), this change of ending is called **declension**, and each different ending produces what is called a **case**. When we decline a noun, we give all its different cases, or changes of endings. In English we have three cases, — nominative, possessive, and objective; but, in nouns, the nominative and objective have the same form, and only the possessive case shows a change of ending, by adding *'s* or the apostrophe. The interrogative pronoun, however, has the fuller declension, *who ? whose ? whom ?*

33. The following table shows a comparison between English and Latin declension forms, and should be thoroughly memorized :

ENGLISH CASES		LATIN CASES		
Declension of <i>who?</i>	Name of case and use	Declension of <i>domina</i> and translation	Name of case and use	
Who?	Nominative — case of the subject	do'min-a <i>the lady</i>	Nominative — case of the subject	SINGULAR
Whose?	Possessive — case of the possessor	domin-ae <i>the lady's of the lady</i>	Genitive — case of the possessor	
Whom?	Objective — case of the object	domin-am <i>the lady</i>	Accusative — case of the direct object	
Who?	Nominative — case of the subject	domin-ae <i>the ladies</i>	Nominative — case of the subject	PLURAL
Whose?	Possessive — case of the possessor	domin-ā'rum <i>the ladies' of the ladies</i>	Genitive — case of the possessor	
Whom?	Objective — case of the object	domin-ās <i>the ladies</i>	Accusative — case of the direct object	

When the nominative singular of a noun ends in **-a**, observe that

- a. The nominative plural ends in **-ae**.
- b. The genitive singular ends in **-ae** and the genitive plural in **-ārum**.
- c. The accusative singular ends in **-am** and the accusative plural in **-ās**.
- d. The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending.

34. EXERCISE

Pronounce the following words and give their general meaning. Then give the number and case, and the use of each form. Where the same form stands for more than one case, give all the possible cases and uses.

1. Silva, silvās, silvam. 2. Fugam, fugae, fuga. 3. Terrārum, terrae, terrās. 4. Aquās, causam, lūnās. 5. Filiae, fortūnae, lūnae. 6. Iniūriās, agricolārum, aquārum. 7. Iniūriarum, agricolae, puellās. 8. Nautam, agricolās, nautās. 9. Agricolam, puellam, silvārum.

LESSON IV

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

35. We learned from the table (§ 33) that the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond, in general, to the nominative, possessive, and objective in English, and that they are used in the same way. This will be made even clearer by the following sentence:

Filia agricolae nautam amat, the farmer's daughter (or the daughter of the farmer) loves the sailor

What is the subject? the direct object? What case is used for the subject? for the direct object? What word denotes the possessor? In what case is it?

36. RULE. Nominative Subject. *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?*

37. RULE. Accusative Object. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?*

38. RULE. Genitive of the Possessor. *The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?*



DIANA SAGITTAS PORTAT ET FERAS NECAT .

39.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. 1. Diāna est dea. 2. Lātōna est dea. 3. Diāna et Lātōna sunt deae. 4. Diāna est dea lūnae. 5. Diāna est filia Lātōnae. 6. Lātōna Diānam amat. 7. Diāna est dea silvārum. 8. Diāna silvam amat. 9. Diāna sagittās portat. 10. Diāna ferās silvae necat. 11. Ferae terrārum pugnant.

For the order of words imitate the Latin above.

II. 1. The daughter of Latona does love the forests. 2. Latona's daughter carries arrows. 3. The farmers' daughters do labor. 4. The farmer's daughter loves the waters of the forest. 5. The sailor is announcing the girls' flight. 6. The girls announce the sailors' wrongs. 7. The farmer's daughter labors. 8. Diana's arrows are killing the wild beasts of the land.

40.

CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin. The answers may be found in the exercises preceding.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Quis est Diāna? | 4. Quis silvam amat? |
| 2. Cuius filia est Diāna? | 5. Quis sagittās portat? |
| 3. Quis Diānam amat? | 6. Cuius filiae labōrant? |

LESSON V

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

41. The Dative Case. In addition to the relationships between words expressed by the nominative, genitive (possessive), and accusative (objective) cases, there are other relationships, to express which in English we use such words as *from, with, by, to, for, in, at*.¹

Latin, too, makes frequent use of such prepositions; but often it expresses these relations without them by means of case forms which

¹ Words like *to, for, by, from, in, etc.*, which define the relationship between words, are called **prepositions**.

English does not possess. One of the cases found in the Latin declension and lacking in English is called the *dā'tive*.

42. When the nominative singular ends in **-a**, the dative singular ends in **-ae** and the dative plural in **-is**.

NOTE. Observe that the *genitive singular*, the *dative singular*, and the *nominative plural* all have the same ending, **-ae**; but the uses of the three cases are entirely different. The general meaning of the sentence usually makes clear which case is intended.

a. Form the dative singular and plural of the following nouns: **fuga, causa, fortūna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina**.

43. The Dative Relation. The dative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *to, towards, for*.

These prepositions are often used in English in expressions of motion, such as *She went to town, He ran towards the horse, Columbus sailed for America*. In such cases the dative is not used in Latin, as *motion through space* is foreign to the dative relation. But the dative is used to denote that *to* or *towards which* a benefit, injury, purpose, feeling, or quality is directed, or that *for which* something serves or exists.

a. What dative relations do you discover in the following?

The teacher gave a prize to John because he replied so promptly to all her questions — a good example for the rest of us. It is a pleasure to us to hear him recite. Latin is easy for him, but it is very hard for me. Some are fitted for one thing and others for another.

44. The Indirect Object. Examine the sentence

Nauta fugam nūntiat, the sailor announces the flight

Here the verb, **nūntiat**, governs the direct object, **fugam**, in the accusative case. If, however, we wish to mention the persons **to whom** the sailor announces the flight, as, *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers*, the verb will have two objects:

1. Its direct object, *flight (fugam)*
2. Its indirect object, *farmers*

According to the preceding section, *to the farmers* is a relation covered by the dative case, and we are prepared for the following rule:

45. RULE. Dative Indirect Object. *The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative.*

a. The indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

46. We may now complete the translation of the sentence *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers*, and we have

Nauta agricolis fugam nūtiat

47.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

Point out the direct and indirect objects and the genitive of the possessor.

I. 1. Quis nautis pecūniam dat? 2. Filiae agricolae nautis pecūniam dant. 3. Quis fortūnam pugnae nūtiat? 4. Galba agricolis fortūnam pugnae nūtiat. 5. Cui domina fābulam nārrat? 6. Filiae agricolae domina fābulam nārrat. 7. Quis Diānae corōnam dat? 8. Puella Diānae corōnam dat quia Diānam amat. 9. Dea lūnae sagittās portat et ferās silvārum necat. 10. Cuius victōriam Galba nūtiat? 11. Nautae victōriam Galba nūtiat.

Imitate the word order of the preceding exercise.

II. 1. To whom do the girls give a wreath? 2. The girls give a wreath to Julia, because Julia loves wreaths. 3. The sailors tell the ladies¹ a story, because the ladies love stories. 4. The farmer gives his (§ 22. a) daughter water. 5. Galba announces the cause of the battle to the sailor. 6. The goddess of the moon loves the waters of the forest. 7. Whose wreath is Latona carrying? Diana's.

¹ Observe that in English the indirect object often stands without a preposition *to* to mark it, especially when it precedes the direct object.

LESSON VI

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

48. The Ablative Case. Another case, lacking in English but found in the fuller Latin declension, is the *ab'la-tive*.

49. When the nominative singular ends in **-a**, the ablative singular ends in **-ā** and the ablative plural in **-īs**.

a. Observe that the final **-ā** of the nominative is short, while the final **-ā** of the ablative is long, as,

Nom. filiā

Abl. filiā

b. Observe that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

c. Form the ablative singular and plural of the following nouns: **fuga, causa, fortūna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina.**

50. The Ablative Relation. The ablative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *from, with, by, at, in*. It denotes

1. That from which something is separated, from which it starts, or of which it is deprived — generally translated by *from*.

2. That with which something is associated or by means of which it is done — translated by *with* or *by*.

3. The place where or the time when something happens — translated by *in* or *at*.

a. What ablative relations do you discover in the following?

In our class there are twenty boys and girls. Daily at eight o'clock they come from home with their books, and while they are at school they study Latin with great zeal. In a short time they will be able to read with ease the books written by the Romans. By patience and perseverance all things in this world can be overcome.

51. Prepositions. While, as stated above (§ 41), many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.

52. RULE. Object of a Preposition. *A noun governed by a preposition must be in the Accusative or Ablative case.*

53. Prepositions denoting the ablative relations *from, with, in, on,* are naturally followed by the ablative case. Among these are

\bar{a} ¹ or ab , <i>from, away from</i>	cum , <i>with</i>
dē , <i>from, down from</i>	in, in, on
\bar{e} ¹ or ex , <i>from, out from, out of</i>	

1. *Translate into Latin, using prepositions.* In the water, on the land, down from the forest, with the fortune, out of the forests, from the victory, out of the waters, with the sailors, down from the moon.

54. Adjectives. Examine the sentence

Puella parva bonam deam amat, *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In this sentence **parva** (*little*) and **bonam** (*good*) are not nouns, but are descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called *adjectives*,² and they are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

You can tell by its ending to which noun an adjective belongs. The ending of **parva** shows that it belongs to **puella**, and the ending of **bonam** that it belongs to **deam**. Words that belong together are said to agree, and the belonging-together is called *agreement*. Observe that *the adjective and its noun agree in number and case*.

55. Examine the sentences

Puella est parva, *the girl is little*

Puella parva bonam deam amat, *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In the first sentence the adjective **parva** is separated from its noun by the verb and stands in the predicate. It is therefore called a *predicate adjective*. In the second sentence the adjectives **parva** and

¹ \bar{a} and \bar{e} are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** and **ex** are used before either vowels or consonants.

² *Pick out the adjectives in the following:* "When I was a little boy, I remember that one cold winter's morning I was accosted by a smiling man with an ax on his shoulder. 'My pretty boy,' said he, 'has your father a grindstone?'—'Yes, sir,' said I.—'You are a fine little fellow,' said he. 'Will you let me grind my ax on it?'"

bonam are closely attached to the nouns **puella** and **deam** respectively, and are called *attributive adjectives*.

a. Pick out the attributive and the predicate adjectives in the following :

Do you think Latin is hard? Hard studies make strong brains. Lazy students dislike hard studies. We are not lazy.

56.

DIALOGUE

JULIA AND GALBA

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. Quis, Galba, est Diāna?

G. Diāna, Iūlia, est pulchra dea lūnae et silvārum.

I. Cuius filia, Galba, est Diāna?

G. Lātōnae filia, Iūlia, est Diāna.

I. Quid Diāna portat?

G. Sagittās Diāna portat.

I. Cūr Diāna sagittās portat?

G. Diāna sagittās portat, Iūlia, quod malās ferās silvae magnae necat.

I. Amatne Lātōna filiam?

G. Amat, et filia Lātōnam amat.

I. Quid filia tua parva portat?

G. Corōnās pulchrās filia mea parva portat.

I. Cui filia tua corōnās pulchrās dat?

G. Diānae corōnās dat.

I. Quis est cum filiā tuā? Estne sōla?

G. Sōla nōn est; filia mea parva est cum ancillā meā.

a. When a person is called or addressed, the case used is called the *vocative* (Latin *vocāre*, "to call"). *In form the vocative is regularly like the nominative.* In English the name of the person addressed usually stands first in the sentence. *The Latin vocative rarely stands first.* Point out five examples of the vocative in this dialogue.

b. Observe that questions answered by *yes* or *no* in English are answered in Latin by repeating the verb. Thus, if you wished to answer in Latin the question *Is the sailor fighting?* **Pugnatne nauta?** you would say **Pugnat**, *he is fighting*, or **Nōn pugnat**, *he is not fighting*.

LESSON VII

THE FIRST OR \bar{A} -DECLENSION

57. In the preceding lessons we have now gone over all the cases, singular and plural, of nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-a**. All Latin nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-a** belong to the First Declension. It is also called the \bar{A} -Declension because of the prominent part which the vowel **a** plays in the formation of the cases. We have also learned what relations are expressed by each case. These results are summarized in the following table:

CASE	NOUN	TRANSLATION	USE AND GENERAL MEANING OF EACH CASE
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	do'min-a	<i>the lady</i>	The subject
<i>Gen.</i>	domin-ae	<i>of the lady, or the lady's</i>	The possessor of something
<i>Dat.</i>	domin-ae	<i>to or for the lady</i>	Expressing the relation <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> , especially the indirect object
<i>Acc.</i>	domin-am	<i>the lady</i>	The direct object
<i>Abl.</i>	domin-ā	<i>from, with, by, in, the lady</i>	Separation (<i>from</i>), association or means (<i>with, by</i>), place where or time when (<i>in, at</i>)
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	domin-ae	<i>the ladies</i>	The same as the singular
<i>Gen.</i>	domin-ā'rum	<i>of the ladies, or the ladies'</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	domin-īs	<i>to or for the ladies</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	domin-ās	<i>the ladies</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	domin-īs	<i>from, with, by, in, the ladies</i>	

58. **The Base.** That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection and to which the terminations are added is called the **base**.

Thus, in the declension above, **domin-** is the base and **-a** is the termination of the nominative singular.

59. Write the declension of the following nouns, separating the base from the termination by a hyphen. Also give them orally.

pugna, terra, lūna, ancil'la, corō'na, īn'sula, silva

60. **Gender.** In English, names of living beings are either masculine or feminine, and names of things without life are neuter. This is called **natural gender**. Yet in English there are some names of things to which we refer as if they were feminine; as, "Have you seen my yacht? *She* is a beauty." And there are some names of living beings to which we refer as if they were neuter; as, "Is the baby here? No, the nurse has taken *it* home." Some words, then, have a gender quite apart from sex or real gender, and this is called **grammatical gender**.

Latin, like English, has three genders. Names of males are usually masculine and of females feminine, but *names of things have grammatical gender and may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter*. Thus we have in Latin the three words, **lapis**, a stone; **rūpēs**, a cliff; and **saxum**, a rock. **Lapis** is masculine, **rūpēs** feminine, and **saxum** neuter. The gender can usually be determined by the ending of the word, and *must always be learned*, for without knowing the gender it is impossible to write correct Latin.

61. **Gender of First-Declension Nouns.** Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. Thus **silva** is feminine, but **nauta**, sailor, and **agricola**, farmer, are masculine.

62.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

I. 1. Agricola cum filiā in casā habitat. 2. Bona filia agricolae cēnam parat. 3. Cēna est grāta agricolae¹ et agricola bonam filiam laudat. 4. Deinde filia agricolae gallinās ad cēnam vocat. 5. Gallinae filiam agricolae amant. 6. Malae filiae bonās cēnās nōn parant. 7. Filia agricolae est grāta dominae. 8. Domina in īnsulā magnā habitat. 9. Domina bonae puellae parvae pecūniam dat.

¹ Note that the relation expressed by the dative case covers that *to which a feeling is directed*. (Cf. § 43.)

- II. 1. Where does the farmer live? 2. The farmer lives in the small cottage. 3. Who lives with the farmer? 4. (His) little daughter lives with the farmer. 5. (His) daughter is getting (**parat**) a good dinner for the farmer. 6. The farmer praises the good dinner. 7. The daughter's good dinner is pleasing to the farmer.



What Latin words are suggested by this picture?

63.

CONVERSATION

Answer the questions in Latin.

1. Quis cum agricolā in casā habitat?
2. Quid bona filia agricolae parat?
3. Quem agricola laudat?
4. Vocatne filia agricolae gallinās ad cēnam?
5. Cuius filia est grāta dominae?
6. Cui domina pecūniam dat?

LESSON VIII

FIRST DECLENSION (*Continued*)

64. We have for some time now been using adjectives and nouns together, and you have noticed an agreement between them in *case* and in *number* (§ 54). They agree also in *gender*. In the phrase *silva magna*, we have a feminine adjective in *-a* agreeing with a feminine noun in *-a*.

65. RULE. **Agreement of Adjectives.** *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66. Feminine adjectives in *-a* are declined like feminine nouns in *-a*, and you should learn to decline them together as follows:

NOUN		ADJECTIVE	
<i>domina</i> (base <i>domin-</i>), f., <i>lady</i>		<i>bona</i> (base <i>bon-</i>), <i>good</i>	
		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>do'mina</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dominae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dominae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dominam</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>-am</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dominā</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>-ā</i>
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dominae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dominā'rum</i>	<i>bonā'rum</i>	<i>-ārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dominīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dominās</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>-ās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dominīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>

a. In the same way decline together *puella mala*, the bad girl; *ancil'la parva*, the little maid; *fortū'na magna*, great fortune.

67. The words *dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter, take the ending *-ābus* instead of *-īs* in the *dative and ablative plural*. Note the *dative and ablative plural* in the following declension:

dea bona (bases de- bon-)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	dea bona	deae bonae
<i>Gen.</i>	deae bonae	deā'rum bonā'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	deae bonae	deā'bus bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	deam bonam	deās bonās
<i>Abl.</i>	deā bonā	deā'bus bonīs

a. In the same way decline together **filia parva**.

68. Latin Word Order. The order of words in English and in Latin sentences is not the same.

In English we arrange words in a fairly fixed order. Thus, in the sentence *My daughter is getting dinner for the farmers*, we cannot alter the order of the words without spoiling the sentence. We can, however, throw emphasis on different words by speaking them with more force. Try the effect of reading the sentence by putting special force on *my*, *daughter*, *dinner*, *farmers*.

In Latin, where the office of the word in the sentence is shown by its *ending* (cf. § 32. 1), and not by its *position*, the order of words is more free, and *position* is used to secure the same effect that in English is secured by emphasis of voice. To a limited extent we can alter the order of words in English, too, for the same purpose. Compare the sentences

I saw a game of football at Chicago last November (normal order)
Last November I saw a game of football at Chicago
 At Chicago, last November, I saw a game of **football**

1. In a Latin sentence the most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the *middle*. Generally the *subject* is the most important word, and is placed *first*; usually the *verb* is the next in importance, and is placed *last*. The other words of the sentence stand between these two in the order of their importance. Hence the normal order of words — that is, where no unusual emphasis is expressed — is as follows:

subject — modifiers of the subject — indirect object — direct object — adverb — verb

Changes from the normal order are frequent, and are due to the desire for throwing emphasis upon some word or phrase. *Notice the order of the*

Latin words when you are translating, and imitate it when you are turning English into Latin.

2. Possessive pronouns and modifying genitives normally stand after their nouns. When placed before their nouns they are emphatic, as **filia mea**, *my daughter*; **mea filia**, *my daughter*; **casa Galbae**, *Galba's cottage*; **Galbae casa**, *Galba's cottage*.

Notice the variety of emphasis produced by writing the following sentence in different ways:

Filia mea agricolis cēnam parat (normal order)

Mea filia agricolis parat cēnam (*mea* and *cēnam* emphatic)

Agricolis filia mea cēnam parat (*agricolis* emphatic)

3. An adjective placed before its noun is more emphatic than when it follows. When great emphasis is desired, the adjective is separated from its noun by other words.

Filia mea casam parvam nōn amat (*parvam* not emphatic)

Filia mea parvam casam nōn amat (*parvam* more emphatic)

Parvam filia mea casam nōn amat (*parvam* very emphatic)

4. Interrogative words usually stand first, the same as in English.

5. The copula (as **est**, **sunt**) is of so little importance that it frequently does not stand last, but may be placed wherever it sounds well.

69.

EXERCISE

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

Note the order of the words in these sentences and pick out those that are not normal in position and hence are unusually emphatic.

1. Longae nōn sunt tuae viae. 2. Suntne tubae novae in meā casā? Nōn sunt. 3. Quis lātā in silvā habitat? Diāna, lūnae clārae pulchra dea, lātā in silvā habitat. 4. Nautae altās et lātās amant aquās. 5. Quid ancilla tua portat? Ancilla mea tubam novam portat. 6. Ubi sunt Lesbia et Iūlia? In tuā casā est Lesbia et Iūlia est in meā. 7. Estne Italia lāta terra? Longa est Italia, nōn lāta. 8. Cui Galba agricola fābulam novam nārrat? Filiabus dominae clārae fābulam novam nārrat. 9. Clāra est īnsula Sicilia. 10. Quem laudat Lātōna? Lātōna laudat filiam.

~~~~~

First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, §§ 502-505

~~~~~

LESSON IX

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

70. Latin nouns are divided into five declensions.

The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. This should always be learned along with the nominative and the gender.

71. The nominative singular of nouns of the Second or *O*-Declension ends in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**, or **-um**. The genitive singular ends in **-ī**.

72. Gender. Nouns in **-um** are neuter. The others are regularly masculine.

73. Declension of nouns in -us and -um. Masculines in **-us** and neuters in **-um** are declined as follows:

dominus (base **domin-**), m., *master* **pīlum** (base **pīl-**), n., *spear*

SINGULAR

		TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	do'minus ¹	-us	pīlum	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	dominī	-ī	pīlī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	dominō	-ō	pīlō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	dominum	-um	pīlum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	dominō	-ō	pīlō	-ō
<i>Voc.</i>	domine	-e	pīlum	-um

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	dominī	-ī	pīla	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	dominō'rum	-ōrum	pīlō'rum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dominīs	-īs	pīlīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dominōs	-ōs	pīla	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	dominīs	-īs	pīlīs	-īs

¹ Compare the declension of **domina** and of **dominus**.

a. Observe that the masculines and the neuters have the same terminations excepting in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The vocative singular of words of the second declension in **-us** ends in **-ē**, as **domine**, *O master*; **serve**, *O slave*. This is the most important exception to the rule in § 56. *a.*

74. Write side by side the declension of **domina**, **dominus**, and **pīlum**. A comparison of the forms will lead to the following rules, which are of great importance because they apply to all five declensions:

a. The vocative, with a single exception (see § 73. *b.*), is like the nominative. That is, the vocative singular is like the nominative singular, and the vocative plural is like the nominative plural.

b. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in **-a**.

c. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in **-m** and the accusative plural in **-s**.

d. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

e. Final **-i** and **-o** are always *long*; final **-a** is *short*, except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

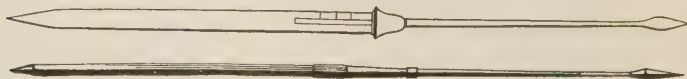
75. Observe the sentences

Lesbia est bona, *Lesbia is good*

Lesbia est ancilla, *Lesbia is a maidservant*

We have learned (§ 55) that **bona**, when used, as here, in the predicate to describe the subject, is called a *predicate adjective*. Similarly a *noun*, as **ancilla**, used in the *predicate* to define the subject is called a **predicate noun**.

76. RULE. Predicate Noun. *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*



PILA

77.

DIALOGUE

GALBA AND MARCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

G. Quis, Mārce, est
lēgātus gerēns (*bearing*)
pilum et tubam?

M. Lēgātus, Galba,
est Sextus.

G. Ubi Sextus habitat?¹

M. In oppidō Sextus
cum filiābus habitat.

G. Amantne oppidānī
Sextum?

M. Amant oppidānī
Sextum et laudant, quod
magnā cum cōstantiā
pugnat.

G. Ubi, Mārce, est
ancilla tua? Cūr nōn
cēnam parat?

M. Ancilla mea, Galba,
equō lēgātī aquam et
frūmentum dat.

G. Cūr nōn servus Sextī equum dominī cūrat?

M. Sextus et servus ad mūrū oppidi properant. Oppidānī bellum
parant.²



LEGATUS GERENS PILUM ET TUBAM

¹ *habitat* is here translated *does live*. Note the *three* possible translations of the Latin present tense:

<i>habitat</i>	{	<i>he lives</i> <i>he is living</i> <i>he does live</i>
----------------	---	---

Always choose the translation which makes the best sense.

² Observe that the verb *parō* means not only *to prepare* but also *to prepare for*, and governs the accusative case.

78.

CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Ubi filiae Sexti habitant? | 4. Cuius equum ancilla cūrat? |
| 2. Quem oppidānī amant et laudant? | 5. Quis ad mūrum cum Sexto properat? |
| 3. Quid ancilla equo lēgātī dat? | 6. Quid oppidānī parant? |

LESSON X

SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

79. We have been freely using feminine adjectives, like **bona**, in agreement with feminine nouns of the first declension and declined like them. *Masculine* adjectives of this class are declined like **dominus**, and *neuters* like **pīlum**. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are therefore declined as follows:

MASCULINE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE

dominus bonus, *the good master*

BASES **domin-** **bon-**

NEUTER NOUN AND ADJECTIVE

pīlum bonum, *the good spear*

BASES **pīl-** **bon-**

SINGULAR

		TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	do'minus bonus	-us	pīlum bonum	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	dominī bonī	-ī	pīlī bonī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	dominō bonō	-ō	pīlō bonō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	dominum bonum	-um	pīlum bonum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	dominō bonō	-ō	pīlō bonō	-ō
<i>Voc.</i>	domine bone	-e	pīlum bonum	-um

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	dominī bonī	-ī	pīla bona	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	dominō'rum bonō'rum	-ōrum	pīlō'rum bonō'rum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dominīs bonīs	-īs	pīlīs bonīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dominōs bonōs	-ōs	pīla bona	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	dominīs bonīs	-īs	pīlīs bonīs	-īs

Decline together *bellum longum, equus parvus, servus malus, mŭrus altus, frŭmentum novum.*

80. Observe the sentences

Lesbia ancilla est bona, Lesbia, the maidservant, is good

Filia Lesbiae ancillae est bona, the daughter of Lesbia, the maidservant, is good

Servus Lesbiam ancillam amat, the slave loves Lesbia, the maidservant

In these sentences *ancilla*, *ancillae*, and *ancillam* denote the class of persons to which *Lesbia* belongs and explain who she is. Nouns so related that the second is only another name for the first and explains it are said to be in apposition, and are always in the same case.

81. RULE. **Apposition.** *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

82.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. *Patria servī bonī, vicus servōrum bonōrum, bone popule.*
 2. *Populus oppidī magnī, in oppidō magnō, in oppidis magnīs.*
 3. *Cum pilīs longīs, ad pila longa, ad mŭrōs lātōs.* 4. *Lēgāte male, amici lēgātī malī, cēna grāta dominō bonō.* 5. *Frŭmentum equōrum parvōrum, domine bone, ad lēgātōs clārōs.* 6. *Rhēnus est in Germaniā, patriā meā.* 7. *Sextus lēgātus pilum longum portat.* 8. *Oppidānī bonī Sextō lēgātō clārō pecūniam dant.* 9. *Malī servī equum bonum Mārcī dominī necant.* 10. *Galba agricola et Iūlia filia bona labōrant.* 11. *Mārcus nauta in insulā Siciliā habitat.*

II. 1. Wicked slave, who is your friend? Why does he not praise Galba, your master? 2. My friend is from (ex) a village of Germany, my fatherland. 3. My friend does not love the people of Italy. 4. Who is caring for¹ the good horse of Galba, the farmer? 5. Mark, where is Lesbia, the maidservant? 6. She is hastening¹ to the little cottage² of Julia, the farmer's daughter.

¹ See footnote 1, p. 33. Remember that *cŭrat* is transitive and governs a direct object.
² Not the dative. (Cf. § 43.)

LESSON XI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

83. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the three genders as follows :

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

a. Write the declension and give it orally *across the page*, thus giving the three genders for each case.

b. Decline *grātus*, -a, -um; *malus*, -a, -um; *altus*, -a, -um; *parvus*, -a, -um.

84. Thus far the adjectives have had the same terminations as the nouns. However, the agreement between the adjective and its noun does *not* mean that they must have the same termination. If the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions, the terminations will, in many cases, not be the same. For example, **nauta**, *sailor*, is masculine and belongs to the first declension. The masculine form of the adjective **bonus** is of the second declension. Consequently, *a good sailor* is **nauta bonus**. So, *the wicked farmer* is **agricola malus**. Learn the following declensions :

85. **nauta bonus** (bases **naut- bon-**), m., *the good sailor*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	nauta	bonus	nautae	bonī
<i>Gen.</i>	nautae	bonī	nautārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nautae	bonō	nautīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nautam	bonum	nautās	bonōs
<i>Abl.</i>	nautā	bonō	nautīs	bonīs
<i>Voc.</i>	nauta	bone	nautae	bonī

86. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Est¹ in vicō nauta bonus. 2. Sextus est amicus nautae bonī. 3. Sextus nautae bonō galeam dat. 4. Populus Rōmānus nautam bonum laudat. 5. Sextus cum nautā bonō praedam portat. 6. Ubi, nauta bone, sunt arma et tēla lēgātī Rōmānī? 7. Nautae bonī ad bellum properant. 8. Fāma nautārum bonōrum est clāra. 9. Pugnae sunt grātae nautīs bonīs. 10. Oppidānī nautās bonōs cūrant. 11. Cūr, nautae bonī, malī agricolae ad Rhēnum properant? 12. Malī agricolae cum bonīs nautīs pugnant.

II. 1. The wicked farmer is hastening to the village with (his) booty. 2. The reputation of the wicked farmer is not good. 3. Why does Galba's daughter give arms and weapons to the wicked farmer? 4. Lesbia invites the good sailor to dinner. 5. Why is Lesbia with the good sailor hastening from the cottage? 6. Sextus, where is my helmet? 7. The good sailors are hastening to the toilsome battle. 8. The horses of the wicked farmers are small. 9. The Roman people give money to the good sailors. 10. Friends care for the good sailors. 11. Whose friends are fighting with the wicked farmers?

¹ Est, beginning a declarative sentence, *there is*.



GALEAE

LESSON XII

NOUNS IN *-IUS* AND *-IUM*

87. Nouns of the second declension in *-ius* and *-ium* end in *-ī* in the genitive singular, *not* in *-iī*, and the accent rests on the penult; as, **fili** from **filius** (*son*), **praesi'dī** from **praesi'dium** (*garrison*).

88. Proper names of persons in *-ius*, and **filius**, end in *-ī* in the vocative singular, *not* in *-ě*, and the accent rests on the penult; as, **Vergi'li**, *O Vergil*; **fili**, *O son*.

a. Observe that in these words the vocative and the genitive are alike.

89. **praesidium** (base **praesidi-**), n., *garrison* **filius** (base **fili-**), m., *son*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	praesidium	filius
<i>Gen.</i>	praesi'dī	fili
<i>Dat.</i>	praesidiō	filiō
<i>Acc.</i>	praesidium	filium
<i>Abl.</i>	praesidiō	filiō
<i>Voc.</i>	praesidium	fili

The plural is regular. Note that the *-i-* of the base is lost only in the genitive singular, and in the vocative of words like **filius**.

Decline together **praesidium parvum**; **filius bonus**; **fluvius longus**, *the long river*; **proelium clārum**, *the famous battle*.

90.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Frūmentum bonae terrae, gladi malī, bellī longī. 2. Cōstantia magna, praesidia magna, clāre Vergi'li. 3. Male serve, Ō clārum oppidum, male fili, filiī malī, fili malī. 4. Fluvī longī, fluvī longī, fluvī-ōrum longōrum, fāma praesi'dī magnī. 5. Cum gladiis parvīs, cum deābus clārīs, ad nautās clārōs. 6. Multōrum proeliōrum, praedae magnae, ad proelia dūra.

GERMĀNIA

II. Germānia, patria Germānōrum, est clāra terra. In Germāniā sunt fluvii multi. Rhēnus magnus et lātus fluvius Germāniae est. In silvis lātis Germāniae sunt ferae multae. Multi Germānī in oppidis magnis et in vicis parvis habitant et multi sunt agricolae boni. Bella Germānōrum sunt magna et clāra. Populus Germāniae bellum et 5 proelia amat et saepe cum finitimis pugnat. Fluvius Rhēnus est finitimus oppidis¹ multis et clāris.

LESSON XIII

SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

91. Declension of Nouns in *-er* and *-ir*. In early Latin all the masculine nouns of the second declension ended in *-os*. This *-os* later became *-us* in words like *servus*, and was dropped entirely in words with bases ending in *-r*, like *puer*, *boy*; *ager*, *field*; and *vir*, *man*. These words are therefore declined as follows:

92. *puer*, m., *boy* *ager*, m., *field* *vir*, m., *man*
 BASE *puer-* BASE *agr-* BASE *vir-*

SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	———
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

¹ Dative with *finitimus*. (See § 43.)

a. The vocative case of these words is like the nominative, following the general rule (§ 74. *a*).

b. The declension differs from that of **servus** only in the nominative and vocative singular.

c. Note that in **puer** the **e** remains all the way through, while in **ager** it is present only in the nominative. In **puer** the **e** belongs to the base, but in **ager** (base **agr-**) it does not, and was inserted in the nominative to make it easier to pronounce. Most words in **-er** are declined like **ager**. *The genitive shows whether you are to follow puer or ager.*

93. Masculine adjectives in **-er** of the second declension are declined like nouns in **-er**. A few of them are declined like **puer**, but most of them like **ager**. The feminine and neuter nominatives show which form to follow, thus,

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		
liber	libera	liberum	(free)	is like puer
pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	(pretty)	is like ager

For the full declension in the three genders, see § 469. *b. c.*

94. Decline together the words **vir liber**, **terra libera**, **frumentum liberum**, **puer pulcher**, **puella pulchra**, **oppidum pulchrum**.

95.

ITALIA ¹

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

Magna est Italiae fāma, patriae Rōmānōrum, et clāra est Rōma, domina orbis terrārum.² Tiberim,³ fluvium Rōmānum, quis nōn laudat et pulchrōs fluviō finitimōs agrōs? Altōs mūrōs, longa et dūra bella, clārās victōriās quis nōn laudat? Pulchra est terra Italia. Agrī boni
5 agricolīs praemia dant magna, et equī agricolārum cōpiam frūmenti ad oppida et vicōs portant. In agrīs populī Rōmānī labōrant multi servī. Viae Italiae sunt longae et lātae. Finitima Italiae est insula Sicilia.

¹ In this selection note especially the emphasis as shown by the order of the words. ² orbis terrārum, of the world. ³ Tiberim, the Tiber, accusative case.

96.

DIALOGUE

MARCUS AND CORNELIUS

C. Ubi est, Mārce, filius tuus? Estne in pulchrā terrā Italiā?

M. Nōn est, Cornēli, in Italiā. Ad fluvium Rhēnum properat cum cōpiis Rōmānīs quia est¹ fāma novī bellī cum Germānīs. Liber Germāniae populus Rōmānōs nōn amat.

C. Estne filius tuus cōpiārum Rōmānārum lēgātus?

M. Lēgātus nōn est, sed est apud legiōnāriōs.

C. Quae² arma portat³?

M. Scūtum magnum et iōricam dūram et galeam pulchram portat.

C. Quae tēla portat?

M. Gladium et pilum longum portat.

C. Amatne lēgātus filium tuum?

M. Amat, et saepe filiō meō praemia pulchra et praedam multam dat.

C. Ubi est terra Germānōrum?

M. Terra Germānōrum, Cornēli, est finitima Rhēnō, fluviō magnō et altō.



LEGIONARIUS

¹ est, before its subject, *there is*; so sunt, *there are*. ² Quae, *what kind of*, an interrogative adjective pronoun. ³ What are the three possible translations of the present tense?

LESSON XIV

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

97. Observe the sentences

This is my shield

This shield is mine

In the first sentence *my* is a possessive adjective; in the second *mine* is a possessive pronoun, for it takes the place of a noun, *this shield is mine* being equivalent to *this shield is my shield*. Similarly, in Latin the possessives are sometimes *adjectives* and sometimes *pronouns*.

98. The possessives *my*, *mine*, *your*, *yours*, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR

1st Pers. meus, mea, meum	<i>my, mine</i>
2d Pers. tuus, tua, tuum	<i>your, yours</i>
3d Pers. suus, sua, suum	<i>his (own), her (own), its (own)</i>

PLURAL

1st Pers. noster, nostra, nostrum	<i>our, ours</i>
2d Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum	<i>your, yours</i>
3d Pers. suus, sua, suum	<i>their (own), theirs</i>

NOTE. **Meus** has the irregular vocative singular masculine *mī*, as *mī fili*, *O my son*.

a. The possessives agree with the name of the *thing possessed* in gender, number, and case. Compare the English and Latin in

<i>Sextus is calling his boy</i>	Sextus	} suum puerum vocat
<i>Julia is calling her boy</i>	Iūlia	

Observe that **suum** agrees with **puerum**, and is unaffected by the gender of **Sextus** or **Julia**.

b. When *your*, *yours*, refers to *one* person, use **tuus**; when to *more than one*, **vester**; as,

<i>Lesbia, your wreaths are pretty</i>	Corōnae tuae, Lesbia, sunt pulchrae
<i>Girls, your wreaths are pretty</i>	Corōnae vestrae, puellae, sunt pulchrae

c. **Suus** is a *reflexive* possessive, that is, it usually stands in the predicate and regularly refers back to the *subject*. Thus, **Vir suōs servōs vocat** means *The man calls his (own) slaves*. Here *his* (**suōs**) refers to *man* (**vir**), and could not refer to any one else.

d. Possessives are used much less frequently than in English, being omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them. (Cf. § 22. a.) This is especially true of **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, which, when inserted, is more or less emphatic, like our *his own*, *her own*, etc.

99.

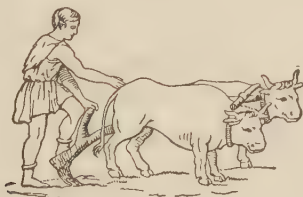
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. 1. Mārcus amicō Sextō cōnsilium suum nūntiat. 2. Est cōpia frūmentī in agrīs nostrīs. 3. Amicī meī bonam cēnam ancillae vestrae laudant. 4. Tua lōrica, mī fili, est dūra. 5. Scūta nostra et tēla, mī amice, in castrīs Rōmānīs sunt. 6. Suntne virī patriae tuae liberī? Sunt. 7. Ubi, Cornēli, est tua galea pulchra? 8. Mea galea, Sexte, est in casā meā. 9. Pilum longum est tuum, sed gladius est meus. 10. Iūlia gallinās suās pulchrās amat et gallinae dominam suam amant. 11. Nostra castra sunt vestra. 12. Est cōpia praedae in castris vestris. 13. Amicī tuī miseris et aegrīs cibum et pecūniam saepe dant.

II. 1. Our teacher praises Mark's industry. 2. My son Sextus is carrying his booty to the Roman camp.¹ 3. Your good girls are giving aid to the sick and wretched.² 4. There are³ frequent battles in our villages. 5. My son, where is the lieutenant's food? 6. The camp is mine, but the weapons are yours.

¹ Not the dative. Why? ² Here the adjectives *sick* and *wretched* are used like nouns. ³ Where should *sunt* stand? Cf. I. 2 above.



AGRICOLA ARAT

LESSON XV

THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *WITH*

100. Of the various relations denoted by the ablative case (§ 50) there is none more important than that expressed in English by the preposition *with*. This little word is not so simple as it looks. It does not always convey the same meaning, nor is it always to be translated by *cum*. This will become clear from the following sentences:

- a.* Mark is feeble *with* (*for* or *because of*) want of food
- b.* Diana kills the beasts *with* (*or by*) her arrows
- c.* Julia is *with* Sextus
- d.* The men fight *with* great steadiness

a. In sentence *a*, *with* *want (of food)* gives the **cause** of Mark's feebleness. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the **ablative of cause**:

Mārcus est infirmus inopiā cibī

b. In sentence *b*, *with* (*or by*) *her arrows* tells **by means of what** Diana kills the beasts. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the **ablative of means**:

Diāna sagittīs suis ferās necat

c. In sentence *c* we are told that Julia is not alone, but **in company with** Sextus. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative with the preposition *cum*, and the construction is called the **ablative of accompaniment**:

Iūlia est cum Sextō

d. In sentence *d* we are told **how** the men fight. The idea is one of **manner**. This is expressed in Latin by the ablative with *cum*, unless there is a modifying adjective present, in which case *cum* may be omitted. This construction is called the **ablative of manner**:

Virī (cum) cōstantiā magnā pugnant

101. You are now able to form four important rules for the ablative denoting *with*:

102. RULE. Ablative of Cause. *Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what?*

103. RULE. Ablative of Means. *Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? With what?*

N.B. **Cum** must never be used with the ablative expressing cause or means.

104. RULE. Ablative of Accompaniment. *Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum. This answers the question With whom?*

105. RULE. Ablative of Manner. *The ablative with cum is used to denote the manner of an action. Cum may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? In what manner?*

106. What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage, and what question does each answer?

The soldiers marched to the fort with great speed and broke down the gate with blows of their muskets. The inhabitants, terrified by the din, attempted to cross the river with their wives and children, but the stream was swollen with (or by) the rain. Because of this many were swept away by the waters and only a few, almost overcome with fatigue, with great difficulty succeeded in gaining the farther shore.

107.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. *The Romans prepare for War.* Rōmānī, clārus Italiae populus, bellum parant. Ex agrīs suis, vicīs, oppidisque magnō studiō virī validi ad arma properant. Iam lēgātī cum legiōnāriīs ex Italiā ad Rhēnum, fluvium Germāniae altum et lātum, properant, et servī equīs et carrīs cibum frūmentumque ad castra Rōmāna portant. Inopiā bonōrum 5 tēlōrum infirmī sunt Germānī, sed Rōmānī armātī galeīs, lōricīs, scūtīs, gladiīs, pilisque sunt validī.

II. 1. The sturdy farmers of Italy labor in the fields with great diligence. 2. Sextus, the lieutenant, and (his) son Mark are fighting with the Germans. 3. The Roman legionaries are armed with long spears. 4. Where is Lesbia, your maid, Sextus? Lesbia is with my friends in Galba's cottage. 5. Many are sick because of bad water and for lack of food. 6. The Germans, with (their) sons and daughters, are hastening with horses and wagons.

LESSON XVI

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

108. There are nine irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions which have a peculiar termination in the genitive and dative singular of all genders:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Gen.</i>	-īus	-īus	-īus
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ī

Otherwise they are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um. Learn the list and the meaning of each:

<i>alius</i> , <i>alia</i> , <i>aliud</i> , <i>other</i> , <i>another</i> (of several)	<i>nūllus</i> , -a, -um, <i>none</i> , <i>no</i>
<i>alter</i> , <i>altera</i> , <i>alterum</i> , <i>the one</i> , <i>the other</i> (of two)	<i>sōlus</i> , -a, -um, <i>alone</i>
<i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um, <i>one</i> , <i>alone</i> ; (in the plural) <i>only</i>	<i>tōtus</i> , -a, -um, <i>all</i> , <i>whole</i> , <i>entire</i>
<i>ūllus</i> , -a, -um, <i>any</i>	<i>uter</i> , <i>utra</i> , <i>utrum</i> , <i>which?</i> (of two)
	<i>neuter</i> , <i>neutra</i> , <i>neutrum</i> , <i>neither</i> (of two)

109.

PARADIGMS

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	alius	alia	aliud
<i>Gen.</i>	nūllī'us	nūllī'us	nūllī'us	alī'us	alī'us	alī'us
<i>Dat.</i>	nūllī	nūllī	nūllī	aliī	aliī	aliī
<i>Acc.</i>	nūllum	nūllam	nūllum	alium	aliam	aliud
<i>Abl.</i>	nūllō	nūllā	nūllō	aliō	aliā	aliō

THE PLURAL IS REGULAR

a. Note the peculiar neuter singular ending in **-d** of **alius**. The genitive **alius** is rare. Instead of it use **alterius**, the genitive of **alter**.

b. These peculiar case endings are found also in the declension of pronouns (see § 114). For this reason these adjectives are sometimes called the **pronominal adjectives**.

110. Learn the following idioms: -

alter, -era, -erum . . . alter, -era, -erum, the one . . . the other (of two)

alius, -a, -ud . . . alius, -a, -ud, one . . . another (of any number)

alii, -ae, -a . . . alii, -ae, -a, some . . . others

EXAMPLES

1. **Alterum oppidum est magnum, alterum parvum, the one town is large, the other small** (of two towns).

2. **Aliud oppidum est validum, aliud infirmum, one town is strong, another weak** (of towns in general).

3. **Alii gladiōs, alii scūta portant, some carry swords, others shields.**

111.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In utrā casā est Iūlia? Iūlia est in neutrā casā. 2. Nūlli malō puerō praeium dat magister. 3. Alter puer est nauta, alter agricola. 4. Alii virī aquam, alii terram amant. 5. Galba ūnus (or sōlus) cum studiō labōrat. 6. Estne ūllus carrus in agrō meō? 7. Lesbia est ancilla alterius domini, Tullia alterius. 8. Lesbia sōla cēnam parat. 9. Cēna nūllius alterius ancillae est bona. 10. Lesbia nūlli alii virō cēnam dat.

NOTE. The pronominal adjectives, as you observe, regularly stand before and not after their nouns.

II. 1. The men of all Germany are preparing for war. 2. Some towns are great and others are small. 3. One boy likes chickens, another horses. 4. Already the booty of one town is in our fort. 5. Our whole village is suffering for (i.e. *weak because of*) lack of food. 6. The people are already hastening to the other town. 7. Among the Romans (there) is no lack of grain.

LESSON XVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS, EA, ID*

112. A demonstrative is a word that points out an object definitely, as *this, that, these, those*. Sometimes these words are pronouns, as, *Do you hear these?* and sometimes adjectives, as, *Do you hear these men?* In the former case they are called **demonstrative pronouns**, in the latter **demonstrative adjectives**.

113. Demonstratives are similarly used in Latin both as *pronouns* and as *adjectives*. The one used most is

is, masculine ; **ea**, feminine ; **id**, neuter

SINGULAR { *this*
 that

PLURAL { *these*
 those

114. **Is** is declined as follows. Compare its declension with that of *alius*, § 109.

BASE **e-**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī (<i>or</i> iī)	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs (<i>or</i> iīs)	eīs (<i>or</i> iīs)	eīs (<i>or</i> iīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs (<i>or</i> iīs)	eīs (<i>or</i> iīs)	eīs (<i>or</i> iīs)

Note that the base **e-** changes to **i-** in a few cases. The genitive singular *eius* is pronounced *eh'yus*. In the plural the forms with two **i**'s are preferred and the two **i**'s are pronounced as one. Hence, pronounce **iī** as **ī** and **iīs** as **īs**.

115. Besides being used as demonstrative pronouns and adjectives the Latin demonstratives are regularly used for the personal pronoun *he, she, it*. As a personal pronoun, then, **is** would have the following meanings :

SING.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is, he; ea, she; id, it</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eius, of him or his; eius, of her, her, or hers; eius, of it or its</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī, to or for him; eī, to or for her; eī, to or for it</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum, him; eam, her; id, it</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō, with, from, etc., him; eā, with, from, etc., her; eō, with, from, etc., it</i>
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eī or iī, eae, ea, they</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of them, their</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, to or for them</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōs, eās, ea, them</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, with, from, etc., them</i>

116. Comparison between *suus* and *is*. We learned above (§ 98. c) that *suus* is a *reflexive* possessive. When *his, her* (poss.), *its, their*, do not refer to the subject of the sentence, we express *his, her, its* by *eius*, the genitive singular of *is, ea, id*; and *their* by the genitive plural, using *eōrum* to refer to a masculine or neuter antecedent noun and *eārum* to refer to a feminine one.

EXAMPLES

Galba calls his (own) son, Galba suum filium vocat

Galba calls his son (not his own, but another's), Galba eius filium vocat

Julia calls her (own) children, Iūlia suōs liberōs vocat

Julia calls her children (not her own, but another's), Iūlia eius liberōs vocat

The men praise their (own) boys, virī suōs puerōs laudant

The men praise their boys (not their own, but others'), virī eōrum puerōs laudant

117. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

1. He praises her, him, it, them. 2. This cart, that report, these teachers, those women, that abode, these abodes. 3. That strong garrison, among those weak and sick women, that want of firmness, those frequent plans.

4. The other woman is calling her chickens (*her own*). 5. Another woman is calling her chickens (*not her own*). 6. The Gaul praises

his arms (*his own*). 7. The Gaul praises his arms (*not his own*). 8. This farmer often plows their fields. 9. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*their own*). 10. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*not their own*). 11. Free men love their own fatherland. 12. They love its villages and towns.

118.

DIALOGUE¹

CORNELIUS AND MARCUS

M. Quis est vir, Cornēli, cum puerō parvō? Estne Rōmānus et liber?

C. Rōmānus nōn est, Mārce. Is vir est servus et eius domicilium est in silvīs Galliae.

M. Estne puer filius eius servī an alterius?

C. Neutrīus filius est puer. Is est filius lēgātī Sextī.

M. Quō puer cum eō servō properat?

C. Is cum servō properat ad lātōs Sextī agrōs.² Tōtum frūmentum est iam mātūrum et magnus servōrum numerus in Italiae³ agrīs labōrat.

M. Agricolaene sunt Gallī et patriae suae agrōs arant?

C. Nōn agricolae sunt. Bellum amant Gallī, nōn agrī cultūram. Apud eōs virī pūgnant et fēminae auxiliō liberōrum agrōs arant parantque cibum.

M. Magister noster puerīs puellisque grātās Gallōrum fābulās saepe nārrat et laudat eōs saepe.

C. Mala est fortūna eōrum et saepe miserī servī multīs cum lacrimīs patriam suam dēsiderant.

¹ There are a number of departures from the normal order in this dialogue. Find them, and give the reason. ² When a noun is modified by both a genitive and an adjective, a favorite order of words is *adjective, genitive, noun*.

³ A modifying genitive often stands between a preposition and its object.

LESSON XVIII

CONJUGATION

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES OF **SUM**

119. The inflection of a verb is called its *conjugation* (cf. § 23). In English the verb has but few changes in form, the different meanings being expressed by the use of personal pronouns and auxiliaries, as, *I am carried, we have carried, they shall have carried*, etc. In Latin, on the other hand, instead of using personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs, the form changes with the meaning. In this way the Romans expressed differences in *tense, mood, voice, person, and number*.

120. The Tenses. The different forms of a verb referring to different times are called its *tenses*. The chief distinctions of time are present, past, and future:

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| <p>1. The present, that is, <i>what is happening now</i>, or <i>what usually happens</i>, is expressed by</p> | } | THE PRESENT TENSE |
| <p>2. The past, that is, <i>what was happening, used to happen, happened, has happened, or had happened</i>, is expressed by</p> | } | THE IMPERFECT, PERFECT, AND PLUPERFECT TENSES |
| <p>3. The future, that is, <i>what is going to happen</i>, is expressed by</p> | } | THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES |

121. The Moods. Verbs have inflection of *mood* to indicate the manner in which they express action. The moods of the Latin verb are the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive*.

a. A verb is in the *indicative* mood when it makes a statement or asks a question about something assumed as a fact. All the verbs we have used thus far are in the present indicative.

122. The Persons. There are three persons, as in English. The first person is the person speaking (*I sing*); the second person the person spoken to (*you sing*); the third person the person spoken of

(*he sings*). Instead of using personal pronouns for the different persons in the two numbers, singular and plural, the Latin verb uses the personal endings (cf. § 22 *a*; 29). We have already learned that **-t** is the ending of the third person singular in the active voice and **-nt** of the third person plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
1st Pers.	<i>I</i>	-m or -ō	<i>we</i> -mus
2d Pers.	<i>thou</i> or <i>you</i>	-s	<i>you</i> -tis
3d Pers.	<i>he, she, it</i>	-t	<i>they</i> -nt

123. Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan and are called *regular* verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called *irregular*. The verb *to be* is irregular in Latin as in English. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

PRESENT INDICATIVE			
	SINGULAR		PLURAL
1st Pers.	su- m , <i>I am</i>		su- mus , <i>we are</i>
2d Pers.	e- s , <i>you</i> ¹ <i>are</i>		es- tis , <i>you</i> ¹ <i>are</i>
3d Pers.	es- t , <i>he, she, or it is</i>		su- nt , <i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE			
1st Pers.	er-a- m , <i>I was</i>		er-ā'- mus , <i>we were</i>
2d Pers.	er-ā- s , <i>you were</i>		er-ā'- tis , <i>you were</i>
3d Pers.	er-a- t , <i>he, she, or it was</i>		er-a- nt , <i>they were</i>

FUTURE INDICATIVE			
1st Pers.	er-ō, <i>I shall be</i>		er'-i- mus , <i>we shall be</i>
2d Pers.	er-i- s , <i>you will be</i>		er'-i- tis , <i>you will be</i>
3d Pers.	er-i- t , <i>he will be</i>		er-u- nt , <i>they will be</i>

a. Be careful about vowel quantity and accent in these forms, and consult §§ 12. 2; 14; 15.

¹ Observe that in English *you are*, *you were*, etc. may be either singular or plural. In Latin the singular and plural forms are never the same.



"STABIANA PORTA URBEM INGRESSI SUNT"

(See page 208)

124.

DIALOGUE

THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

S. Ubi es, Mārce? Ubi est Quīntus? Ubi estis, amīcī?

M. Cum Quīntō, Sexte, in silvā sum. Nōn sōlī sumus; sunt in silvā multī aliī puerī.

S. Nunc laetus es, sed nūper nōn laetus erās. Cūr miser erās?

M. Miser eram quia amīcī meī erant in aliō vicō et eram sōlus. Nunc sum apud sociōs meōs. Nunc laetī sumus et erimus.

S. Erātisne in lūdō hodiē?

M. Hodiē nōn erāmus in lūdō, quod magister erat aeger.

S. Eritisne mox in lūdō?

M. Amīcī meī ibi erunt, sed ego (*I*) nōn erō.

S. Cūr nōn ibi eris? Magister, saepe irātus, inopiam tuam studi dīligentiaequē nōn laudat.

M. Nūper aeger eram et nunc infirmus sum.

125.

EXERCISE

1. You are, you were, you will be, (*sing. and plur.*). 2. I am, I was, I shall be. 3. He is, he was, he will be. 4. We are, we were, we shall be. 5. They are, they were, they will be.

6. Why were you not in school to-day? I was sick. 7. Lately he was a sailor, now he is a farmer, soon he will be a teacher. 8. To-day I am happy, but lately I was wretched. 9. The teachers were happy because of the boys' industry.



PUERI ROMANI IN LUDO

LESSON XIX

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS · PRESENT ACTIVE
INDICATIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

126. There are four conjugations of the regular verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from each other by the final vowel of the present conjugation-stem.¹ This vowel is called the *distinguishing vowel*, and is best seen in the present infinitive.

Below is given the *present infinitive* of a verb of each conjugation, the *present stem*, and the *distinguishing vowel*.

CONJUGATION	PRES. INFIN.	PRES. STEM	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
I.	<i>amā're, to love</i>	<i>amā-</i>	<i>ā</i>
II.	<i>monē're, to advise</i>	<i>monē-</i>	<i>ē</i>
III.	<i>re'gēre, to rule</i>	<i>regē-</i>	<i>ē</i>
IV.	<i>audī're, to hear</i>	<i>audī-</i>	<i>ī</i>

a. Note that the present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping -re, the ending of the present infinitive.

NOTE. The present infinitive of *sum* is *esse*, and *es-* is the present stem.

127. From the present stem are formed the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses.

128. The inflection of the Present Active Indicative of the first and of the second conjugation is as follows:

	<i>a'mō, amā're (love)</i>	<i>mo'neō, monē're (advise)</i>	PERSONAL ENDINGS
	PRES. STEM <i>amā-</i>	PRES. STEM <i>monē-</i>	
SING.	1. <i>a'mō, I love</i>	<i>mo'neō, I advise</i>	-ō
	2. <i>a'mās, you love</i>	<i>mo'nēs, you advise</i>	-s
	3. <i>a'mat, he (she, it) loves</i>	<i>mo'net, he (she, it) advises</i>	-t
PLUR.	1. <i>amā'mus, we love</i>	<i>monē'mus, we advise</i>	-mus
	2. <i>amā'tis, you love</i>	<i>monē'tis, you advise</i>	-tis
	3. <i>a'mant, they love</i>	<i>mo'nent, they advise</i>	-nt

¹ The *stem* is the body of a word to which the terminations are attached. It is often identical with the base (cf. § 58). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional terminations. This point is further explained in § 230.

1. The present tense is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem, and its first person uses **-ō** and not **-m**. The form **amō** is for **amā-ō**, the two vowels **ā-ō** contracting to **ō**. In **moneō** there is no contraction. *Nearly all regular verbs ending in -eō belong to the second conjugation.*

2. Note that the long final vowel of the stem is shortened before another vowel (**monē-ō** = **mo'nēō**), and before final **-t** (**amāt**, **monēt**) and **-nt** (**amānt**, **monēnt**). Compare § 12. 2.

129. Like **amō** and **moneō** inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs¹:

INDICATIVE PRESENT

a'rō , <i>I plow</i>
cū'rō , <i>I care for</i>
* dē'leō , <i>I destroy</i>
dēsī'derō , <i>I long for</i>
dō , ² <i>I give</i>
* ha'beō , <i>I have</i>
ha'bitō , <i>I live, I dwell</i>
* iu'beō , <i>I order</i>
labō'rō , <i>I labor</i>
lau'dō , <i>I praise</i>
mātū'rō , <i>I hasten</i>
* mo'veō , <i>I move</i>
nār'rō , <i>I tell</i>
ne'cō , <i>I kill</i>
nūn'tiō , <i>I announce</i>
pa'rō , <i>I prepare</i>
por'tō , <i>I carry</i>
pro'perō , <i>I hasten</i>
pug'nō , <i>I fight</i>
* vi'deō , <i>I see</i>
vo'cō , <i>I call</i>

INFINITIVE PRESENT

arā're , <i>to plow</i>
cūrā're , <i>to care for</i>
dēlē're , <i>to destroy</i>
dēsīderā're , <i>to long for</i>
da're , <i>to give</i>
habē're , <i>to have</i>
habitā're , <i>to live, to dwell</i>
iubē're , <i>to order</i>
labōrā're , <i>to labor</i>
laudā're , <i>to praise</i>
mātūrā're , <i>to hasten</i>
movē're , <i>to move</i>
nārrā're , <i>to tell</i>
necā're , <i>to kill</i>
nūntiā're , <i>to announce</i>
parā're , <i>to prepare</i>
portā're , <i>to carry</i>
properā're , <i>to hasten</i>
pugnā're , <i>to fight</i>
vidē're , <i>to see</i>
vocā're , <i>to call</i>

130. The Translation of the Present. In English there are three ways of expressing present action. We may say, for example, *I live*, *I am living*, or *I do live*. In Latin the one expression **habitō** covers all three of these expressions.

¹ The only new verbs in this list are the five of the second conjugation which are starred. Learn their meanings. ² Observe that in **dō**, **dāre**, the *a* is *short*, and that the present stem is **dā-** and not **dā-**. The only forms of **dō** that have a long are **dās** (pres. indic.), **dā** (pres. imv.), and **dāns** (pres. part.).

131.

EXERCISES

Give the *voice, mood, tense, person, and number* of each form.

I. 1. Vocāmus, properātis, iubent. 2. Movētis, laudās, vidēs. 3. Dēlētis, habētis, dant. 4. Mātūrās, dēsiderat, vidēmus. 5. Iubet, movent, necat. 6. Nārrāmus, movēs, vident. 7. Labōrātis, properant, portās, parant. 8. Dēlet, habētis, iubēmus, dās.

N.B. Observe that the personal ending is of prime importance in translating a Latin verb form. Give that your first attention.

II. 1. We plow, we are plowing, we do plow. 2. They care for, they are caring for, they do care for. 3. You give, you are having, you do have (*sing.*). 4. We destroy, I do long for, they are living. 5. He calls, they see, we are telling. 6. We do fight, we order, he is moving, he prepares. 7. They are laboring, we kill, you announce.

LESSON XX

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

132. Tense Signs. Instead of using auxiliary verbs to express differences in tense, like *was, shall, will*, etc., Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called *tense signs*.

133. Formation and Inflection of the Imperfect. The tense sign of the imperfect is *-bā-*, which is added to the present stem. The imperfect consists, therefore, of three parts:

PRESENT STEM	TENSE SIGN	PERSONAL ENDING
amā-	ba-	m
<i>loving</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>I</i>

The inflection is as follows:

CONJUGATION I	CONJUGATION II	PERSONAL ENDINGS
	SINGULAR	
1. amā' bam , <i>I was loving</i>	monē' bam , <i>I was advising</i>	-m
2. amā' bās , <i>you were loving</i>	monē' bās , <i>you were advising</i>	-s
3. amā' bat , <i>he was loving</i>	monē' bat , <i>he was advising</i>	-t

PLURAL

PERSONAL
ENDINGS

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------|
| 1. amābā'mus, <i>we were loving</i> | monēbā'mus, <i>we were advising</i> | -mus |
| 2. amābā'tis, <i>you were loving</i> | monēbā'tis, <i>you were advising</i> | -tis |
| 3. amā'bant, <i>they were loving</i> | monē'bant, <i>they were advising</i> | -nt |

a. Note that the ā of the tense sign -bā- is shortened before -nt, and before m and t when final. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

134. Meaning of the Imperfect. The Latin imperfect describes an act as *going on* or *progressing in past time*, like the English past-progressive tense (as, *I was walking*). It is the regular tense used to describe a past situation or condition of affairs.

135.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Vidēbāmus, dēsiderābat, mātūrābās. 2. Dabant, vocābātis, dēlēbāmus. 3. Pugnant, laudābās, movēbātis. 4. Iubēbant, properābātis, portābāmus. 5. Dabās, nārrābant, labōrābātis. 6. Vidēbant, movēbās, nūntiābāmus. 7. Necābat, movēbam, habēbat, parābātis.

II. 1. You were having (*sing. and plur.*), we were killing, they were laboring. 2. He was moving, we were ordering, we were fighting. 3. We were telling, they were seeing, he was calling. 4. They were living, I was longing for, we were destroying. 5. You were giving, you were moving, you were announcing, (*sing. and plur.*). 6. They were caring for, he was plowing, we were praising.

136.**NI'OBÉ AND HER CHILDREN**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

Niobē, rēgina Thēbānōrum, erat pulchra fēmina sed superba. Erat superba nōn solum fōrmā¹ suā maritique potentiā¹ sed etiam magnō liberōrum numerō.¹ Nam habēbat² septem filiōs et septem filiās. Sed ea superbia erat rēgīnae³ causa magnae trīstītiāe et liberis³ causa dūrae poenae.

NOTE. The words Niobē, Thēbānōrum, and marītī will be found in the general vocabulary. Translate the selection without looking up any other words.

¹ Ablative of cause. ² Translate *had*; it denotes a past situation. (See § 134.) ³ Dative, cf. § 43.

LESSON XXI

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

137. The tense sign of the Future Indicative in the first and second conjugations is *-bi-*. This is joined to the present stem of the verb and followed by the personal ending, as follows:

PRESENT STEM	TENSE SIGN	PERSONAL ENDING
<i>amā-</i>	<i>bi-</i>	<i>s</i>
<i>love</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>you</i>

138. The Future Active Indicative is inflected as follows:

CONJUGATION I

SINGULAR

1. *amā'bō, I shall love*
2. *amā'bis, you will love*
3. *amā'bit, he will love*

CONJUGATION II

- monē'bō, I shall advise*
- monē'bis, you will advise*
- monē'bit, he will advise*

PLURAL

1. *amā'bimus, we shall love*
2. *amā'bitis, you will love*
3. *amā'bunt, they will love*

- monē'bimus, we shall advise*
- monē'bitis, you will advise*
- monē'bunt, they will advise*

a. The personal endings are as in the present. The ending *-bō* in the first person singular is contracted from *-bi-ō*. The *-bi-* appears as *-bu-* in the third person plural. Note that the inflection is like that of *erō*, the future of *sum*. *Pay especial attention to the accent.*

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

139.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Movēbitis, laudābis, arābō.* 2. *Dēlēbitis, vocābitis, dabunt.*
3. *Mātūrābis, dēsiderābit, vidēbimus.* 4. *Habēbit, movēbunt, necābit.*
5. *Nārrābimus, monēbis, vidēbunt.* 6. *Labōrābitis, cūrābunt, dabis.*
7. *Habitābimus, properābitis, iubēbunt, parābit.* 8. *Nūntiābō, portābimus, iubēbō.*

II. 1. We shall announce, we shall see, I shall hasten. 2. I shall carry, he will plow, they will care for. 3. You will announce, you will

move, you will give. (*sing. and plur.*). 4. We shall fight, we shall destroy, I shall long for. 5. He will call, they will see, you will tell (*plur.*). 6. They will dwell, we shall order, he will praise. 7. They will labor, we shall kill, you will have (*sing. and plur.*), he will destroy.

140. NI'OBÉ AND HER CHILDREN (*Concluded*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Apollō et Diāna erant liberī Lātōnae. Iis Thēbānī sacra crēbra parābant.¹ Oppidānī amābant Lātōnam et liberōs eius. Id superbae rēginae erat molestum. "Cūr," inquit, "Lātōnae et liberis sacra parātis? Duōs liberōs habet Lātōna; quattuordecim habeō ego. Ubi sunt mea sacra?" Lātōna iis verbis² irāta liberōs suōs vocat. 5 Ad eam volant Apollō Diānaque et sagittis³ suis miserōs liberōs rēginae superbae dēlent. Niobē, nūper laeta, nunc miscra, sedet apud liberōs interfectōs et cum perpetuis lacrimis⁴ eōs dēsiderat.

NOTE. Consult the general vocabulary for **Apollō**, **inquit**, **duōs**, and **quattuordecim**. Try to remember the meaning of all the other words.

LESSON XXII

REVIEW OF VERBS · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

141. Review the present, imperfect, and future active indicative, both orally and in writing, of **sum** and the verbs in § 129.

142. We learned in § 43 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in § 44 that one of its commonest uses is with *verbs* to express the indirect object. It is also very common with *adjectives* to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. We have already had a number of cases

¹ Observe the force of the imperfect here, *used to prepare, were in the habit of preparing*; so *amābant* denotes a past situation of affairs. (See § 134.) ² Ablative of cause. ³ Ablative of means. ⁴ This may be either manner or accompaniment. It is often impossible to draw a sharp line between means, manner, and accompaniment. The Romans themselves drew no sharp distinction. It was enough for them if the general idea demanded the ablative case.

where **grātus**, *agreeable to*, was so followed by a dative; and in the last lesson we had **molestus**, *annoying to*, followed by that case. The usage may be more explicitly stated by the following rule:

143. RULE. Dative with Adjectives. *The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites.*

144. Among such adjectives memorize the following:

idōneus, -a, -um, <i>fit, suitable</i> (for)	molestus, -a, -um, <i>annoying</i> (to), <i>troublesome</i> (to)
amicus, -a, -um, <i>friendly</i> (to)	finitimus, -a, -um, <i>neighboring</i> (to)
inimicus, -a, -um, <i>hostile</i> (to)	proximus, -a, -um, <i>nearest, next</i> (to)
grātus, -a, -um, <i>pleasing</i> (to), <i>agree- able</i> (to)	

145.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī terram idōneam agrī cultūrae habent. 2. Gallī cōpiīs Rōmānis inimīci erant. 3. Cui dea Lātōna amīca nōn erat? 4. Dea Lātōna superbae rēgīnae amīca nōn erat. 5. Cibus noster, Mārce, erit armātis virīs grātus. 6. Quid erat molestum populis Italiae? 7. Bella longa cum Gallis erant molesta populis Italiae. 8. Agrī Germānōrum fluviō Rhēnō finitimī erant. 9. Rōmānī ad silvam oppidō proximam castra movēbant. 10. Nōn solum fōrma sed etiam superbia rēgīnae erat magna. 11. Mox rēgīna pulchra erit aegra trīstitiā. 12. Cūr erat Niobē, rēgīna Thēbānōrum, laeta? Laeta erat Niobē multis filiis et filiabus.

II. 1. The sacrifices of the people will be annoying to the haughty queen. 2. The sacrifices were pleasing not only to Latona but also to Diana. 3. Diana will destroy those hostile to Latona. 4. The punishment of the haughty queen was pleasing to the goddess Diana. 5. The Romans will move their forces to a large field¹ suitable for a camp. 6. Some of the allies were friendly to the Romans, others to the Gauls.

¹ Why not the dative?

146. CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Apud antiquās dominās, Cornēlia, Āfricānī filia, erat¹ maximē clāra. Filii eius erant Tiberius Gracchus et Gāius Gracchus. Ii pueri cum Cornēliā in oppidō Rōmā, clārō Italiae oppidō, habitābant. Ibi eōs cūrābat Cornēlia et ibi magnō cum studiō eōs docēbat. Bona fēmina erat Cornēlia et bonam disciplinam maximē amābat.

NOTE. Can you translate the paragraph above? There are no new words.

LESSON XXIII

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

147. As we learned in § 126, the present stem of the third conjugation ends in -ē, and of the fourth in -ī. The inflection of the Present Indicative is as follows:

CONJUGATION III

re'gō, re'gere (*rule*)

PRES. STEM regē-

CONJUGATION IV

au'diō, audī're (*hear*)

PRES. STEM audi-

SINGULAR

1. re'gō, *I rule*
2. re'gis, *you rule*
3. re'git, *he (she, it) rules*

- au'diō, *I hear*
- au'dīs, *you hear*
- au'dit, *he (she, it) hears*

PLURAL

1. re'gimus, *we rule*
2. re'gitis, *you rule*
3. re'gunt, *they rule*

- audī'mus, *we hear*
- audī'tis, *you hear*
- audīunt, *they hear*

1. The personal endings are the same as before.
2. The final short -e- of the stem regē- combines with the -ō in the first person, becomes -u- in the third person plural, and becomes -ī- elsewhere. The inflection is like that of erō, the future of sum.

¹ Observe that all the imperfects denote continued or progressive action, or describe a state of affairs. (Cf. § 134.)

3. In *audiō* the personal endings are added regularly to the stem *audī-*. In the third person plural *-u-* is inserted between the stem and the personal ending, as *audi-u-nt*. Note that the long vowel of the stem is shortened before final *-t* just as in *amō* and *moneō*. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

Note that *-i-* is always short in the third conjugation and long in the fourth, excepting where long vowels are regularly shortened. (Cf. § 12. 1, 2.)

148. Like *regō* and *audiō* inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:

INDICATIVE PRESENT

agō, I drive
dicō, I say
dūcō, I lead
mittō, I send
mūniō, I fortify
reperiō, I find
veniō, I come

INFINITIVE PRESENT

agere, to drive
dicere, to say
dūcere, to lead
mittere, to send
mūnīre, to fortify
reperīre, to find
venīre, to come

149.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Quis agit? Cūr venit? Quem mittit? Quem dūcis? 2. Quid mittunt? Ad quem veniunt? Cuius castra mūniunt? 3. Quem agunt? Venīmus. Quid puer reperit? 4. Quem mittimus? Cuius equum dūcitis? Quid dicunt? 5. Mūnimus, venītis, dicit. 6. Agimus, reperītis, mūnis. 7. Reperīs, dūcitis, dīcis. 8. Agitis, audīmus, regimus.

II. 1. What do they find? Whom do they hear? Why does he come? 2. Whose camp are we fortifying? To whom does he say? What are we saying? 3. I am driving, you are leading, they are hearing. 4. You send, he says, you fortify (*sing. and plur.*). 5. I am coming, we find, they send. 6. They lead, you drive, he does fortify. 7. You lead, you find, you rule, (*all plur.*).

150.**CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (Concluded)**

Proximum domiciliō Cornēliae erat pulchrae Campānae domicilium. Campāna erat superba nōn solum fōrmā suā sed maximē ōrnāmentis suis. Ea¹ laudābat semper. "Habēsne tū ūlla ōrnāmenta, Cornēlia?"

¹Ea, accusative plural neuter.

inquit. "Ubi sunt tua ōrnāmenta?" Deinde Cornēlia filiōs suōs Tiberium et Gāium vocat. "Puerī meī," inquit, "sunt mea ōrnāmenta. Nam bonī liberī sunt semper bonae fēminae ōrnāmenta maximē clāra."

NOTE. The only new words here are *Campāna*, *semper*, and *tū*.



"PUERI MEI SUNT MEA ORNAMENTA"

LESSON XXIV

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ* · THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS

151.

PARADIGMS

CONJUGATION III

CONJUGATION IV

SINGULAR

1. *regē'bam, I was ruling*
2. *regē'bās, you were ruling*
3. *regē'bat, he was ruling*

1. *audiē'bam, I was hearing*
2. *audiē'bās, you were hearing*
3. *audiē'bat, he was hearing*

PLURAL

1. *regēbā'mus, we were ruling*
2. *regēbā'tis, you were ruling*
3. *regē'bant, they were ruling*

1. *audiēbā'mus, we were hearing*
2. *audiēbā'tis, you were hearing*
3. *audiē'bant, they were hearing*

1. The tense sign is *-bā-*, as in the first two conjugations.
2. Observe that the final *-ē-* of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign *-bā-*. This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation just like the imperfect of the second (cf. *monēbam* and *regēbam*).
3. In the fourth conjugation *-ē-* is inserted between the stem and the tense sign *-bā-* (*audi-ē-ba-m*).
4. In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

152.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Agēbat, veniēbat, mittēbat, dūcēbant.* 2. *Agēbant, mittēbant, dūcēbās, mūniēbant.* 3. *Mittēbāmus, dūcēbātis, dicēbant.* 4. *Mūniēbāmus, veniēbātis, dicēbās.* 5. *Mittēbās, veniēbāmus, reperiēbat.* 6. *Reperiēbās, veniēbās, audiēbātis.* 7. *Agēbāmus, reperiēbātis, mūniēbat.* 8. *Agēbātis, dicēbam, mūniēbam.*

II. 1. They were leading, you were driving (*sing. and plur.*), he was fortifying. 2. They were sending, we were finding, I was coming. 3. You were sending, you were fortifying, (*sing. and plur.*), he was saying. 4. They were hearing, you were leading (*sing. and plur.*), I was driving. 5. We were saying, he was sending, I was fortifying. 6. They were coming, he was hearing, I was finding. 7. You were ruling (*sing. and plur.*), we were coming, they were ruling.

153. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs. We learned above (§ 20. *a*) that a verb which does not admit of a direct object is called an *intransitive* verb. Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern an indirect object, which will, of course, be in the dative case (§ 45). Learn the following list of intransitive verbs with their meanings. In each case the dative indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed. (Cf. § 43.)

- crēdō, crēdere, believe* (give belief to)
- faveō, favēre, favor* (show favor to)
- noceō, nocēre, injure* (do harm to)
- pāreō, pārere, obey* (give obedience to)
- persuādeō, persuādere, persuade* (offer persuasion to)
- resistō, resistere, resist* (offer resistance to)
- studeō, studere, be eager for* (give attention to)

154. RULE. *Dative with Intransitive Verbs.* *The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs crēdō, faveō, noceō, pāreō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning.*

155.

EXERCISE

1. Crēdisne verbis sociōrum? Multī verbis eōrum nōn crēdunt.
 2. Meī finitimī cōnsiliō tuō nōn favēbunt, quod bellō student. 3. Tibērius et Gāius disciplinae dūrac nōn resistēbant et Cornēliae pārēbant.
 4. Dea erat inimīca septem filiābus rēgīnae. 5. Dūra poena et perpetua tristitia rēgīnae nōn persuādēbunt. 6. Nūper ea resistēbat et nunc resistit potentiae Lātonae. 7. Mox sagittae volābunt et liberis miseris nocēbunt.

LESSON XXV

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDIŌ

156. In the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations we meet with a new tense sign. Instead of using **-bi-**, as in the first and second conjugations, we use **-ā-¹** in the first person singular and **-ē-** in the rest of the tense. In the third conjugation the final **-ē-** of the stem is dropped before this tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the final **-ī-** of the stem is retained.²

157.

PARADIGMS

CONJUGATION III	CONJUGATION IV
<small>x</small> SINGULAR	
1. re'gam, <i>I shall rule</i>	au'diam, <i>I shall hear</i>
2. re'gēs, <i>you will rule</i>	au'diēs, <i>you will hear</i>
3. re'get, <i>he will rule.</i>	au'diet, <i>he will hear</i>
PLURAL	
1. regē'mus, <i>we shall rule</i>	audiē'mus, <i>we shall hear</i>
2. regē'tis, <i>you will rule</i>	audiē'tis, <i>you will hear</i>
3. re'gent, <i>they will rule</i>	au'dient, <i>they will hear</i>

¹ The **-ā-** is shortened before **-m** final, and **-ē-** before **-t** final and before **-nt**. (Cf. § 12. 2.) ² The **-ī-** is, of course, shortened, being before another vowel. (Cf. § 12. 1.)

66 VERBS IN -IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

1. Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, excepting in the first person singular.

2. In the same manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

158.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dicet, dūcētis, mūniēmus. 2. Dīcent, dīcētis, mittēmus. 3. Mūnient, venient, mittent, agent. 4. Dūcet, mittēs, veniet, aget. 5. Mūniet, reperiētis, agēmus. 6. Mittam, veniēmus, regent. 7. Audiētis, veniēs, reperiēs. 8. Reperiet, agam, dūcēmus, mittet. 9. Vidēbitis, sedēbō, vocābimus.

II. 1. I shall find, he will hear, they will come. 2. I shall fortify, he will send, we shall say. 3. I shall drive, you will lead, they will hear. 4. You will send, you will fortify, (*sing. and plur.*), he will say. 5. I shall come, we shall find, they will send.

6. Who¹ will believe the story? I² shall believe the story. 7. Whose friends do you favor? We favor our friends. 8. Who will resist our weapons? Sextus will resist your weapons. 9. Who will persuade him? They will persuade him. 10. Why were you injuring my horse? I was not injuring your horse. 11. Whom does a good slave obey? A good slave obeys his master. 12. Our men were eager for another battle.

LESSON XXVI

VERBS IN -IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION · THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

159. There are a few common verbs ending in -iō which do not belong to the fourth conjugation, as you might infer, but to the third. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation is shown by the ending of the infinitive. (Cf. § 126.) Compare

audiō, audī're (*hear*), fourth conjugation
capiō, ca'pere (*take*), third conjugation

¹ Remember that quis, *who*, is singular in number. ² Express by ego, because it is emphatic.

160. The present, imperfect, and future active indicative of **capiō** are inflected as follows :

capiō, capere, <i>take</i>		
PRES. STEM cape-		
PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
SINGULAR		
1. ca'piō	capīē'bam	ca'pīam
2. ca'pis	capīē'bās	ca'pīēs
3. ca'pit	capīē'bat	ca'pīet
PLURAL		
1. ca'pīmus	capīēbā'mus	capīē'mus
2. ca'pītis	capīēbā'tis	capīē'tis
3. ca'piunt	capīē'bant	ca'pient

1. Observe that **capiō** and the other **-iō** verbs follow the fourth conjugation wherever in the fourth conjugation *two vowels occur in succession*. (Cf. **capiō**, **audiō** ; **capiunt**, **audiunt** ; and all the imperfect and future.) All other forms are like the third conjugation. (Cf. **capis**, **regis** ; **capit**, **regit** ; etc.)

2. Like **capiō**, inflect

faciō, facere, make, do	iaciō, iacere, hurl
fugiō, fugere, flee	rapiō, rapere, seize

161. **The Imperative Mood.** The imperative mood expresses a command ; as, *come ! send !* The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. *The singular in the active voice is regularly the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding -te to the singular.*

CONJUGATION	SINGULAR	PLURAL
I.	amā, love thou	amā'te, love ye
II.	monē, advise thou	monē'te, advise ye
III.	(a) rege, rule thou	re'gite, rule ye
	(b) cape, take thou	ca'pīte, take ye
IV.	audī, hear thou	audī'te, hear ye
sum (irregular)	es, be thou	este, be ye

1. In the third conjugation the final **-ē-** of the stem becomes **-ī-** in the plural.

2. The verbs *dicō*, *say*; *dūcō*, *lead*; and *faciō*, *make*, have the irregular forms *dic*, *dūc*, and *fac* in the singular.

3. Give the present active imperative, singular and plural, of *veniō*, *dūcō*, *vocō*, *doceō*, *laudō*, *dicō*, *sedeō*, *agō*, *faciō*, *mūniō*, *mittō*, *rapīō*.

162.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fugient, faciunt, iaciēbat. 2. Dēlē, nūntiāte, fugiunt. 3. Venite, dic, faciētis. 4. Dūcite, iaciam, fugiēbant. 5. Fac, iaciēbāmus, fugimus, rapite. 6. Sedēte, reperī, docēte. 7. Fugiēmus, iacient, rapiēs. 8. Reperient, rapiēbātis, nocent. 9. Favēte, resiste, pārēbitis.

10. Volā ad multās terrās et dā auxilium. 11. Ego tēla mea capiam et multās ferās dēlēbō. 12. Quis fābulae tuae crēdet? 13. Este bonī, puerī, et audite verba grāta magistrī.

II. 1. The goddess will seize her arms and will hurl her weapons. 2. With her weapons she will destroy many beasts. 3. She will give aid to the weak.¹ 4. She will fly to many lands and the beasts will flee. 5. Romans, tell² the famous story to your children.

~~~~~

Third Review, Lessons XVIII-XXVI, §§ 510-512

~~~~~

LESSON XXVII

THE PASSIVE VOICE · PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE
INDICATIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

163. The Voices. Thus far the verb forms have been in the *active voice*; that is, they have represented the subject as *performing* an action; as,

The lion → *killed* → the hunter

A verb is said to be in the *passive voice* when it represents its subject as *receiving* an action; as,

The lion ← *was killed* ← by the hunter

Note the direction of the arrows.

¹ Plural. An adjective used as a noun. (Cf. § 99. II. 3.) ² Imperative. The imperative generally stands first, as in English.

164. **Passive Personal Endings.** In the passive voice we use a different set of personal endings. They are as follows:

SING.	1. -r, <i>I</i>	PLUR.	1. -mur, <i>we</i>
	2. -ris, -re, <i>you</i>		2. -minī, <i>you</i>
	3. -tur, <i>he, she, it</i>		3. -ntur, <i>they</i>

a. Observe that the letter -r appears somewhere in all but one of the endings. This is sometimes called the *passive sign*.

165.

PARADIGMS

amō, amāre		moneō, monēre		PERSONAL ENDINGS
PRES. STEM amā-		PRES. STEM monē-		
PRESENT INDICATIVE				
SING.	a'mor, <i>I am loved</i>	mo'neor, <i>I am advised</i>		-or ¹
	amā'ris or amā're, <i>you are loved</i>	monē'ris or monē're, <i>you are advised</i>		-ris or -re
	amā'tur, <i>he is loved</i>	monē'tur, <i>he is advised</i>		-tur
PLUR.	amā'mur, <i>we are loved</i>	monē'mur, <i>we are advised</i>		-mur
	amā'minī, <i>you are loved</i>	monē'minī, <i>you are advised</i>		-minī
	aman'tur, <i>they are loved</i>	monen'tur, <i>they are advised</i>		-ntur
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE (TENSE SIGN -bā-)				
SING.	amā'bar, <i>I was being loved</i>	monē'bar, <i>I was being advised</i>		-r
	amābā'ris or amābā're, <i>you were being loved</i>	monēbā'ris or monēbā're, <i>you were being advised</i>		-ris or -re
	amābā'tur, <i>he was being loved</i>	monēbā'tur, <i>he was being advised</i>		-tur
PLUR.	amābā'mur, <i>we were being loved</i>	monēbā'mur, <i>we were being advised</i>		-mur
	amābā'minī, <i>you were being loved</i>	monēbā'minī, <i>you were being advised</i>		-minī
	amāban'tur, <i>they were being loved</i>	monēban'tur, <i>they were being advised</i>		-ntur

¹ In the present the personal ending of the first person singular is -or.

	FUTURE (TENSE SIGN -bi-)		PERSONAL ENDINGS
SING.	amā'bor, <i>I shall be loved</i>	monē'bor, <i>I shall be advised</i>	-r
	amā'beris or amā'bere, <i>you will be loved</i>	monē'beris or monē'bere, <i>you will be advised</i>	-ris or -re
	amā'bitur, <i>he will be loved</i>	monē'bitur, <i>he will be advised</i>	-tur
PLUR.	amā'bimur, <i>we shall be loved</i>	monē'bimur, <i>we shall be advised</i>	-mur
	amābi'minī, <i>you will be loved</i>	monēbi'minī, <i>you will be advised</i>	-minī
	amābun'tur, <i>they will be loved</i>	monēbun'tur, <i>they will be advised</i>	-ntur

1. The tense sign and the personal endings are added as in the active.
2. In the future the tense sign -bi- appears as -bo- in the first person, -be- in the second, singular number, and as -bu- in the third person plural.
3. Inflect *laudō, necō, portō, moveō, dēlēō, iubeō*, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

166. Intransitive verbs, such as *mātūrō, I hasten; habitō, I dwell*, do not have a passive voice with a personal subject.

167.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Laudāris or laudāre, laudās, datur, dat.* 2. *Dabitur, dabit, vidēminī, vidētis.* 3. *Vocābat, vocābātur, dēlēbitis, dēlēbiminī.* 4. *Parābātur, parābat, cūrās, cūrāris or cūrāre.* 5. *Portābantur, portābant, vidēbimur, vidēbimus.* 6. *Iubēris or iubēre, iubēs, laudābāris or laudābāre, laudābās.* 7. *Movēberis or movēbere, movēbis, dabantur, dabant.* 8. *Dēlentur, dēlent, parābāmur, parābāmus.*

II. 1. *We prepare, we are prepared, I shall be called, I shall call, you were carrying, you were being carried.* 2. *I see, I am seen, it was being announced, he was announcing, they will order, they will be ordered.* 3. *You will be killed, you will kill, you move, you are moved, we are praising, we are being praised.* 4. *I am called, I call,*

you will have, you are cared for. 5. They are seen, they see, we were teaching, we were being taught, they will move, they will be moved.



PERSEUS' ANDROMEDAM SERVAT

168.

PER'SEUS AND ANDROM'EDA

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Perseus filius erat Iovis,¹ maximi² deōrum. Dē eō multās fābulās nārrant poētae. Ei favent deī, ei magica arma et ālās dant. Eīs tēlis armātus et ālis frētus ad multās terrās volābat et mōnstra saeva dēlēbat et miseris infirmisque auxilium dabat.

¹ Iovis, the genitive of Iuppiter. ² Used substantively, *the greatest*. So below, l. 4, miseris and infirmis are used substantively.

Aethiopia est terra Āfricae. Eam terram Cēpheus¹ regēbat. Eī² Neptūnus, maximus aquārum deus, erat irātus et mittit³ mōnstrum saevum ad Aethiopiam. Ibi mōnstrum nōn solum lātis pulchrisque Aethiopiae agrīs nocēbat sed etiam domicilia agricolārum dēlēbat, et multōs virōs, fēminās, liberōsque necābat. Populus ex agrīs fugiēbat et oppida mūrīs validīs mūniēbat. Tum Cēpheus magnā trīstitiā commōtus ad Iovis ōrāculum properat et ita dicit: "Amicī meī necantur; agrī meī vāstantur. Audi verba mea, Iuppiter. Dā miseris auxilium. Age mōnstrum saevum ex patriā."

LESSON XXVIII

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

169. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of *regō* and *audiō*, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§§ 490, 491).

a. Observe that the tense signs of the imperfect and future are the same as in the active voice, and that the passive personal endings (§ 164) are added instead of the active ones.

b. Note the slight irregularity in the second person singular present of the third conjugation. There the final *-e-* of the stem is not changed to *-i-*, as it is in the active. We therefore have *re'geris* or *re'gere*, *not re'giris, re'gire*.

c. Inflect *agō, dīcō, dūcō, mūniō, reperīō*, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

170.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Agēbat, agēbātur, mittēbat, mittēbātur, dūcēbat. 2. Agunt, aguntur, mittuntur, mittunt, mūniunt. 3. Mittor, mittar, mittam, dūcēre, dūcere. 4. Dicēmur, dicimus, dicēmus, dicimur, mūniēbāminī. 5. Dūcitur, dūciminī, reperīmur, reperiar, agitur. 6. Agēbāmus, agēbāmur, reperīris, reperīēminī. 7. Mūniminī, veniēbam, dūcēbar,

¹ Pronounce in two syllables, *Cē'pheus*. ² Eī, at him, dative with *irātus*.

³ The present is often used, as in English, in speaking of a past action, in order to make the story more vivid and exciting.

dicētur. 8. Mittiminī, mittitis, mittēris, mitteris, agēbāminī. 9. Dīcitur, dīcit, mūniuntur, reperient, audientur.

II. 1. I was being driven, I was driving, we were leading, we were being led, he says, it is said. 2. I shall send, I shall be sent, you will find, you will be found, they lead, they are led. 3. I am found, we are led, they are driven, you were being led (*sing. and plur.*). 4. We shall drive, we shall be driven, he leads, he is being led, they will come, they will be fortified. 5. They were ruling, they were being ruled, you will send, you will be sent, you are sent, (*sing. and plur.*). 6. He was being led, he will come, you are said (*sing. and plur.*).

171. PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Tum ōrāculum ita respondet: "Mala est fortūna tua. Neptūnus, magnus aquārum deus, terrae Aethiopiae inimicus, eās poenās mittit. Sed parā irātō deō sacrum idōneum et mōnstrum saevum ex patriā tuā agētur. Andromeda filia tua est mōnstrō grāta. Dā eam mōnstrō. Servā cāram patriam et vītam populī tuī." Andromeda autem erat 5 puella pulchra. Eam amābat Cēpheus maximē.

LESSON XXIX

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF -IŌ VERBS · PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE

172. Review the active voice of *capiō*, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§ 492).

a. The present forms *capior* and *capiuntur* are like *audior*, *audiuntur*, and the rest of the tense is like *regor*.

b. In like manner inflect the passive of *iaciō* and *rapiō*.

173. **The Infinitive.** The infinitive mood gives the general meaning of the verb without person or number; as, *amāre*, *to love*. Infinitive means *unlimited*. The forms of the other moods, being limited by person and number, are called the *finite*, or limited, verb forms.

174. The forms of the Present Infinitive, active and passive, are as follows :

CONJ.	PRES. STEM	PRES. INFINITIVE ACTIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE PASSIVE
I.	amā-	amā're, <i>to love</i>	amā'rī, <i>to be loved</i>
II.	monē-	monē're, <i>to advise</i>	monē'rī, <i>to be advised</i>
III.	rege- cape-	re'gere, <i>to rule</i> ca'pere, <i>to take</i>	re'gī, <i>to be ruled</i> ca'pī, <i>to be taken</i>
IV.	audī-	audī're, <i>to hear</i>	audī'rī, <i>to be heard</i>

1. Observe that to form the present active infinitive we add **-re** to the present stem.

a. The present infinitive of **sum** is **esse**. There is no passive.

2. Observe that the present passive infinitive is formed from the active by changing final **-e** to **-ī**, except in the third conjugation, which changes final **-ere** to **-ī**.

3. Give the active and passive present infinitives of **doceō**, **sedeō**, **volō**, **cūrō**, **mittō**, **dūcō**, **mūniō**, **reperiō**, **iaciō**, **rapiō**.

175. The forms of the Present Imperative, active and passive, are as follows :

ACTIVE ¹			PASSIVE	
CONJ.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
I.	a'mā	amā'te	amā're, <i>be thou loved</i>	amā'minī, <i>be ye loved</i>
II.	mo'nē	monē'te	monē're, <i>be thou advised</i>	monē'minī, <i>be ye advised</i>
III.	re'ge	re'gite	re'gere, <i>be thou ruled</i>	regi'minī, <i>be ye ruled</i>
	ca'pe	ca'pite	ca'pere, <i>be thou taken</i>	capi'minī, <i>be ye taken</i>
IV.	au'dī	audī'te	audī're, <i>be thou heard</i>	audī'minī, <i>be ye heard</i>

1. Observe that the second person singular of the present passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and that both singular and plural are like the second person singular² and plural, respectively, of the present passive indicative.

2. Give the present imperative, both active and passive, of the verbs in § 174. 3.

¹ For the sake of comparison the active is repeated from § 161. ² That is, using the personal ending **-re**. A form like **amāre** may be either *indicative*, *infinitive*, or *imperative*.

176.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

I. 1. Tum Perseus ālis ad terrās multās volābit. 2. Mōnstrum saevum per aquās properat et mox agrōs nostrōs vāstābit. 3. Sī autem Cēpheus ad ōrāculum properābit, ōrāculum ita respondēbit. 4. Quis tēlis Perseī superābitur? Multa mōnstra tēlis eius superābuntur. 5. Cum cūrīs magnīs et lacrimīs multis agricolae ex domiciliis cārīs aguntur. 6. Multa loca vāstābantur et multa oppida dēlēbantur. 7. Mōnstrum est validum, tamen superābitur. 8. Crēdēsne semper verbis ōrāculi? Ego iīs nōn semper crēdam. 9. Pārēbitne Cēpheus ōrāculō? Verba ōrāculi eī persuādēbunt. 10. Sī nōn fugiēmus, oppidum capiētur et oppidānī necābuntur. 11. Vocāte puerōs et nārrāte fābulam clāram dē mōnstrō saevō.

II. 1. Fly thou, to be cared for, be ye sent, lead thou. 2. To lead, to be led, be ye seized, fortify thou. 3. To be hurled, to fly, send thou, to be found. 4. To be sent, be ye led, to hurl, to be taken. 5. Find thou, hear ye, be ye ruled, to be fortified.

LESSON XXX

SYNOPSIS IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE
DENOTING *FROM*

177. You should learn to give rapidly synopses of the verbs you have had, as follows :¹

CONJUGATION I

CONJUGATION II

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	a'mō	a'mor		mo'neō	mo'neor
<i>Imperf.</i>	amā'bam	amā'bar		monē'bam	monē'bar
<i>Fut.</i>	amā'bō	amā'bor		monē'bō	monē'bor

¹ Synopses should be given not only in the first person, but in other persons as well, particularly in the third singular and plural.

CONJUGATION I

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	a'mā	amā're

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amā're	amā'rī
--------------	--------	--------

CONJUGATION II

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
mo'nē	monē're

monē're	monē'rī
---------	---------

CONJUGATION III

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	re'gō	re'gor
<i>Imperf.</i>	regē'bam	regē'bar
<i>Fut.</i>	re'gam	re'gar

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	re'ge	re'gere
--------------	-------	---------

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	re'gere	re'gī
--------------	---------	-------

CONJUGATION III

(-iō verbs)

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
ca'piō	ca'pior
capiē'bam	capiē'bar
ca'pīam	ca'piar

ca'pe	ca'pere
-------	---------

ca'pere	ca'pī
---------	-------

CONJUGATION IV

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	au'diō	au'dior
<i>Imperf.</i>	audiē'bam	audiē'bar
<i>Fut.</i>	au'diam	au'diar

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	au'dī	audi're
--------------	-------	---------

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	audi're	audi'rī
--------------	---------	---------

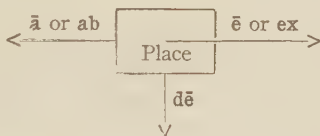
1. Give the synopsis of *rapiō*, *mūniō*, *reperiō*, *doceō*, *videō*, *dicō*, *agō*, *laudō*, *portō*, and vary the person and number.

178. We learned in § 50 that one of the three relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from*. This is sometimes called the *separative ablative*, and it has a number of special uses. You have already grown familiar with the first mentioned below.

179. RULE. Ablative of the Place From. *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions ā or ab, dē, ē or ex.*

Agricolae ex agrīs veniunt, the farmers come from the fields

a. ā or ab denotes *from near* a place; ē or ex, *out from* it; and dē, *down from* it. This may be represented graphically as follows:



180. RULE. Ablative of Separation. *Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning.*

a. If the separation is *actual* and *literal* of one material thing from another, the preposition ā or ab, ē or ex, or dē is generally used. If no actual motion takes place of one thing from another, no preposition is necessary.

(a) *Perseus terram ā mōnstrīs liberat*

Perseus frees the land from monsters (literal separation
— actual motion is expressed)

(b) *Perseus terram trīstitiā liberat*

Perseus frees the land from sorrow (figurative separation
— no actual motion is expressed)

181. RULE. Ablative of the Personal Agent. *The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition ā or ab.*

a. In this construction the English translation of ā, ab is *by* rather than *from*. This ablative is regularly used with passive verbs to indicate the *person by whom* the act was performed.

*Mōnstrum ā Perseō necātur, the monster is being slain
by (lit. from) Perseus*

b. Note that the active form of the above sentence would be **Perseus mōnstrum necat**, *Perseus is slaying the monster*. In the passive the *object* of the active verb becomes the *subject*, and the *subject* of the active verb becomes the *ablative of the personal agent*, with **ā** or **ab**.

c. Distinguish carefully between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent. Both are often translated into English by the preposition *by*. (Cf. § 100. b.) *Means is a thing; the agent or actor is a person*. The ablative of means has no preposition. The ablative of the personal agent has **ā** or **ab**. Compare

Fera sagittā necātur, *the wild beast is killed by an arrow*

Fera ā Diānā necātur, *the wild beast is killed by Diana*

Sagittā, in the first sentence, is the ablative of means; **ā Diānā**, in the second, is the ablative of the personal agent.

182.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

I. 1. Virī inopiā cibī dēfessī ab eō locō discēdent. 2. Germāni castris Rōmānis adpropinquābant, tamen lēgātus cōpiās ā proeliō continēbat. 3. Multa Gallōrum oppida ab Rōmānis capientur. 4. Tum Rōmāni tōtum populum eōrum oppidōrum gladiis pilisque interficient. 5. Oppidāni Rōmānis resistent, sed dēfessī longō proeliō fugient. 6. Multi ex Galliā fugiēbant et in Germānōrum vicis habitābant. 7. Miserī nautae vulnerantur ab inimicis¹ saevīs et cibō egent. 8. Discēdite et date viris frūmentum et cōpiam vinī. 9. Cōpiae nostrae ā proeliō continēbantur ab Sextō lēgātō. 10. Id oppidum ab prōvinciā Rōmānā longē aberat.

II. 1. The weary sailors were approaching a place dear to the goddess Diana. 2. They were without food and without wine. 3. Then Galba and seven other men are sent to the ancient island by Sextus. 4. Already they are not far away from the land, and they see armed men on a high place. 5. They are kept from the land by the men with spears and arrows. 6. The men kept hurling their weapons down from the high place with great eagerness.

¹ **inimicis**, here used as a noun. See vocabulary.

LESSON XXXI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF *SUM*

183. Principal Parts. There are certain parts of the verb that are of so much consequence in tense formation that we call them the *principal parts*.

In English the principal parts are the present, the past, and the past participle; as, *go, went, gone; see, saw, seen*, etc.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the *first person singular of the present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *first person singular of the perfect indicative*, and the *perfect passive participle*.

184. Conjugation Stems. From the principal parts we get three conjugation stems, from which are formed the entire conjugation. We have already learned about the **present stem**, which is found from the present infinitive (cf. § 126. a). The other two stems are the **perfect stem** and the **participial stem**.

185. The Perfect Stem. The perfect stem of the verb is formed in various ways, but may always be *found by dropping -ī from the first person singular of the perfect*, the third of the principal parts. From the perfect stem are formed the following tenses:

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

THE PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE (ENGLISH PAST PERFECT)

THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

All these tenses express completed action in present, past, or future time respectively.

186. The Endings of the Perfect. The perfect active indicative is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. These endings are different from those found in any other tense, and are as follows:

SING. { 1. -ī, *I*
2. -istī, *you*
3. -it, *he, she, it*

PLUR. { 1. -imus, *we*
2. -istis, *you*
3. -ērunt or -ēre, *they*

187. Inflection of *sum* in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative:

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.
PRIN. PARTS <i>sum</i>	<i>esse</i>	<i>fuī</i>
	PERFECT STEM <i>fu-</i>	
SINGULAR	PERFECT	PLURAL
<i>fu'ī, I have been, I was</i>	<i>fu'imus, we have been, we were</i>	
<i>fuis'tī, you have been, you were</i>	<i>fuis'tis, you have been, you were</i>	
<i>fu'it, he has been, he was</i>	<i>fuērunt or fuē're, they have been, they were</i>	
	PLUPERFECT (TENSE SIGN <i>-erā-</i>)	
<i>fu'eram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerā'mus, we had been</i>	
<i>fu'erās, you had been</i>	<i>fuerā'tis, you had been</i>	
<i>fu'erat, he had been</i>	<i>fu'erant, they had been</i>	
	FUTURE PERFECT (TENSE SIGN <i>-eri-</i>)	
<i>fu'erō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fue'rimus, we shall have been</i>	
<i>fu'eris, you will have been</i>	<i>fue'ritis, you will have been</i>	
<i>fu'erit, he will have been</i>	<i>fu'erint, they will have been</i>	

1. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.
2. Observe that the pluperfect may be formed by adding *eram*, the imperfect of *sum*, to the perfect stem. The tense sign is *-erā-*.
3. Observe that the future perfect may be formed by adding *erō*, the future of *sum*, to the perfect stem. But the third person plural ends in *-erint*, not in *-erunt*. The tense sign is *-eri-*.
4. All active perfects, pluperfects, and future perfects are formed on the perfect stem and inflected in the same way.

188.

DIALOGUE

THE BOYS TITUS, MARCUS, AND QUINTUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

M. Ubi fuistis, Tite et Quinte?

T. Ego in meō lūdō fuī et Quintus in suō lūdō fuit. Bonī puerī fuimus. Fuitne Sextus in vicō hodiē?

M. Fuit. Nūper per agrōs proximōs fluviō properābat. Ibi is et Cornēlius habent nāvigium.

T. *Nāvigium* dicis? Alii¹ nārrā eam fābulam!

M. Vērō (*Yes, truly*), pulchrum et novum nāvigium!

Q. Cuius pecūnia² Sextus et Cornēlius id nāvigium parant? Quis iis pecūniam dat?

M. Amīci Cornēli multum habent aurum et puer pecūniā nōn eget.

T. Quō puerī nāvigābunt? Nāvigābuntne longē ā terrā?

M. Dubia sunt cōsilia eōrum. Sed hodiē, crēdō, si ventus erit idō-neus, ad maximam insulam nāvigābunt. Iam anteā ibi fuērunt. Tum autem ventus erat perfīdus et puerī magnō in periculō erant.

Q. Aqua ventō commōta est inimica nautis semper, et saepe perfīdus ventus nāvigia rapit, agit, dēletque. Ii puerī, si nōn fuerint maximē attentī, irātā aquā et validō ventō superābuntur et ita interficiuntur.

189.

EXERCISE

1. Where had the boys been before? They had been in school.
2. Where had Sextus been? He had been in a field next to the river.
3. Who has been with Sextus to-day? Cornelius has been with him.
4. Who says so? Marcus.
5. If the wind has been suitable, the boys have been in the boat.
6. Soon we shall sail with the boys.
7. There³ will be no danger, if we are (shall have been) careful.⁴

LESSON XXXII

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

190. Meanings of the Perfect. The perfect tense has two distinct meanings. The first of these is equivalent to the English present perfect, or perfect with *have*, and denotes that the action of the verb is complete at the time of speaking; as, *I have finished my work*. As this denotes completed action at a definite time, it is called the **perfect definite**.

¹ Dative case. (Cf. § 109.) ² Ablative of means. ³ The expletive *there* is not expressed, but the verb will precede the subject, as in English. ⁴ This predicate adjective must be nominative plural to agree with *we*.

The perfect is also used to denote an action that happened *some-time in the past*; as, *I finished my work*. As no definite time is specified, this is called the **perfect indefinite**. It corresponds to the ordinary use of the English past tense.

a. Note carefully the difference between the following tenses:

I { *was finishing* } *my work* (imperfect, § 134)
 { *used to finish* }

I finished my work (perfect indefinite)

I have finished my work (perfect definite)

When telling a story the Latin uses the *perfect indefinite* to mark the different *forward steps* of the narrative, and the *imperfect* to describe *situations and circumstances* that attend these steps. If the following sentences were Latin, what tenses would be used?

"Last week I went to Boston. I was trying to find an old friend of mine, but he was out of the city. Yesterday I returned home."

191. Inflection of the Perfect. We learned in § 186 that any perfect is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. The inflection in the four regular conjugations is then as follows:

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III		CONJ. IV
amāvī	monuī	rēxī	cēpī	audīvī
<i>I have loved</i>	<i>I have advised</i>	<i>I have ruled</i>	<i>I have taken</i>	<i>I have heard</i>
<i>I loved or</i>	<i>I advised or</i>	<i>I ruled or</i>	<i>I took or</i>	<i>I heard or</i>
<i>did love</i>	<i>did advise</i>	<i>did rule</i>	<i>did take</i>	<i>did hear</i>

PERFECT STEMS

amāv-	monu-	rēx-	cēp-	audīv-
SINGULAR				
1. amāvī	mo'nuī	rē'xī	cē'pī	audīvī
2. amāvis'tī	monuis'tī	rēxis'tī	cēpis'tī	audīvis'tī
3. amāvit	mo'nuit	rē'xit	cē'pit	audīvit
PLURAL				
1. amāvimus	monu'imus	rē'ximus	cē'pimus	audīvimus
2. amāvis'tis	monuis'tis	rēxis'tis	cēpis'tis	audīvis'tis
3. amāvē'runt	monuē'runt	rēxē'runt	cēpē'runt	audīvē'runt
or amāvē're	or monuē're	or rēxē're	or cēpē're	or audīvē're

1. The first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. From this we get the perfect stem. *This shows the absolute necessity of learning the principal parts thoroughly.*

2. Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding -vī to the present stem. Like amāvī inflect parāvī, vocāvī, cūrāvī, laudāvī.

3. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect. Drill on it.

192. Learn the principal parts and inflect the perfects:

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	
dō	dāre	dedī	<i>give</i>
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	<i>destroy</i>
habeō	habēre	habuī	<i>have</i>
moveō	moyēre	mōvī	<i>move</i>
pāreō	pārēre	pāruī	<i>obey</i>
prohibeō	prohibēre	prohibuī	<i>restrain, keep from</i>
videō	vidēre	vidī	<i>see</i>
dicō	dicere	dixī	<i>say</i>
discēdō	discēdere	discessī	<i>depart</i>
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	<i>lead</i>
faciō	facere	fēcī	<i>make, do</i>
mittō	mittere	mīsī	<i>send</i>
mūniō	mūnīre	mūnivī	<i>fortify</i>
veniō	venīre	vēnī	<i>come</i>

193. PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

Cēpheus, adversā fortunā maximē commōtus, discessit et multis cum lacrimīs populō Aethiopiae verba ōrāculi nārrāvit. Fāta Andromedae, puellae pulchrae, ā tōtō populō dēplōrābantur, tamen nūllum erat auxilium. Deinde Cēpheus cum plēnō tristitiae animō cāram suam filiam ex oppidī portā ad aquam dūxit et brachia eius ad saxa 5 dūra revīxit. Tum amīci puellae miserāe longē discessērunt et diū mōnstrum saevum exspectāvērunt.

Tum forte Perseus, ālis frētus, super Aethiopiam volābat. Vidit populum, Andromedam, lacrimās, et, magnopere attonitus, ad terram dēscendit. Tum Cēpheus eī tōtās cūrās nārrāvit et ita dixit: "Pārēbō 10 verbis ōrāculi, et prō patriā filiam meam dabō; sed sī id mōnstrum interficiēs et Andromedam servābis, tibi (*to you*) eam dabō."

LESSON XXXIII

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE
PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

194.	CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III		CONJ. IV
	amō	moneō	regō	capiō	audiō
PERFECT STEMS	amāv-	monu-	rēx-	cēp-	audīv-

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

TENSE SIGN -erā-

SINGULAR

<i>I had loved</i>	<i>I had advised</i>	<i>I had ruled</i>	<i>I had taken</i>	<i>I had heard</i>
1. amā'veram	monu'eram	rē'xeram	cē'peram	audi'veram
2. amā'verās	monu'erās	rē'xerās	cē'perās	audi'verās
3. amā'verat	monu'erat	rē'xerat	cē'perat	audi'verat

PLURAL

1. amāverā'mus	monuerā'mus	rēxerā'mus	cēperā'mus	audīverā'mus
2. amāverā'tis	monuerā'tis	rēxerā'tis	cēperā'tis	audīverā'tis
3. amā'verant	monu'erant	rē'xerant	cē'perant	audī'verant

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

TENSE SIGN -eri-

SINGULAR

<i>I shall have loved</i>	<i>I shall have advised</i>	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	<i>I shall have taken</i>	<i>I shall have heard</i>
1. amā'verō	monu'erō	rē'xerō	cē'perō	audi'verō
2. amā'veris	monu'eris	rē'xeris	cē'peris	audi'veris
3. amā'verit	monu'erit	rē'xerit	cē'perit	audi'verit

PLURAL

1. amāve'rimus	monue'rimus	rēxe'rimus	cēpe'rimus	audīve'rimus
2. amāve'ritis	monue'ritis	rēxe'ritis	cēpe'ritis	audīve'ritis
3. amā'verint	monu'erint	rē'xerint	cē'perint	audī'verint

1. Observe that these are all inflected alike and the rules for formation given in § 187. 2-4 hold good here.

2. In like manner inflect the pluperfect and future perfect indicative active of *dō*, *portō*, *dēleō*, *moveō*, *habeō*, *dīcō*, *discēdō*, *faciō*, *veniō*, *mūniō*.

195. The Perfect Active Infinitive. The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem.

CONJ.	PERFECT STEM	PERFECT INFINITIVE
I.	amāv-	amāvis'se, <i>to have loved</i>
II.	monu-	monuis'se, <i>to have advised</i>
III.	(a) rēx-	rēxis'se, <i>to have ruled</i>
	(b) cēp-	cēpis'se, <i>to have taken</i>
IV.	audīv-	audivis'se, <i>to have heard</i>
sum	fu-	fuis'se, <i>to have been</i>

I. In like manner give the perfect infinitive active of *dō*, *portō*, *dēleō*, *moveō*, *habeō*, *dīcō*, *discēdō*, *faciō*, *veniō*, *mūniō*.

196.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Habuistī, mōvērunt, miserant. 2. Vidit, dixeris, dūxisse. 3. Mīstis, pārūrunt, discesserāmus. 4. Mūnivit, dederam, miserō. 5. Habuerimus, delēvī, pārui, fuisse. 6. Dederās, mūniveritis, vēnerātis, mīsisse. 7. Vēnerās, fēcisse, dederātis, portāveris.

8. Quem verba ōrāculī mōverant? Populum verba ōrāculī mōverant. 9. Cui Cēpheus verba ōrāculī nārrāverit? Perseō Cēpheus verba ōrāculī nārrāverit. 10. Amīcī ab Andromeda discesserint. 11. Mōnstrum saevum domicilia multa dēlēverat. 12. Ubi mōnstrum vidistis? Id in aquā vidimus. 13. Quid mōnstrum faciet? Mōnstrum Andromedam interficiet.

II. 1. They have obeyed, we have destroyed, I shall have had. 2. We shall have sent, I had come, they have fortified. 3. I had departed, he has obeyed, you have sent (*sing. and plur.*). 4. To have destroyed, to have seen, he will have given, they have carried. 5. He had destroyed, he has moved, you have had (*sing. and plur.*). 6. I have given, you had moved (*sing. and plur.*), we had said. 7. You will have made (*sing. and plur.*), they will have led, to have given.

8. Who had seen the monster? Andromeda had seen it. 9. Why had the men departed from ¹ the towns? They had departed because the monster had come. 10. Did Cepheus obey ² the oracle ³? He did.

¹ ex. What would ab mean? ² Did . . . obey, perfect tense. ³ What case?

LESSON XXXIV

REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

197. A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation :

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE	{	PRESENT = First of the principal parts
		IMPERFECT = Present stem + -ba-m
		FUTURE = Present stem + { -bō , Conj. I and II -a-m , Conj. III and IV
		PERFECT = Third of the principal parts
		PLUPERFECT = Perfect stem + -era-m
		FUTURE PERFECT = Perfect stem + -erō

198. The synopsis of the active voice of **amō**, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows :

PRINCIPAL PARTS **amō**, **amāre**, **amāvī**

PRES. STEM amā-		PERF. STEM amāv-	
INDIC.	{	INDIC.	{
	<i>Pres.</i> amō		<i>Perf.</i> amāvī
	<i>Imperf.</i> amābam		<i>Pluperf.</i> amāveram
	<i>Fut.</i> amābō		<i>Fut. perf.</i> amāverō
PRES. IMPV. amā			
PRES. INFIN. amāre		PERF. INFIN. amāvisse	

1. Learn to write in the same form and to give rapidly the principal parts and synopsis of **parō**, **dō**, **laudō**, **dēleō**, **habeō**, **moveō**, **pāreō**, **videō**, **dīcō**, **discēdō**, **dūcō**, **mittō**, **capiō**, **mūniō**, **veniō**.¹

199. Learn the following principal parts : ²

	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	
IRREGULAR VERBS	{ sum	esse	fuī	<i>be</i>
	{ ab'sum	abes'se	ā'fuī	<i>be away</i>
	{ dō	dare	dedī	<i>give</i>

¹ Learn to give synopses rapidly, and not only in the first person singular but in any person of either number. ² These are all verbs that you have had before, and the perfect is the only new form to be learned.

CONJUGATION II	{	contineō	continēre	continui	<i>hold in, keep</i>
		doceō	docēre	docui	<i>teach</i>
		egeō	egēre	egui	<i>need</i>
		faveō	favēre	favi	<i>favor</i>
		iubeō	iubēre	iussi	<i>order</i>
		noceō	nocēre	nocui	<i>injure</i>
		persuadeō	persuādēre	persuasi	<i>persuade</i>
		respondeō	respondēre	respondi	<i>reply</i>
		sedeō	sedēre	sedi	<i>sit</i>
CONJUGATION III	{	studeō	studēre	studui	<i>be eager</i>
		agō	agere	egi	<i>drive</i>
		crēdō	crēdere	crēdidī	<i>believe</i>
		fugiō	fugere	fugī	<i>flee</i>
		iaciō	iacere	iēcī	<i>hurl</i>
		interficiō	interficere	interfēcī	<i>kill</i>
		rapiō	rapere	rapui	<i>seize</i>
CONJUGATION IV	{	resis'tō	resis'tere	re'stitī	<i>resist</i>
		repe'riō	reperi're	rep'peri	<i>find</i>

200. PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Concluded*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290. Read the whole story.

Perseus semper proeliō studēbat¹ et respondit,¹ "Verba tua sunt maximē grāta," et laetus arma sua magica parāvit.¹ Subitō mōnstrum vidētur; celeriter per aquam properat et Andromedae adpropinquat. Eius amīcī longē absunt et misera puella est sōla. Perseus autem sine morā super aquam volāvit.¹ Subitō dēscendit¹ et dūrō gladiō 5 saevum mōnstrum graviter vulnerāvit.¹ Diū pugnātur,² diū proelium est dubium. Dēnique autem Perseus mōnstrum interfēcīt¹ et victōriam reportāvit.¹ Tum ad saxum vēnit¹ et Andromedam liberāvit¹ et eam ad Cēpheum dūxit.¹ Is, nūper miser, nunc laetus, ita dixit¹: "Tuō auxiliō, mī amīce, cāra filia mea est liberā; tua est Andromeda." Diū Perseus 10 cum Andromedā ibi habitābat¹ et magnopere ā tōtō populō amābātur.¹

¹ See if you can explain the use of the perfects and imperfects in this passage. ² The verb *pugnātur* means, literally, *it is fought*; translate freely, *the battle is fought*, or *the contest rages*. The verb *pugnō* in Latin is intransitive,

and so does not have a personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indefinite subject, designated in English by *it*, is called impersonal.

LESSON XXXV

THE PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE · THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

201. The fourth and last of the principal parts (§ 183) is the **perfect passive participle**. *From it we get the participial stem on which are formed the future active infinitive and all the passive perfects.*

1. Learn the following principal parts, which are for the first time given in full:

CONJ.	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PASS. PART.
I.	amō	amā'-re	amā'v-ī	amā't-us
This is the model for all regular verbs of the first conjugation.				
II.	mo'neō	monē'-re	mo'nu-ī	mo'nit-us
III.	regō	re'ge-re	rēx-ī	rēct-us
	ca'piō	ca'pe-re	cēp-ī	capt-us
IV.	au'diō	audī'-re	audī'v-ī	audī't-us

2. The base of the participial stem is found by dropping -us from the perfect passive participle.

202. In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle; as, *I have been loved, I had been loved, I shall have been loved.*

Very similarly, in Latin, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses use respectively the present, imperfect, and future of **sum** as an auxiliary verb with the perfect passive participle, as

Perfect passive, **amā'tus sum**, *I have been or was loved*

Pluperfect passive, **amā'tus eram**, *I had been loved*

Future perfect passive, **amā'tus erō**, *I shall have been loved*

1. In the same way give the synopsis of the corresponding tenses of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and give the English meanings.

203. **Nature of the Participle.** A participle is partly verb and partly adjective. As a verb it possesses tense and voice. As an adjective it

is declined and agrees with the word it modifies in gender, number, and case.

204. The perfect passive participle is declined like **bonus, bona, bonum**, and in the compound tenses (§ 202) it agrees as a predicate adjective with the subject of the verb.

EXAMPLES IN SINGULAR	{	Vir laudātus est, <i>the man was praised, or has been praised</i>
		Puella laudāta est, <i>the girl was praised, or has been praised</i>
		Cōnsilium laudātum est, <i>the plan was praised, or has been praised</i>
EXAMPLES IN PLURAL	{	Virī laudātī sunt, <i>the men were praised, or have been praised</i>
		Puellae laudātae sunt, <i>the girls were praised, or have been praised</i>
		Cōnsilia laudāta sunt, <i>the plans were praised, or have been praised</i>

1. Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of **amō, moneō, regō, capiō, and audiō** (§§ 488-492).

205. The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding **esse**, the present infinitive of **sum**, to the perfect passive participle; as, **amāt-us (-a, -um) esse**, *to have been loved*; **mo'nit-us (-a, -um) esse**, *to have been advised*.

1. Form the perfect passive infinitive of **regō, capiō, audiō**, and give the English meanings.

206. The future active infinitive is formed by adding **esse**, the present infinitive of **sum**, to the future active participle. This participle is made by adding **-ūrus, -a, -um** to the base of the participial stem. Thus the future active infinitive of **amō** is **amāt-ū'rus (-a, -um) esse**, *to be about to love*.

a. Note that in forming the three tenses of the active infinitive we use all three conjugation stems:

Present, **amāre** (present stem), *to love*

Perfect, **amāvisse** (perfect stem), *to have loved*

Future, **amātūrus esse** (participial stem), *to be about to love*

1. Give the three tenses of the active infinitive of **laudō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō**, with the English meanings.

207.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fābula Andromedae nārrāta est. 2. Multae fābulae ā magistrō nārrātae sunt. 3. Ager ab agricolā validō arātus erat. 4. Agrī ab agricolis validīs arātī erant. 5. Aurum ā servō perfidō ad domicilium suum portātum erit. 6. Nostra arma ā lēgātō laudāta sunt. Quis vestra arma laudāvit? 7. Ab ancillā tuā ad cēnam vocātae sumus. 8. Andromeda mōnstrō nōn data est, quia mōnstrum ā Perseō necātum erat.

II. 1. The provinces were laid waste, the field had been laid waste, the towns will have been laid waste. 2. The oracles were heard, the oracle was heard, the oracles had been heard. 3. The oracle will have been heard, the province had been captured, the boats have been captured. 4. The fields were laid waste, the man was advised, the girls will have been advised. 5. The towns had been ruled, we shall have been captured, you will have been heard.

LESSON XXXVI

 REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS · PREPOSITIONS
 YES-OR-NO QUESTIONS

208. The following list shows the principal parts of all the verbs you have had excepting those used in the paradigms. The parts you have had before are given for review, and the perfect participle is the only new form for you to learn. Sometimes one or more of the principal parts are lacking, which means that the verb has no forms based on that stem. A few verbs lack the perfect passive participle but have the future active participle in *-ūrus*, which appears in the principal parts instead.

IRREGULAR VERBS

sum	esse	fuī	futūrus	<i>be</i>
absum	abesse	āfuī	āfutūrus	<i>be away</i>
dō ¹	dare	dedī	datus	<i>give</i>

¹ dō is best classed with the irregular verbs because of the short a in the present and participial stems.

CONJUGATION I

portō	portāre	portāvī	portātus	<i>carry</i>
--------------	----------------	----------------	-----------------	--------------

So for all verbs of this conjugation thus far used.

CONJUGATION II

contineō	continēre	continui	contentus	<i>hold in, keep</i>
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētus	<i>destroy</i>
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus	<i>teach</i>
egeō	egēre	egui	—	<i>lack</i>
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautūrus	<i>favor</i>
iubeō	iubēre	iussī	iussus	<i>order</i>
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtus	<i>move</i>
noceō	nocēre	nocuī	nocitūrus	<i>injure</i>
pāreō	pārēre	pāruī	—	<i>obey</i>
persuādeō	persuādēre	persuāsī	persuāsus	<i>persuade [from</i>
prohibeō	prohibēre	prohibuī	prohibitus	<i>restrain, keep</i>
respondeō	respondēre	 respondi	respōnsus	<i>reply</i>
sedeō	sedēre	sēdī	-sessus	<i>sit</i>
studeō	studēre	studuī	—	<i>be eager</i>
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus	<i>see</i>

CONJUGATION III

agō	agere	ēgī	āctus	<i>drive</i>
crēdō	crēdere	crēdidī	crēditus	<i>believe</i>
dicō	dicere	dīxī	dictus	<i>say</i>
discēdō	discēdere	discessī	discessus	<i>depart</i>
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductus	<i>lead</i>
faciō ¹	facere	fēcī	factus	<i>make</i>
fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitūrus	<i>flee</i>
iaciō	iacere	iēcī	iactus	<i>hurl</i>
interficiō	interficere	interfēcī	interfectus	<i>kill</i>
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus	<i>send</i>
rapiō	rapere	rapuī	raptus	<i>seize</i>
resistō	resistere	restitī	—	<i>resist</i>

CONJUGATION IV

mūniō	mūnīre	mūnīvī	mūnītus	<i>fortify</i>
reperiō	reperīre	rep'peri	reptus	<i>find</i>
veniō	venīre	vēnī	ventus	<i>come</i>

¹ faciō has an irregular passive which will be presented later.

209. Prepositions. 1. We learned in §§ 52, 53 that only the *accusative* and the *ablative* are used with prepositions, and that prepositions expressing ablative relations govern the ablative case. Those we have had are here summarized. The table following should be learned.

ā or ab , <i>from, by</i>	ē or ex , <i>out from, out of</i>
cum , <i>with</i>	prō , <i>before, in front of; for, in behalf of</i>
dē , <i>down from, concerning</i>	sine , <i>without</i>

2. Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the *accusative* (§ 52). Of these we have had the following:

ad, *to; apud*, *among; per*, *through*

There are many others which you will meet as we proceed.

3. The preposition **in** when meaning *in* or *on* governs the *ablative*; when meaning *to, into, against* (relations foreign to the ablative) **in** governs the *accusative*.

210. Yes-or-No Questions. Questions not introduced by some interrogative word like *who, why, when*, etc., but expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, may take one of three forms:

1. *Is he coming?* (Asking for information. Implying nothing as to the answer expected.)
2. *Is he not coming?* (Expecting the answer *yes*.)
3. *He is n't coming, is he?* (Expecting the answer *no*.)

These three forms are rendered in Latin as follows:

1. **Venitne?** *is he coming?*
2. **Nōne venit?** *is he not coming?*
3. **Num venit?** *he is n't coming, is he?*

a. **-ne**, the question sign, is usually added to the verb, which then stands first.

b. We learned in § 56. b that *yes-or-no* questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, **ita**, **vērō**, **certē**, etc. (*so, truly, certainly*, etc.) may be used for *yes*, and **nōn**, **minimē**, etc. for *no* if the denial is emphatic, as, *by no means, not at all*.

211.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

I. 1. Nōnne habēbat Cornēlia ōrnāmenta aurī? Habēbat. 2. Num Sextus lēgātus scūtum in dextrō bracchiō gerēbat? Nōn in dextrō, sed sinistrō in bracchiō Sextus scūtum gerēbat. 3. Frūstrā bella multa ab Gallīs gesta erant. 4. Ubi oppidum ā perfidō Sextō occupātum est, oppidānī miserī gladiō interfectī sunt. 5. Id oppidum erat plēnum frūmentī. 6. Nōnne Sextus ab oppidānīs frūmentum postulāvit? Vērō, sed īi recūsāvērunt frūmentum dare. 7. Cūr oppidum ab Sextō dēlētum est? Quia frūmentum recūsātum est. 8. Ea victōria nōn dubia erat. 9. Oppidānī erant dēfessī et armīs egēbant. 10. Num fugam temptāvērunt? Minimē.

II. 1. Where was Julia standing? She was standing where you had ordered. 2. Was Julia wearing any ornaments? She had many ornaments of gold. 3. Did she not attempt flight when she saw the danger? She did. 4. Who captured her? Galba captured her without delay and held her by the left arm. 5. She didn't have the lady's gold, did she? No, the gold had been taken by a faithless maid and has been brought back.

~~~~~

Fourth Review, Lessons XXVII-XXXVI, §§ 513-516

~~~~~

LESSON XXXVII

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM* • THE INFINITIVE USED
AS IN ENGLISH

212. Learn the principal parts of *possum*, *I am able*, *I can*, and its inflection in the indicative and infinitive. (Cf. § 495.)

a. *Possum*, *I can*, is a compound of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*, *I am*.

213. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative. The *infinitive* (cf. § 173) is a *verbal noun*. Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun. As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb. The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English.

1. In English certain verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of a substantive in the objective case and an infinitive, as, *he commanded the men to flee*. Such object clauses are called infinitive clauses, and the substantive is said to be the subject of the infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, some verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case, as, *Is virōs fugere iussit, he commanded the men to flee*.

214. RULE. Subject of the Infinitive. *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

215. The Complementary Infinitive. In English a verb is often followed by an infinitive to complete its meaning, as, *the Romans are able to conquer the Gauls*. This is called the *complementary* infinitive, as the predicate is not *complete* without the added infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, *verbs of incomplete predication* are completed by the infinitive. Among such verbs are **possum**, *I am able, I can*; **properō**, *I hasten*; **temptō**, *I attempt*; as

Rōmānī Gallōs superāre possunt, *the Romans are able to*
(or *can*) *conquer the Gauls*

Bellum gerere mātūrant, *they hasten to wage war*

a. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

Malī puerī esse bonī nōn possunt, *bad boys are not able*
to (or cannot) be good

Observe that **bonī** agrees with **puerī**.

216. The Infinitive used as a Noun. In English the infinitive is often used as a pure noun, as the subject of a sentence, or as a predicate nominative. For example, *To conquer* (= conquering) *is pleasing*; *To see* (= seeing) *is to believe* (= believing). The same use of the infinitive is found in Latin, especially with **est**, as

Superāre est grātum, *to conquer is pleasing*
Vidēre est crēdere, *to see is to believe*

a In the construction above, the infinitive often has a subject, which must then be in the accusative case, as

**Galbam superāre inimicōs est grātum multīs, for Galba
to conquer his enemies is pleasing to many**

b. An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular. Thus, in the sentence **superāre est grātum**, the predicate adjective **grātum** is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with **superāre** the subject.

217.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Magister lūdī liberōs cum diligentīā labōrāre iussit. 2. Egēre cibō et vinō est virīs molestum. 3. Virī armātī vetuērunt Gallōs castra ibi pōnere. 4. Estne lēgātus in castellō an in mūrō? Is est prō portā. 5. Ubi nostrī¹ fugere incēpērunt, lēgātus ab vestris¹ captus est. 6. Galli castellum ibi oppugnāverant ubi praesidium erat infirmum. 7. Aliī pugnāre temptābant, aliī portās petēbant. 8. Fēminae prō domiciliis sedēbant neque resistere validīs Gallis poterant. 9. Bellum est saevum, nec infirmis nec miseris favet. 10. Sed virī arma postulābant et studēbant Gallōs dē mūrīs agere. 11. Id castellum ab Gallis occupāri Rōmānis nōn grātum erit. 12. Galli ubi ā Rōmānis victi sunt, esse liberī² cessāvērunt. 13. Diū sine aquā vivere nōn potestis.

II. 1. The girl began daily to carry water from the river to the gates. 2. The Gauls had pitched their camp in a place suitable for a battle. 3. For a long time they tried in vain to seize the redoubt. 4. Neither did they cease to hurl weapons against³ the walls. 5. But they were not able to (could not) take the town.

218.

THE FAITHLESS TARPE'IA

Sabīnī ōlim cum Rōmānis bellum gerēbant et multās victōriās reportāverant. Iam agrōs proximōs mūrīs vāstābant, iam oppidō adpropinquābant. Rōmānī autem in Capitōlium fūgerant et longē periculō

¹ Supply *men.* **nostrī**, **vestrī**, and **suī** are often used as nouns in this way.

² Not *children*. The Romans used **liberī** either as an adjective, meaning *free*, or as a noun, meaning *the free*, thereby signifying their *free-born children*. The word was never applied to children of slaves. ³ in with the accusative.

aberant. Mūris validis et saxīs altīs crēdēbant. Frūstrā Sabīnī tēla iaciēbant, frūstrā portās dūrās petēbant; castellum occupāre nōn poterant. Deinde novum cōsiliū cēpērunt.¹

Tarpēia erat puella Rōmāna pulchra et superba. Cotidiē aquam 5 cōpiīs Rōmānīs in Capitōliū portabat. Ei² nōn nocēbant Sabīnī,



TARPEIA PUELLA PERFIDA

quod ea sine armīs erat neque Sabīnī bellum cum fēminīs liberisque gerēbant. Tarpēia autem maximē amābat ōrnāmenta aurī. Cotidiē Sabīnōrum ōrnāmenta vidēbat et mox ea dēsiderāre incipiēbat. Ei ūnus ex³ Sabinis dixit, "Dūc cōpiās Sabīnās intrā portās, Tarpēia, 10 et maxima erunt praemia tua."

¹ cōsiliū capere, *to make a plan*. Why is the *perfect* tense used here and the imperfect in the preceding sentences? Explain the use of tenses in the next paragraph. ² Dative with *nocēbant*. (Cf. § 154.) ³ *ex*, *out of*, i.e. *from the number of*; best translated *of*.

LESSON XXXVIII

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

219. Sentences are *simple*, *compound*, or *complex*.

a. A *simple sentence* is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *The Romans approached the town.*

b. A *compound sentence* is a sentence containing two or more independent statements: *The Romans approached the town | and | the enemy fled.*

NOTE. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon another statement.

c. A *complex sentence* is a sentence containing one independent statement and one or more dependent statements: *When the Romans approached the town | the enemy fled.*

NOTE. A dependent or subordinate statement is one that depends on or qualifies another statement; thus *the enemy fled* is independent, and *when the Romans approached the town* is dependent or subordinate.

d. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called *clauses*. In a complex sentence the independent statement is called the *main clause* and the dependent statement the *subordinate clause*.

220. Examine the complex sentence

The Romans killed the men who were taken

Here are two clauses:

a. The main clause, *The Romans killed the men*

b. The subordinate clause, *who were taken*

The word *who* is a pronoun, for it takes the place of the noun *men*. It also connects the subordinate clause *who were taken* with the noun *men*. Hence the clause is an *adjective clause*. A pronoun that connects an *adjective clause* with a substantive is called a *relative pronoun*, and the substantive for which the relative pronoun stands is called its *antecedent*. The relative pronouns in English are *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, *what*, *that*.

221. The relative pronoun in Latin is *quī, quae, quod*, and it is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

1. Review the declension of *is*, § 114, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms *quī, quae*, and *quibus* are the only forms showing new endings.

NOTE. The genitive *cuius* and the dative *cui* are pronounced *cōi'yōōs* (two syllables) and *cōi* (one syllable).

222. The Relative Pronoun is translated as follows: ¹

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>who, that</i>	<i>which, what, that</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>of whom, whose</i>	<i>of which, of what, whose</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>to or for whom</i>	<i>to or for which, to or for what</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>whom, that</i>	<i>which, what, that</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>from, etc., whom</i>	<i>from, etc., which or what</i>

a. We see from the table above that *quī*, when it refers to a person, is translated by some form of *who* or by *that*; and that, when it refers to anything else it is translated by *which, what, or that*.

223. Note the following sentences:

The Romans killed the men who were taken
The Romans killed the woman who was taken
Rōmānī interfēcērunt virōs quī captī sunt
Rōmānī interfēcērunt fēminam quae capta est

In the first sentence *who* (*quī*) refers to the antecedent *men* (*virōs*), and is *masculine plural*. In the second, *who* (*quae*) refers to *woman* (*fēminam*), and is *feminine singular*. From this we learn that the relative must agree

¹ This table of meanings need not be memorized. It is inserted for reference when translating.

with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*. In neither of the sentences are the antecedents and relatives in the same case. **Virōs** and **fēminam** are accusatives, and **quī** and **quae** are nominatives, being the subjects of the subordinate clauses. Hence

224. RULE. Agreement of the Relative. *A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause.*

225. Interrogative Pronouns. An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. In English the interrogatives are *who?* *which?* *what?* In Latin they are **quis?** **quid?** (pronoun) and **quī?** **quae?** **quod?** (adjective).

226. Examine the sentences

a. Who is the man? Quis est vir?

b. What man is leading them? Quī vir eōs dūcit?

In *a*, *who* is an interrogative *pronoun*. In *b*, *what* is an interrogative *adjective*. Observe that in Latin **quis**, **quid** is the *pronoun* and **quī**, **quae**, **quod** is the *adjective*.

227. 1. The interrogative adjective **quī**, **quae**, **quod** is declined just like the relative pronoun. (See § 221.)

2. The interrogative pronoun **quis**, **quid** is declined like **quī**, **quae**, **quod** in the plural. In the singular it is declined as follows:

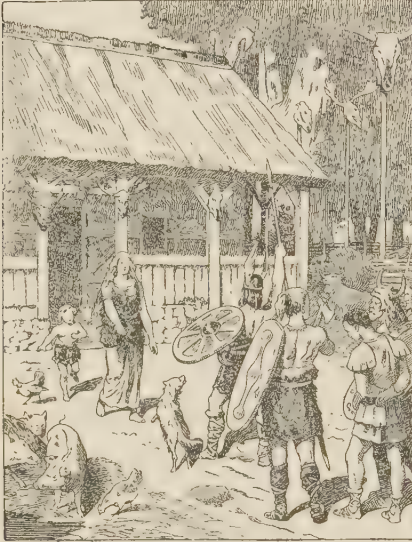
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis , <i>who?</i>	quid , <i>what? which?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius , <i>whose?</i>	cuius , <i>whose?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	cui , <i>to or for whom?</i>	cui , <i>to or for what or which?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	quem , <i>whom?</i>	quid , <i>what? which?</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	quō , <i>from, etc., whom?</i>	quō , <i>from, etc., which or what?</i>

NOTE. Observe that the masculine and feminine are alike and that all the forms are like the corresponding forms of the relative, excepting **quis** and **quid**.

228. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis est aeger? Servus quem amō est aeger. 2. Cuius scūtum habēs? Scūtum habeō quod lēgātus ad castellum mīsīt. 3. Cui lēgātus suum scūtum dabit? Filiō meō scūtum dabit. 4. Ubi Germāni

antiqui vivēbant? In terrā quae est proxima Rhēnō Germānī vivēbant. 5. Quibuscum¹ Germānī bellum gerēbant? Cum Rōmānīs, qui eōs superāre studēbant, Germānī bellum gerēbant. 6. Quī virī castra



GERMANI ANTIQUI

eager for battle. 4. Nevertheless they were soon conquered by the troops which Sextus had sent. 5. They could not resist our forces, but fled from that place without delay.

pōnunt? Ii sunt virī quōrum armīs Germānī victi sunt.

7. Quibus tēlīs cōpiae nostrae eguērunt? Gladiīs et pilīs nostrae cōpiae eguērunt.

8. Ā quibus porta sinistra tenēbātur? Ā sociīs porta sinistra tenēbātur.

9. Quae prōvinciae ā Rōmānīs occupātae sunt? Multae prōvinciae ā Rōmānīs occupātae sunt.

10. Quibus virīs deī favēbunt? Bonīs virīs deī favēbunt.

II. 1. What victory will you announce? 2. I will announce to the people the victory which the sailors have won. 3. The men who were pitching camp were

229. THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA (*Concluded*)²

Tarpēia, commōta ōrnāmentis Sabīnōrum pulchris, diū resistere nōn potuit et respondit: "Date mihi³ ōrnāmenta quae in sinistrīs brachiis geritis, et celeriter cōpiās vestrās in Capitōlium dūcam." Nec

¹ cum is added to the ablative of relative, interrogative, and personal pronouns instead of being placed before them. ² Explain the use of the tenses in this selection. ³ to me.

Sabīnī recūsāvērunt, sed per dūrās magnāsque castelli portās pro-
perāvērunt quō¹ Tarpēia dūxit et mox intrā validōs et altōs mūrōs
stābant. Tum sinē morā in² Tarpēiam scūta graviter iēcērunt; nam
scūta quoque in sinistrīs brachiīs gerēbant. Ita perfida puella Tar-
pēia interfecta est; ita Sabīnī Capitōlium occupāvērunt.

5

LESSON XXXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS

230. Bases and Stems. In learning the first and second declen-
sions we saw that the different cases were formed by adding the case
terminations to the part of the word that did not change, which we
called the **base**. If to the base we add **-ā** in the first declension,
and **-o** in the second, we get what is called the **stem**. Thus **porta** has
the base **port-** and the stem **portā-**; **servus** has the base **serv-** and the
stem **servo-**.

These stem vowels, **-ā-** and **-o-**, play so important a part in the
formation of the case terminations that these declensions are named
from them respectively the *Ā-* and *O-*Declensions.

231. Nouns of the Third Declension. The third declension is called
the Consonant or *I-*Declension, and its nouns are classified according
to the way the *stem* ends. If the last letter of the stem is a consonant,
the word is said to have a *consonant stem*; if the stem ends in **-i-**, the
word is said to have an *i-stem*. *In consonant stems the stem is the same
as the base. In i-stems the stem is formed by adding -i- to the base.*
The presence of the **i** makes a difference in certain of the cases, so
the distinction is a very important one.

232. Consonant stems are divided into two classes:

- I. Stems that add **-s** to the base to form the nominative singular.
- II. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular.

¹ quō = *whither, to the place where*. Here quō is the relative adverb. We
have had it used before as the interrogative adverb, *whither? to what place?*

² upon.

CLASS I

233. Stems that add **-s** to the base in the nominative singular are either masculine or feminine and are declined as follows :

BASES OR STEMS	} prīnceps , m., <i>chief</i> prīncip-	} mīles , m., <i>soldier</i> mīlit-	} lapis , m., <i>stone</i> lapid-	
				TERMINATIONS M. AND F.
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	prīnceps	mīles	lapis	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	prīn'cipis	mīlitis	lapidis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	prīn'cipī	mīlitī	lapidī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	prīn'cipem	mīlitem	lapidem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	prīn'cipe	mīlite	lapide	-e
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	prīn'cipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	prīn'cipum	mīlitum	lapidum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	prīnci'pibus	mīlitibus	lapidibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	prīn'cipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	prīnci'pibus	mīlitibus	lapidibus	-ibus
BASES OR STEMS	} rēx , m., <i>king</i> rēg-	} iūdex , m., <i>judge</i> iūdic-	} virtūs , f., <i>manliness</i> virtūt-	
				TERMINATIONS M. AND F.
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	iūdex	virtūs	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	iūdicis	virtū'tis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	iūdicī	virtū'tī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	iūdicem	virtū'tem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	iūdice	virtū'te	-e
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtū'tēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	iūdicum	virtū'tum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtū'tibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtū'tēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtū'tibus	-ibus

1. The base or stem is found by dropping **-is** in the genitive singular.

2. Most nouns of two syllables, like **prīnceps** (prīncip-), **mīles** (mīlit-), **iūdex** (iūdic-), have **i** in the base, but **e** in the nominative.

a. **lapis** is an exception to this rule.

3. Observe the consonant changes of the base or stem in the nominative:

a. A final **-t** or **-d** is dropped before **-s**; thus **mīles** for **mīlets**, **lapis** for **lapids**, **virtūs** for **virtūts**.

b. A final **-c** or **-g** unites with **-s** and forms **-x**; thus **iūdec** + **s** = **iūdex**, **rēg** + **s** = **rēx**.

4. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

In like manner decline **dux**, **ducis**, m., *leader*; **eques**, **equitis**, m., *horseman*; **pedes**, **peditis**, m., *foot soldier*; **pēs**, **pedis**, m., *foot*.

234.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Neque peditēs neque equitēs occupāre castellum Rōmānum poterant. 2. Summā virtūte mūrōs altōs cotidiē oppugnābant. 3. Pedēs militum lapidibus quī dē mūrō iaciēbantur saepe vulnerābantur. 4. Quod novum cōsiliū dux cēpit? 5. Is perfidam puellam pulchris ōrnāmentis temptāvit. 6. Quid puella fēcit? 7. Puella commōta aurō militēs per portās dūxit. 8. Tamen praemia quae summō studiō petiverat nōn reportāvit. 9. Apud Rōmānōs antiquōs Tarpēia nōn est laudāta.

II. 1. What ship is that which I see? That (**illud**) ship is the *Victory*. It is sailing now with a favorable wind and will soon approach Italy. 2. The judges commanded the savages to be seized and to be killed. 3. The chiefs of the savages suddenly began to flee, but were quickly captured by the horsemen. 4. The king led the foot soldiers to the wall from which the townsmen were hurling stones with the greatest zeal.



NAVIGIUM

LESSON XL

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (*Continued*)

CLASS II

235. Consonant stems that add no termination in the nominative are declined in the other cases exactly like those that add **-s**. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

236.

PARADIGMS

MASCULINES AND FEMININES

	cōnsul, m., <i>consul</i>	legiō, f., <i>legion</i>	ōrdō, m., <i>row</i>	pater, m., <i>father</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	cōnsul-	legiōn-	ōrdin-	patr-	
	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS M. AND F.
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	legiō	ōrdō	pater	—
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis	legiōnis	ōrdinis	patris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulī	legiōnī	ōrdinī	patrī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem	legiōnem	ōrdinem	patrem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule	legiōne	ōrdine	patre	-e
	PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	ōrdinēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulum	legiōnum	ōrdinum	patrum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	ōrdinibus	patribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	ōrdinēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	ōrdinibus	patribus	-ibus

1. With the exception of the nominative, the terminations are exactly the same as in Class I, and the base or stem is found in the same way.

2. Masculines and feminines with bases or stems in **-in-** and **-ōn-** drop **-n-** and end in **-ō** in the nominative, as **legiō** (base or stem **legiōn-**), **ōrdō** (base or stem **ōrdin-**).

3. Bases or stems in **-tr-** have **-ter** in the nominative, as **pater** (base or stem **patr-**).

4. Note how the genitive singular gives the clue to the whole declension. *Always learn this with the nominative.*

237.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Audisne tubās, Mārce? Nōn solum tubās audiō sed etiam ordinēs militum et carrōs impedimentōrum plēnōs vidēre possum. 2. Quās legiōnēs vidēmus? Eae legiōnēs nūper ex Galliā vērunt. 3. Quid ibi fēcērunt? Studēbantne pugnāre an sine virtūte erant? 4. Multa proelia fēcērunt¹ et magnās victōriās et multōs captivōs reportāverunt. 5. Quis est imperātor eārum legiōnum? Caesar, summus Rōmānōrum imperātor. 6. Quis est eques quī pulchram corōnam gerit? Is eques est frāter meus. Eī corōna ā cōsule data est quia summā virtūte pugnāverat et ā barbarīs patriam servāverat.

II. 1. Who has seen my father to-day? 2. I saw him just now (nūper). He was hastening to your dwelling with your mother and sister. 3. When men are far from the fatherland and lack food, they cannot be restrained² from wrong.³ 4. The safety of the soldiers is dear to Cæsar, the general. 5. The chiefs were eager to storm a town full of grain which was held by the consul. 6. The king forbade the baggage of the captives to be destroyed.

LESSON XLI

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (*Concluded*)

238. Neuter consonant stems add no termination in the nominative and are declined as follows:

	flūmen, n., <i>river</i>	tempus, n., <i>time</i>	opus, n., <i>work</i>	caput, n., <i>head</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	flūmin-	tempor-	oper-	capit-	
	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminis	temporis	operis	capitis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminī	temporī	operī	capitī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Abl.</i>	flūmine	tempore	opere	capite	-e

¹ proelium facere = to fight a battle.

² contineō. Cf. § 180.

³ Abl. iniuriā.

	PLURAL			TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminum	temporum	operum	capitum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus

1. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

2. Bases or stems in **-in-** have **-e-** instead of **-i-** in the nominative, as **flūmen**, base or stem **flūmin-**.

3. Most bases or stems in **-er-** and **-or-** have **-us** in the nominative, as **opus**, base or stem **oper-**; **tempus**, base or stem **tempor-**.

239.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. 1. Barbarī ubi Rōmam cēpērunt, maxima rēgum opera dēlēvērunt. 2. Rōmānī multās calamitatēs ā barbarīs accēpērunt. 3. Ubi erat summus terror apud oppidānōs, animī dubiī eōrum ab ōrātōre clārō cōfirmāti sunt. 4. Rōma est in rīpīs flūminis magnī. 5. Ubi Caesar imperātor militēs suōs arma capere iussit, ii ā proeliō continērī nōn potuērunt. 6. Ubi proelium factum est, imperātor reperīrī nōn potuit. 7. Imperātor sagittā in capite vulnerātus erat et stāre nōn poterat. 8. Eum magnō labōre pedes ex proeliō portāvit. 9. Is bracchiīs suis imperātōrem tenuit et eum ex periculis summīs servāvit. 10. Virtūte suā bonus miles ab imperātōre corōnam accēpit.

II. 1. The consul placed a crown on the head of the victor. 2. Before the gates he was received by the townsmen. 3. A famous orator praised him and said, "By your labors you have saved the fatherland from disaster." 4. The words of the orator were pleasing to the victor. 5. To save the fatherland was a great task.



CORONA

LESSON XLII

REVIEW LESSON

240. Review the paradigms in §§ 233, 236, 238; and decline all nouns of the third declension in this selection.

TERROR CIMBRICUS¹

Ōlim Cimbri et Teutonēs, populi Germāniae, cum fēminis liberisque Italiae adpropinquāverant et cōpiās Rōmānās maximō proeliō vicerant. Ubi fuga legiōnum nūntiāta est, summus erat terror tōtius Rōmae, et Rōmāni, graviter commōti, sacra crēbra deis faciēbant et salūtem petēbant.

Tum Mānlius ōrātor animōs populi ita cōfirmāvit: — “Magnam calamitātem accēpinus. Oppida nostra ā Cimbris Teutonibusque capiuntur, agricolae interficiuntur, agrī vāstantur, cōpiae barbarōrum Rōmae adpropinquant. Itaque, nisi novis animis proelium novum faciēmus et Germānōs ex patriā nostrā sine morā agēmus, erit nūlla salūs feminis nostris liberisque. Servāte liberōs! Servāte patriam! Anteā superatī sumus quia imperātōrēs nostrī fuērunt infirmī. Nunc Marius, clārus imperātor, quī iam multās aliās victōriās reportāvit, legiōnēs dūcet et animōs nostrōs terrōre Cimbricō liberāre matūrābit.”

Marius tum in Āfricā bellum gerēbat. Sine morā ex Āfricā in Italiam vocātus est. Cōpiās novās nōn solum tōtī Italiae sed etiam prōvinciis sociōrum imperāvit.² Disciplinā autem dūrā labōribusque perpetuis milites exercuit. Tum cum peditibus equitibusque, quī iam proeliō studēbant, ad Germānōrum castra celeriter properāvit. Diū et ācrit̄er pugnātum est.³ Dēnique barbarī fūgērunt et multi in fugā ab equitibus sunt interfectī. Marius pater patriae vocātus est.

¹ About the year 100 B.C. the Romans were greatly alarmed by an invasion of barbarians from the north known as Cimbri and Teutons. They were traveling with wives and children, and had an army of 300,000 fighting men. Several Roman armies met defeat, and the city was in a panic. Then the Senate called upon Marius, their greatest general, to save the country. First he defeated the Teutons in Gaul. Next, returning to Italy, he met the Cimbri. A terrible battle ensued, in which the Cimbri were utterly destroyed; but the *terror Cimbricus* continued to haunt the Romans for many a year thereafter. ² He made a *levy* (of troops) *upon*, *imperāvit* with the acc. and the dat. ³ Cf. § 200. n. 2.

LESSON XLIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION · *I*-STEMS

241. To decline a noun of the third declension correctly we must know whether or not it is an *i*-stem. Nouns with *i*-stems are

1. Masculines and feminines:

a. Nouns in *-ēs* and *-is* with the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. Thus *caedēs*, *caedis*, is an *i*-stem, but *mīles*, *mīlitis*, is a consonant stem.

b. Nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*.

c. Nouns of one syllable in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a consonant.

2. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar*.

242. The declension of *i*-stems is nearly the same as that of consonant stems. Note the following differences:

a. Masculines and feminines have *-ium* in the genitive plural and *-īs* or *-ēs* in the accusative plural.

b. Neuters have *-ī* in the ablative singular, and an *-i* in every form of the plural.

243. Masculine and Feminine *I*-Stems. Masculine and feminine *i*-stems are declined as follows:

	<i>caedēs</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i>	<i>hostis</i> , m., <i>enemy</i>	<i>urbs</i> , f., <i>city</i>	<i>cliēns</i> , m., <i>retainer</i>	
STEMS	<i>caedi-</i>	<i>hosti-</i>	<i>urbī-</i>	<i>clienti-</i>	
BASES	<i>caed-</i>	<i>host-</i>	<i>urb-</i>	<i>client-</i>	
			SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS M. AND F.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>cliēns</i> ¹	<i>-s, -is, or -ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>caedis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>clientis</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>caedī</i>	<i>hostī</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>clientī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>caedem</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>clientem</i>	<i>-em (-im)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>caede</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>cliente</i>	<i>-e (-ī)</i>

¹ Observe that the vowel before *-ns* is long, but that it is shortened before *-nt*. Cf. § 12. 2, 3.

	PLURAL				TERMINATIONS M. AND F.
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	hostēs	urbēs	clientēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedum	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	caedis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	urbis, -ēs	clientis, -ēs	-is, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

- avis, civis, finis, ignis, nāvis have the ablative singular in -ī or -e.
- turris has accusative **turrim** and ablative **turri** or **turre**.

244. Neuter I-Stems. Neuter i-stems are declined as follows:

	insigne, n., <i>decoration</i>	animal, n., <i>animal</i>	calcar, n., <i>spur</i>	
STEMS	īsigni-	animāli-	calcāri-	
BASES	īsign-	animāl-	calcār-	
	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	insigne	animal	calcar	-e or —
<i>Gen.</i>	īsignis	animālis	calcāris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	īsignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	insigne	animal	calcar	-e or —
<i>Abl.</i>	īsignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī

	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	īsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	īsignium	animālīum	calcārīum	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	īsignibus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	īsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	īsignibus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus

- Review § 74 and see how it applies to this declension.
- The final -i- of the stem is usually dropped in the nominative. If not dropped, it is changed to -e.
- A long vowel is shortened before final -l or -r. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

245.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

1. Quam urbem vidēmus? Urbs quam vidētis est Rōma.
2. Cīvēs Rōmānī urbem suam turribus altis et mūrīs longis mūniverant.
3. Ventī nāvis longās prohibēbant finibus hostium adpropinquāre.
4. Imperātor ā clientibus suis calcāria aurī et alia insignia accēpit.
5. Militēs Rōmānī cum hostibus bella saeva gessērunt et eōs caede

magnā superāvērunt. 6. Alia animālia terram, alia mare amant. 7. Nāvēs longae quae auxilium ad imperātōrem portābant igni ab hostibus dēlētae sunt. 8. In eō mari avīs multās vīdimus quae longē ā terrā volāverant. 9. Nōne vīdistis nāvis longās hostium et ignis quibus urbs nostra vāstābātur? Certē, sed nec caedem civium nec



NAVES LONGAE

fugam clientium vīdimus. 10. Avēs et alia animālia, ubi ignem vidērunt, salūtem fugā petere celeriter incēpērunt. 11. Num iūdex in peditum ōrdinibus stābat? Minimē, iūdex erat apud equitēs et equus eius insigne pulchrum gerēbat.

II. 1. Because of the lack of grain the animals of the village were not able to live. 2. When the general¹ heard the rumor, he quickly sent a horseman to the village. 3. The horseman had a beautiful horse and wore spurs of gold. 4. He said to the citizens, "Send your retainers with horses and wagons to our camp, and you will receive an abundance of grain." 5. With happy hearts they hastened to obey his words.²

¹ Place first.

² Not the accusative. Why?

LESSON XLIV

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION · GENDER IN
THE THIRD DECLENSION

246.

PARADIGMS

	<i>vīs</i> , f., <i>force</i>	<i>iter</i> , n., <i>march</i>
BASES	<i>vī-</i> and <i>vīr-</i>	<i>iter-</i> and <i>itiner-</i>
	SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>vīs</i> (rare)	<i>itineris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>vī</i> (rare)	<i>itinerī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>itinere</i>
	PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>itinera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>vīrium</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>vīrīs</i> , or <i>-ēs</i>	<i>itinera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>

247. There are no rules for gender in the third declension that do not present numerous exceptions.¹ The following rules, however, are of great service, and should be thoroughly mastered:

1. **Masculine** are nouns in *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, *-ēs* (gen. *-itis*).

a. arbor, *tree*, is feminine; and *iter*, *march*, is neuter.

2. **Feminine** are nouns in *-ō*, *-is*, *-x*, and in *-s* preceded by a consonant or by any long vowel but *ō*.

a. Masculine are *collis* (*hill*), *lapis*, *mēnsis* (*month*), *ōrdō*, *pēs*, and nouns in *-nis* and *-guis* — as *ignis*, *sanguis* (*blood*) — and the four monosyllables

dēns, *a tooth*; *mōns*, *a mountain*
pōns, *a bridge*; *fōns*, *a fountain*

3. **Neuters** are nouns in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*, *-n*, *-ur*, *-ūs*, and *caput*.

¹ Review § 60. Words denoting males are, of course, masculine, and those denoting females, feminine.

248. Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined :

animal	calamitās	flūmen	lapis	nāvis
avis	caput	ignis	legiō	opus
caedēs	eques	insigne	mare	salūs
calcar	finis	labor	mīles	urbs

249.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. *The First Bridge over the Rhine.* Salūs sociōrum erat semper cāra Rōmānīs. Ōlim Gallī, amīcī Rōmānōrum, multās iniūriās ab Germānīs quī trāns flūmen Rhēnum vivēbant accēperant. Ubi lēgātī ab iīs ad Caesarem imperātorem Rōmānum vērunt et auxiliū postulāvērunt, Rōmānī magnīs itineribus ad hostiū finīs properāvērunt. Mox ad rīpās magnī flūminis vērunt. Imperātor studēbat cōpiās suās trāns fluvium dūcere, sed nūllā viā¹ poterat. Nūllās nāvis habēbat. Alta erat aqua. Imperātor autem, vir clārus, numquam adversā fortunā commōtus, novum cōsiliū cēpit. Iussit suōs² in³ lātō flūmine facere
 5 pontem. Numquam antea pōns in Rhēnō vīsus erat. Hostēs ubi pontem quem Rōmānī fēceraut vīdērunt, summō terrōre commōtī, sine morā fugam parāre incēpērunt.

II. 1. The enemy had taken (possession of) the top of the mountain. 2. There were many trees on the opposite hills. 3. We pitched our camp near (ad) a beautiful spring. 4. A march through the enemies' country is never without danger. 5. The time of the month was suitable for the march. 6. The teeth of the monster were long. 7. When the foot soldiers⁴ saw the blood of the captives, they began to assail the fortifications with the greatest violence.¹

¹ Abl. of manner. ² suōs, used as a noun, *his men*. ³ We say *build a bridge over*; the Romans, *make a bridge on*. ⁴ Place first.

LESSON XLV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION · *I*-STEMS

250. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like *bonus*, *aeger*, or *liber*), or they are of the third declension.

251. Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have *i*-stems, and they are declined almost like nouns with *i*-stems.

252. Adjectives learned thus far have had a different form in the nominative for each gender, as, *bonus*, m.; *bona*, f.; *bonum*, n. Such an adjective is called an *adjective of three endings*. Adjectives of the third declension are of the following classes:

I. Adjectives of three endings —

a different form in the nominative for each gender.

II. Adjectives of two endings —

masculine and feminine nominative alike, the neuter different.

III. Adjectives of one ending —

masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative all alike.

253. Adjectives of the third declension in *-er* have three endings; those in *-is* have two endings; the others have one ending.

CLASS I

254. Adjectives of Three Endings are declined as follows:

ācer', *ācris*, *ācre*, *keen*, *eager*

STEM *ācri-*

BASE *ācr-*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrīs, -ēs</i>	<i>ācrīs; -ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

CLASS II

255. Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows :

omnis, omne, every, all ¹			
STEM omni-		BASE omn-	
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i> omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i> omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i> omnem	omne	omnīs, -ēs	omnia
<i>Abl.</i> omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

CLASS III

256. Adjectives of One Ending are declined as follows :

pār, equal			
STEM pari-		BASE par-	
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> pār	pār	parēs	paria
<i>Gen.</i> paris	paris	parium	parium
<i>Dat.</i> parī	parī	paribus	paribus
<i>Acc.</i> parem	pār	parīs, -ēs	paria
<i>Abl.</i> parī	parī	paribus	paribus

1. All i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.

2. Observe that the several cases of adjectives of one ending have the same form for all genders excepting in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

3. Decline *vir ācer*, *legiō ācris*, *animal ācre*, *ager omnis*, *scūtum omne*, *proelium pār*.

257. There are a few adjectives of one ending that have consonant stems. They are declined exactly like nouns with consonant stems.

¹ *omnis* is usually translated *every* in the singular and *all* in the plural.

258.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. *The Romans invade the Enemy's Country.* Ōlim peditēs Rōmānī cum equitibus vėlōcibus in hostium urbem iter faciēbant. Ubi nōn longē āfuērunt, rapuērunt agricolam, quī eis viam brevem et facilem dēmōnstrāvit. Iam Rōmānī moenia alta, turrīs validās aliaque opera urbis vidēre poterant. In moenibus stābant multī prīncipēs. Prīncipēs ubi vidērunt Rōmānōs, iussērunt civis lapidēs aliaque tēla dē mūrīs iacere. Tum militēs fortēs continērī ā proeliō nōn poterant et ācer imperātor signum tubā darī iussit. Summā vī omnēs properāvērunt. Imperātor Sextō lēgātō impedimenta omnia mandāvit. Sextus impedimenta in summō colle conlocāvit. Grave et ācre erat proelium, sed hostēs nōn parēs Rōmānīs erant. Aliī interfectī, aliī captī sunt. Apud captivōs erant māter sororque rēgis. Paucī Rōmānōrum ab hostibus vulnerātī sunt. Secundum proelium Rōmānīs erat grātum. Fortūna fortibus semper favet.

II. 1. Some months are short, others are long. 2. To seize the top of the mountain was difficult. 3. Among the hills of Italy are many beautiful springs. 4. The soldiers were sitting where the baggage had been placed because their feet were weary. 5. The city which the soldiers were eager to storm had been fortified by strong walls and high towers. 6. Did not the king intrust a heavy crown of gold and all his money to a faithless slave? Yes, but the slave had never before been faithless.



AQUILA LEGIONIS

LESSON XLVI

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

259. Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter.

260. Masculine nouns end in **-us**, neuters in **-ū**. The genitive ends in **-ūs**.

a. Feminine by exception are **domus**, *house*; **manus**, *hand*; and a few others.

PARADIGMS

adventus, m., <i>arrival</i>		cornū, n., <i>horn</i>		
BASES	advent-	corn-		
		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	
			MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	adventus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	adventūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	adventuī (ū)	cornū	-uī (ū)	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	adventum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	adventū	cornū	-ū	-ū
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

1. Observe that the base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. **lacus**, *lake*, has the ending **-ubus** in the dative and ablative plural; **portus**, *harbor*, has either **-ubus** or **-ibus**.

3. **cornū** is the only neuter that is in common use.

261.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Ante adventum Caesaris vēlōcēs hostium equitēs ācrem impetum in castra fēcērunt. 2. Continēre exercitum ā proeliō nōn facile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiōnēs ex castris

dūci. 4. Prō castrīs cum hostium equitātū pugnātum est. 5. Post tempus breve equitātus trāns flūmen fūgit ubi castra hostium posita erant. 6. Tum victor imperātor agrōs vāstāvit et vicōs hostium cremāvit. 7. Castra autem nōn oppugnāvit quia milītēs erant dēfessī et locus difficilis. 8. Hostēs nōn cessāvērunt iacere tēla, quae paucis nocuērunt. 9. Post adversum proelium principēs Gallōrum lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere studēbant, sed populō persuādere nōn poterant.

II. 1. Did you see the man-of-war on the lake? 2. I did not see it (*fem.*) on the lake, but I saw it in the harbor. 3. Because of the strong wind the sailor forbade his brother to sail. 4. Cæsar didn't make an attack on the cavalry on the right wing, did he? 5. No, he made an attack on the left wing. 6. Who taught your swift horse to obey? 7. I trained my horse with my (own) hands, nor was the task difficult. 8. He is a beautiful animal and has great strength.

LESSON XLVII

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE · THE DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

262. We have become thoroughly familiar with expressions like the following :

Galba ad (or in) oppidum properat
Galba ab (dē or ex) oppidō properat
Galba in oppidō habitat

From these expressions we may deduce the following rules :

263. RULE. Accusative of the Place to. *The place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative. This answers the question Whither?*

264. RULE. Ablative of the Place from. *The place from which is expressed by ā or ab, dē, ē or ex, with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? (Cf. Rule, § 179.)*

265. RULE. Ablative of the Place at or in. *The place at or in which is expressed by the ablative with in. This answers the question Where?*

a. The ablative denoting the *place where* is called the *locative ablative* (cf. *locus, place*).

266. Exceptions. Names of towns, small islands,¹ *domus, home, rūs, country*, and a few other words in common use omit the prepositions in expressions of place, as,

Galba Athēnās properat, Galba hastens to Athens
Galba Athēnis properat, Galba hastens from Athens
Galba Athēnis habitat, Galba lives at (or in) Athens
Galba domum properat, Galba hastens home
Galba rūs properat, Galba hastens to the country
Galba domō properat, Galba hastens from home
Galba rūre properat, Galba hastens from the country
Galba rūrī (less commonly rūre) habitat, Galba lives in
the country

a. Names of *countries*, like *Germānia, Italia*, etc., do not come under these exceptions. *With them prepositions must not be omitted.*

267. The Locative Case. We saw above that the place-relation expressed by *at* or *in* is regularly covered by the locative ablative. However, Latin originally expressed this relation by a separate form known as the *locative case*. This case has been everywhere merged in the ablative excepting in the singular number of the first and second declensions. The form of the locative in these declensions is like the genitive singular, and its use is limited to names of towns and small islands, *domī, at home*, and a few other words.

268. RULE. Locative and Locative Ablative. *To express the place in which with names of towns and small islands, if they are singular and of the first or second declension, use the locative; otherwise use the locative ablative without a preposition; as,*

Galba Rōmae habitat, Galba lives at Rome
Galba Corinthī habitat, Galba lives at Corinth
Galba domī habitat, Galba lives at home

¹ Small islands are classed with towns because they generally have but one town, and the name of the town is the same as the name of the island.

Here *Rōmae*, *Corinthī*, and *domī* are *locatives*, being *singular* and of the first and second declensions respectively. But in

Galba Athēnīs habitat, Galba lives at Athens,
Galba Pompēiīs habitat, Galba lives at Pompeii

Athēnīs and *Pompēiīs* are locative ablatives. These words can have no locative case, as the nominatives *Athēnae* and *Pompēiī* are *plural* and there is no plural locative case form.

269. The word *domus*, *home, house*, has forms of both the second and the fourth declension. Learn its declension (§ 468).

270.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. *Corinthī omnia insignia aurī ā ducibus victōribus rapta erant.* 2. *Caesar Genāvam exercitum magnīs itineribus dūxit.* 3. *Quem pontem hostēs cremāverant? Pontem in Rhēnō hostēs cremāverant.* 4. *Pompēiīs multās Rōmānōrum domōs vidēre poteritis.* 5. *Rōmā cōsul equō vėlōcī rūs properāvit.* 6. *Domī cōsulis hominēs multī sedēbant.* 7. *Imperātor iusserat lēgātum Athēnās cum multīs nāvibus longīs nāvigāre.* 8. *Ante moenia urbis sunt ōrdinēs arborum altārum.* 9. *Propter arborēs altās nec lacum nec portum reperīre potuimus.* 10. *Proeliis crēbris Caesar legiōnēs suās quae erant in Galliā exercēbat.* 11. *Cotidiē in locō idoneo castra pōnēbat et mūniēbat.*

II. 1. *Cæsar, the famous general, when he had departed from Rome, hastened to the Roman province on a swift horse.*¹ 2. *He had heard a rumor concerning the allies at Geneva.* 3. *After his arrival Cæsar called the soldiers together and commanded them to join battle.* 4. *The enemy hastened to retreat, some because*² *they were afraid, others because*² *of wounds.* 5. *Recently I was at Athens and saw the place where the judges used to sit.*³ 6. *Marcus and Sextus are my brothers; the one lives at Rome, the other in the country.*

¹ Latin says "by a swift horse." What construction? ² Distinguish between the English conjunction *because* (*quia* or *quod*) and the preposition *because of* (*propter*). ³ *used to sit*, express by the imperfect.



DAEDALUS ET ICARUS

271.

DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS

Crēta est insula antiqua quae aquā altā magnī maris pulsātur. Ibi ōlim Minōs erat rēx. Ad eum vēnit Daedalus quī ex Graeciā patriā fugiēbat. Eum Minōs rēx benignīs verbīs accēpit et eī domicilium in Crētā dedit. ¹Quō in locō Daedalus sine cūrā vivēbat et rēgī multa et clāra opera faciēbat. Post tempus longum autem Daedalus patriam 5 cāram dēsiderāre incēpit. Domum properāre studēbat, sed rēgī persuādere nōn potuit et mare saevum fugam vetābat.

LESSON XLVIII

THE FIFTH OR \bar{E} -DECLENSION · THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

272. Gender. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except *diēs*, *day*, and *merīdiēs*, *midday*, which are usually masculine.

273.

PARADIGMS

	diēs, m., <i>day</i>	rēs, f., <i>thing</i>	
BASES	di-	r-	
	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	reī	-ēī
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	reī	-ēī
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	-ē
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

¹ And in this place; quō does not here introduce a subordinate relative clause, but establishes the connection with the preceding sentence. Such a relative is called a *connecting relative*, and is translated by *and* and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.

1. The vowel *e* which appears in every form is regularly long. It is shortened in the ending *-ēi* after a consonant, as in *r-ēi*; and before *-m* in the accusative singular, as in *di-em*. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

2. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. Most other nouns of this declension lack the plural. *Aciēs*, *line of battle*, and *spēs*, *hope*, have the nominative and accusative plural.

274. The ablative relation (§ 50) which is expressed by the prepositions *at*, *in*, or *on* may refer not only to place, but also to time, as *at noon*, *in summer*, *on the first day*. The ablative which is used to express this relation is called the *ablative of time*.

275. RULE. The Ablative of Time. *The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

a. Occasionally the preposition *in* is found. Compare the English *Next day we started* and *On the next day we started*.

276.**EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.

I. *Galba the Farmer.* Galba agricola rūri vivit. Cotidiē primā lūce labōrāre incipit, nec ante noctem in studiō suō cessat. Meridiē Iūlia filia eum ad cēnam vocat. Nocte pedēs dēfessōs domum vertit. Aestāte filiī agricolae auxilium patrī dant. Hieme agricola eōs in
5 lūdum mittit. Ibi magister pueris multās fābulās dē rēbus gestīs Caesaris nārrat. Aestāte filiī agricolae perpetuīs labōribus exercentur nec grave agrī opus est iis molestum. Galba sine ūllā cūrā vivit nec rēs adversās timet.

II. 1. In that month there were many battles in Gaul. 2. The cavalry of the enemy made an attack upon Cæsar's line of battle. 3. In the first hour of the night the ship was overcome by the billows. 4. On the second day the savages were eager to come under Cæsar's protection. 5. The king had joined battle, moved by the hope of victory. 6. That year a fire destroyed many birds and other animals. 7. We saw blood on the wild beast's teeth.

277. DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS (*Continued*)

Tum Daedalus gravibus cūris commōtus filiō suō Īcarō ita dixit:
 "Animus meus, Īcare, est plēnus trīstitiae nec oculi lacrimis egent.
 Discēdere ex Crētā, Athēnās properāre, maximē studeō; sed rēx re-
 cūsāt audīre verba mea et omnem reditūs spem ēripit. Sed numquam
 rēbus adversis vincar. Terra et mare sunt inimica, sed aliam fugae 5
 viam reperiam." Tum in artīs ignōtās animum dīmittit et mirum
 capit cōsiliū. Nam pennās in ōrdine pōnit et vērās ālās facit.

LESSON XLIX

PRONOUNS CLASSIFIED · PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE
PRONOUNS

278. We have the same kinds of pronouns in Latin as in English. They are divided into the following eight classes:

1. **Personal pronouns**, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of; as, *ego, I; tū, you; is, he*. (Cf. § 279, etc.)

2. **Possessive pronouns**, which denote possession; as, *meus, tuus, suus*, etc. (Cf. § 98.)

3. **Reflexive pronouns**, used in the predicate to refer back to the subject; as, *he saw himself*. (Cf. § 281.)

4. **Intensive pronouns**, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun; as, *I myself saw it*. (Cf. § 285.)

5. **Demonstrative pronouns**, which point out persons or things; as, *is, this, that*. (Cf. § 112.)

6. **Relative pronouns**, which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent; as, *qui, who*. (Cf. § 220.)

7. **Interrogative pronouns**, which ask a question; as, *quis, who?* (Cf. § 225.)

8. **Indefinite pronouns**, which point out indefinitely; as, *some one, any one, some, certain ones*, etc. (Cf. § 296.)

279. The demonstrative pronoun *is, ea, id*, as we learned in § 115, is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, they*, etc.).

280. The personal pronouns of the first person are *ego, I*; *nōs, we*; of the second person, *tū, thou or you*; *vōs, ye or you*. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego, I</i>		<i>tū, you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī, of me</i>		<i>tui, of you</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi, to or for me</i>		<i>tibi, to or for you</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē, me</i>		<i>tē, you</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē, with, from, etc., me</i>		<i>tē, with, from, etc., you</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>nōs, we</i>		<i>vōs, you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nostrum or nostrī, of us</i>		<i>vestrum or vestrī, of you</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nōbīs, to or for us</i>		<i>vōbīs, to or for you</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nōs, us</i>		<i>vōs, you</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nōbīs, with, from, etc., us</i>		<i>vōbīs, with, from, etc., you</i>

1. The personal pronouns are not used in the nominative excepting for emphasis or contrast.

281. The Reflexive Pronouns. 1. The personal pronouns *ego* and *tū* may be used in the predicate as reflexives; as,

<i>videō mē, I see myself</i>	<i>vidēmus nōs, we see ourselves</i>
<i>vidēs tē, you see yourself</i>	<i>vidētis vōs, you see yourselves</i>

2. The reflexive pronoun of the third person (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) has a special form, used only in these senses, and declined alike in the singular and plural.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

<i>Gen. suī</i>	<i>Acc. sē</i>
<i>Dat. sibi</i>	<i>Abl. sē</i>

EXAMPLES	{	<i>Puer sē videt, the boy sees himself</i>
		<i>Puella sē videt, the girl sees herself</i>
		<i>Animal sē videt, the animal sees itself</i>
		<i>Iī sē vident, they see themselves</i>

a. The form *sē* is sometimes doubled, *sēsē*, for emphasis.

3. Give the Latin for

I teach myself

You teach yourself

He teaches himself

We teach ourselves

You teach yourselves

They teach themselves

282. The preposition **cum**, when used with the ablative of **ego**, **tū**, or **suī**, is appended to the form, as, **mēcum**, *with me*; **tēcum**, *with you*; **nōbiscum**, *with us*; etc.

283.

EXERCISES

. First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.

I. 1. Mea māter est cāra mihi et tua māter est cāra tibi. 2. Vestrae litterae erant grātae nōbīs et nostrae litterae erant grātae vōbīs. 3. Nūntius rēgis quī nōbiscum est nihil respondēbit. 4. Nūntiī pācem amicitiamque sibi et suis sociis postulāvērunt. 5. Sī tū arma sūmēs, ego rēgnū occupābō. 6. Uter vestrum est cīvis Rōmānus? Neuter nostrum. 7. Eō tempore multi supplicium dedērunt quia rēgnū petierant. 8. Sūme supplicium, Caesar, dē hostibus patriae ācribus. 9. Primā lūce aliī metū commōtī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt; aliī autem magnā virtūte impetum exercitūs nostrī sustinuērunt. 10. Soror rēgis, ubi dē adversō proeliō audīvīt, sēsē Pompēiīs interfēcīt.

II. 1. Whom do you teach? I teach myself. 2. The soldier wounded himself with his sword. 3. The master praises us, but you he does not praise. 4. Therefore he will inflict punishment on you, but we shall not suffer punishment. 5. Who will march (i.e. make a march) with me to Rome? 6. I will march with you to the gates of the city. 7. Who will show us¹ the way? The gods will show you¹ the way.

DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS (*Concluded*)

284. Puer Īcarus ūnā² stābat et mirum patris opus vidēbat. Postquam manus ultima³ ālis imposita est, Daedalus eās temptāvit et similis avī in aurās volāvit. Tum ālās umerīs fili adligāvit et docuit eum volāre et dixit, "Tē vetō, mi fili, adpropinquāre aut sōli aut marī. Sī fluctibus adpropinquāveris,⁴ aqua ālis tuis nocebit, et sī sōli adpropinquāveris,⁴ 5

¹ Not accusative. ² Adverb, see vocabulary. ³ manus ultima, the finishing touch. What literally? ⁴ Future perfect. Translate by the present.

ignis eās cremābit.” Tum pater et filius iter difficile incipiunt. Ālās movent et aurae sēsē committunt. Sed stultus puer verbis patris nōn pāret. Sōlī adpropinquat. Ālae cremantur et Īcarus in mare dēcidit et vitam āmittit. Daedalus autem sine ūllō periculō trāns fluctūs ad 5 insulam Siciliam volāvit.

LESSON L

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE* AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IDEM*

285. *Ipse* means *-self* (*him-self*, *her-self*, etc.) or is translated by *even* or *very*. It is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective.

a. *Ipse* must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive *suī*. The latter is always used as a pronoun, while *ipse* is regularly adjective. Compare

Homō sē videt, *the man sees himself* (reflexive)

Homō ipse periculum videt, *the man himself* (intensive) *sees the danger*

Homō ipsum periculum videt, *the man sees the danger itself* (intensive)

286. Except for the one form *ipse*, the intensive pronoun is declined exactly like the nine irregular adjectives (cf. §§ 108, 109). Learn the declension (§ 481).

287. The demonstrative *idem*, meaning *the same*, is a compound of *is*. It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>īī'dem</i> <i>eī'dem</i>	<i>eae'dem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eius'dem</i>	<i>eius'dem</i>	<i>eius'dem</i>	<i>eōrun'dem</i>	<i>eārun'dem</i>	<i>eōrun'dem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī'dem</i>	<i>eī'dem</i>	<i>eī'dem</i>	<i>īīs'dem</i> <i>eīs'dem</i>	<i>īīs'dem</i> <i>eīs'dem</i>	<i>īīs'dem</i> <i>eīs'dem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eun'dem</i>	<i>ean'dem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōs'dem</i>	<i>eās'dem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō'dem</i>	<i>eā'dem</i>	<i>eō'dem</i>	<i>īīs'dem</i> <i>eīs'dem</i>	<i>īīs'dem</i> <i>eīs'dem</i>	<i>īīs'dem</i> <i>eīs'dem</i>

a. From forms like *eundem* (*eum* + *-dem*), *eōrundem* (*eōrum* + *-dem*), we learn the rule that *m* before *d* is changed to *n*.

b. The forms *īīdem*, *īīsdem* are often spelled and pronounced with one *ī*.

288.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. 1. Ego et tū¹ in eādem urbe vivimus. 2. Iter ipsum nōn timēmus sed ferās saevās quae in silvā dēnsā esse dicuntur. 3. Ōlim nōs ipsi idem iter fēcimus. 4. Eō tempore multās ferās vidimus. 5. Sed nōbīs non nocuērunt. 6. Caesar ipse scūtum dē manibus militis ēripuit et in ipsam aciem properāvit. 7. Itaque militēs summā virtūte tēla in hostium corpora iēcērunt. 8. Rōmāni quoque gravia vulnera accēpērunt. 9. Dēnique hostēs terga vertērunt et omnīs in partis² fūgērunt. 10. Eadem hōrā litterae Rōmam ab imperātōre ipsō missae sunt. 11. Eodem mēse captivī quoque in Italiam missi sunt. 12. Sed multī propter vulnera iter difficile trāns montis facere recūsābant et Genāvae esse dicēbantur.

II. 1. At Pompeii there is a wonderful mountain. 2. When I was in that place, I myself saw that mountain. 3. On the same day many cities were destroyed by fire and stones from that very mountain. 4. You have not heard the true story of that calamity, have you?³ 5. On that day the very sun could not give light to men. 6. You yourself ought to tell (to) us that story.

289.

HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE⁴

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmānōrum, ubi in exsilium ab irātis Rōmānis ēiectus est, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium petiit. Mox Porsena magnis cum cōpiis Rōmam vēnit, et ipsa urbs summō in periculō erat. Omnibus in partibus exercitus Rōmānus victus erat. Iam rēx montem Iāniculum⁵ occupāverat. Numquam antea Rōmāni tantō metū tenēbantur. Ex agris in urbem properābant et summō studiō urbem ipsam mūniēbant.

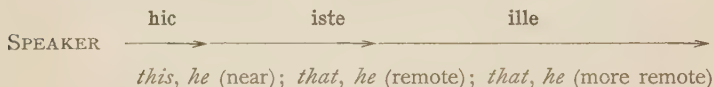
¹ Observe that in Latin we say *I and you*, not *you and I*. ² Not *parts*, but *directions*. ³ Cf. § 210. ⁴ The story of Horatius has been made familiar by Macaulay's well-known poem "Horatius" in his *Lays of Ancient Rome*. Read the poem in connection with this selection. ⁵ The Janiculum

is a high hill across the Tiber from Rome.

LESSON LI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE*

290. We have already learned the declension of the demonstrative pronoun **is** and its use. (Cf. Lesson XVII.) That pronoun refers to persons or things either far or near, and makes no definite reference to place or time. If we wish to point out an object definitely in place or time, we must use **hic**, **iste**, or **ille**. These demonstratives, like **is**, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, and their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus :



a. In dialogue **hic** refers to a person or thing near the speaker ; **iste**, to a person or thing near the person addressed ; **ille**, to a person or thing remote from both. These distinctions are illustrated in the model sentences, § 293, which should be carefully studied and imitated.

291. **Hic** is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. **Huius** is pronounced *hōō'yōōs*, and **huic** is pronounced *hōōic* (one syllable).

292. The demonstrative pronouns **iste**, **ista**, **istud**, and **ille**, **illa**, **illud**, except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms **istud** and **illud**, are declined exactly like **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**. (See § 481.)

293.

MODEL SENTENCES

*Is this horse (of mine) strong?**Estne hic equus validus?**That horse (of yours) is strong, but that
one (yonder) is weak**Iste equus est validus, sed
ille est infirmus**Are these (men by me) your friends?**Suntne hī amīcī tui?**Those (men by you) are my friends, but
those (men yonder) are enemies**Istī sunt amīcī mei, sed
illī sunt inimīcī*

294.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. *A German Chieftain addresses his Followers.* Ille fortis Germānōrum dux suōs convocāvit et hōc modō animōs eōrum cōfirmāvit. "Vōs, quī in hīs finibus vīvitis, in hunc locum convocāvi¹ quia mēcum dēbētis istōs agrōs et istās domōs ab iniuriis Rōmānōrum liberāre. Hoc nōbīs nōn difficile erit, quod illi hostēs hās silvās 5 dēnsās, ferās saevās quārum vestīgia vident, montēs altōs timent. Sī fortēs erimus, deī ipsī nōbīs viam salūtis dēmōnstrābunt. Ille sōl, istī oculī calamitatēs nostrās vidērunt.¹ Itaque nōmen illius rei pūblicae Rōmānae nōn solum nōbīs, sed etiam omnibus hominibus quī libertātem amant, est invīsum. Ad arma vōs vocō. Exercēte istam 10 pristinam virtūtem et vincētis."

II. 1. Does that bird (of yours)² sing? 2. This bird (of mine)² sings both³ in summer and in winter and has a beautiful voice. 3. Those birds (yonder)² in the country don't sing in winter. 4. Snatch a spear from the hands of that soldier (near you)² and come home with me. 5. With those very eyes (of yours)² you will see the tracks of the hateful enemy who burned my dwelling and made an attack on my brother. 6. For (*propter*) these deeds (*rēs*) we ought to inflict punishment on him without delay. 7. The enemies of the republic do not always suffer punishment.

¹ The perfect definite. (Cf. § 190.) ² English words in parentheses are not to be translated. They are inserted to show what demonstratives should be used. (Cf. § 290.) ³ both . . . and, et . . . et.



HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

295. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Continued*)

Altera urbis pars mūrīs, altera flūmine satis mūniri vidēbātur. Sed erat pōns in flūmine quī hostibus iter paene dedit. Tum Horātius Cocles, fortis vir, magnā vōce dixit, "Rescindite pontem, Rōmānī! Brevi tempore Porsena in urbem cōpiās suās trādūcet." Iam hostēs
 5 in ponte erant, sed Horātius cū duobus (cf. § 479) comitibus ad extrēmam pontis partem properāvit, et hī sōlī aciem hostium sustinuerunt. Tum vērō cīvēs Rōmānī pontem ā tergō rescindere incipiunt, et hostēs frūstrā Horātium superāre temptant.

LESSON LII

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

296. The indefinite pronouns are used to refer to *some person* or *some thing*, without indicating which particular one is meant. The pronouns **quis** and **quī**, which we have learned in their interrogative and relative uses, may also be indefinite; and nearly all the other indefinite pronouns are compounds of **quis** or **quī** and declined almost like them. Review the declension of these words, §§ 221, 227.

297. Learn the declension and meaning of the following indefinites :

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
quis		quid , <i>some one, any one</i> (substantive)
quī	qua or quae	quod , <i>some, any</i> (adjective), § 483
aliquis		aliquid , <i>some one, any one</i> (substantive), § 487
aliquī	aliqua	aliquid , <i>some, any</i> (adjective), § 487
quidam	quaedam	quoddam , quiddam , <i>a certain, a certain one</i> , § 485
quisquam		quicquam or quidquam (no plural), <i>any one</i> (at all) (substantive), § 486
quisque		quidque , <i>each one, every one</i> (substantive), § 484
quisque	quaeque	quodque , <i>each, every</i> (adjective), § 484

NOTE. The meanings of the neuters, *something*, etc., are easily inferred from the masculine and feminine.

a. In the masculine and neuter singular of the indefinites, **quis**-forms and **quid**-forms are mostly used as substantives, **quī**-forms and **quod**-forms as adjectives.

b. The indefinites **quis** and **quī** never stand first in a clause, and are rare excepting after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num** (as, **sī quis**, *if any one*; **sī quid**, *if anything*; **nisi quis**, *unless some one*). Generally **aliquis** and **aliquī** are used instead.

c. The forms **qua** and **aliqua** are both feminine nominative singular and neuter nominative plural of the indefinite adjectives **quī** and **aliquī** respectively. How do these differ from the corresponding forms of the relative **quī**?

d. Observe that **quīdam** (**quī** + **-dam**) is declined like **quī**, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** of **quī** becomes **n** (cf. § 287. *a*): **quendam**, **quandam**, **quōrundam**, **quārundam**; also that the neuter has **quid-dam** (substantive) and **quod-dam** (adjective) in the nominative and accusative singular. **Quīdam** is the least indefinite of the indefinite pronouns, and implies that you could name the person or thing referred to if you cared to do so.

e. **Quisquam** and **quisque** (substantive) are declined like **quis**.

f. **Quisquam**, *any one* (**quicquam** or **quidquam**, *anything*), is always used substantively and chiefly in negative sentences. The corresponding adjective *any* is **ūllus**, **-a**, **-um** (§ 108).

298.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. 1. Aliquis dē ponte in flūmen dēcidit sed sine ūllō periculō servātus est. 2. Est vērō in vitā cuiusque hominis aliqua bona fortūna. 3. Nē militum quidem¹ quisquam in castris mānsit. 4. Sī quem meae domī vidēs, iubē eum discēdere. 5. Sī quis pontem tenet, nē tantus quidem exercitus capere urbem potest. 6. Urbs nōn satis mūnīta erat et meridiē rēx quīdam paene cōpiās suās trāns pontem trādūxerat. 7. Dēnique miles quīdam armātus in fluctūs dēsiluit et incolumis ad alteram rīpam oculōs vertit. 8. Quisque illi fortī militī aliquid dare dēbet. 9. Tanta vērō virtūs Rōmānis semper placuit. 10. Ōlim Corinthus erat urbs satis magna et paene pār Rōmae ipsī; nunc vērō moenia dēcidērunt et pauca vestigia urbis illius reperīrī possunt. 11. Quisque libertātem amat, et aliquibus vērō nōmen rēgis est invisum.

II. 1. If you see a certain Cornelius at Corinth, send him to me. 2. Almost all the soldiers who fell down into the waves were unharmed. 3. Not even at Pompeii did I see so great a fire. 4. I myself was eager to tell something to some one. 5. Each one was praising his own work. 6. Did you see some one in the country? I did not see any one. 7. Unless some one will remain on the bridge with Horatius, the commonwealth will be in the greatest danger.

299. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Concluded*)

Mox, ubi parva pars pontis mānsit, Horātius iussit comitēs discēdere et sōlus mirā cōstantiā impetum illius tōtius exercitūs sustinēbat. Dēnique magnō fragōre pōns in flūmen dēcidit. Tum vērō Horātius tergum vertit et armātus in aquās dēsiluit. In eum hostēs multa tēla iēcērunt; incolumis autem per fluctūs ad alteram rīpam trānāvit. Ei propter tantās rēs gestās populus Rōmānus nōn solum alia magna praemia dedit sed etiam statuam Horāti in locō publicō posuit.

~~~~~  
 Sixth Review, Lessons XLV-LII, §§ 521-523  
 ~~~~~

¹ Observe that quīdam and quidem are different words.

LESSON LIII

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

300. The quality denoted by an adjective may exist in either a higher or a lower degree, and this is expressed by a form of inflection called comparison. The mere presence of the quality is expressed by the positive degree, its presence in a higher or lower degree by the comparative, and in the highest or lowest of all by the superlative. In English the usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix *-er* for the comparative and *-est* for the superlative; as, positive *high*, comparative *higher*, superlative *highest*. Less frequently we use the adverbs *more* and *most*; as, positive *beautiful*, comparative *more beautiful*, superlative *most beautiful*.

In Latin, as in English, adjectives are compared by adding suffixes or by using adverbs.

301. Adjectives are compared by using suffixes as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
clārus, -a, -um (<i>bright</i>) (BASE clār-)	clārīor, clārius (<i>brighter</i>)	clārīssimus, -a, -um (<i>brightest</i>)
brevīs, brevis (<i>short</i>) (BASE brev-)	brevīor, brevius (<i>shorter</i>)	brevīssimus, -a, -um (<i>shortest</i>)
vēlōx (<i>swift</i>) (BASE vēlōc-)	vēlōcīor, vēlōcius (<i>swifter</i>)	vēlōcīssimus, -a, -um (<i>swiftest</i>)

a. The comparative is formed from the base of the positive by adding *-ior* masc. and fem., and *-ius* neut.; the superlative by adding *-issimus*, *-issima*, *-issimum*.

302. Less frequently adjectives are compared by using the adverbs *magis*, *more*; *maximē*, *most*; as, *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *maximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

303. Declension of the Comparative. Adjectives of the comparative degree are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	clārīor	clārius	clārīorēs	clārīōra
<i>Gen.</i>	clārīōris	clārīōris	clārīōrum	clārīōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	clārīōrī	clārīōrī	clārīōribus	clārīōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	clārīōrem	clārius	clārīorēs	clārīōra
<i>Abl.</i>	clārīōre	clārīōre	clārīōribus	clārīōribus

a. Observe that the endings are those of the consonant stems of the third declension.

b. Compare **longus**, *long*; **fortis**, *brave*; **recēns** (base, **recent-**), *recent*; and decline the comparative of each.

304. Adjectives in **-er** form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding **-rimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the nominative masculine of the positive; as,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ācer , ācris , ācre (Base ācr-)	ācrior , ācrius	ācerrimus , -a , -um
pulcher , pulchra , pulchrum (Base pulchr-)	pulchrior , pulchrius	pulcherrimus , -a , -um
liber , libera , liberum (Base liber-)	liberior , liberius	liberrimus , -a , -um

a. In a similar manner compare **miser**, **aeger**, **crēber**.

305. The comparative is often translated by *quite*, *too*, or *somewhat*, and the superlative by *very*; as, **altior**, *quite (too, somewhat) high*; **altissimus**, *very high*.

306.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1. Quid explōrātōrēs quaerēbant? Explōrātōrēs tempus opportūnissimum itineri quaerēbant. 2. Mediā in silvā ignis quam crēberimōs fēcimus, quod ferās tam audācis numquam antea viderāmus. 3. Antiquis temporibus Germānī erant fortiōrēs quam Gallī. 4. Caesar erat clārīor quam inimīci¹ quī eum necāvērunt. 5. Quisque scūtum ingēns et pilum longius gerēbat. 6. Apud barbarōs Germānī erant audācissimī et fortissimī. 7. Mēns hominum est celerior quam corpus. 8. Virī aliquārum terrārum sunt miserrimī. 9. Corpora Germānōrum erant ingentiōra quam Rōmānōrum. 10. Ācerrimī Gallōrum principēs sine ūllā morā trāns flūmen quoddam equōs velōcissimōs trādūxērunt. 11. Aestāte diēs sunt longiōrēs quam hieme. 12. Imperātor quīdam ab explōrātōribus dē recentī adventū nāvium longārum quaesīvit.

II. 1. Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest. 2. Certain animals are swifter than the swiftest horse. 3. The Roman name was most

¹ Why is this word used instead of *hostēs*?

hateful to the enemies of the commonwealth. 4. The Romans always inflicted the severest¹ punishment on faithless allies. 5. I was quite ill, and so I hastened from the city to the country. 6. Marcus had some friends dearer than Cæsar.² 7. Did you not seek a more recent report concerning the battle? 8. Not even after a victory so opportune did he seek the general's friendship.

N.B. Beginning at this point, the selections for reading will be found near the end of the volume. (See p. 197.)

LESSON LIV

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES WITHOUT *QUAM*

307. The following six adjectives in *-lis* form the comparative regularly; but the superlative is formed by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive. Learn the meanings and comparison.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>facilis, -e, easy</i>	<i>facilior, -ius</i>	<i>facillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>difficilis, -e, hard</i>	<i>difficilior, -ius</i>	<i>difficillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>similis, -e, like</i>	<i>similior, -ius</i>	<i>simillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>dissimilis, -e, unlike</i>	<i>dissimilior, -ius</i>	<i>dissimillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>gracilis, -e, slender</i>	<i>gracilior, -ius</i>	<i>gracillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>humilis, -e, low</i>	<i>humilior, -ius</i>	<i>humillimus, -a, -um</i>

308. From the knowledge gained in the preceding lesson we should translate the sentence *Nothing is brighter than the sun*

Nihil est clārius quam sōl

But the Romans, especially in negative sentences, often expressed the comparison in this way,

Nihil est clārius sōle

which, literally translated, is *Nothing is brighter away from the sun*; that is, *starting from the sun as a standard, nothing is brighter*. This relation is expressed by the separative ablative *sōle*. Hence the rule

¹ Use the superlative of *gravis*. ² Accusative. In a comparison the noun after *quam* is in the same case as the one before it.

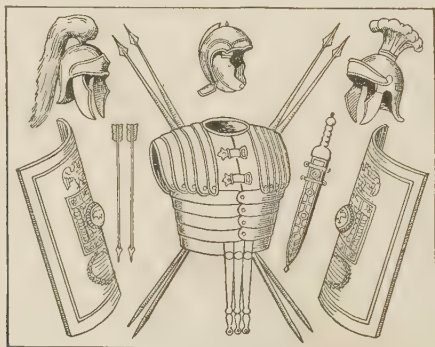
309. RULE. Ablative with Comparatives. *The comparative degree, if quam is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative.*

310.**EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1. Nēmō militēs alacriōrēs Rōmānīs vīdit. 2. Statim imperātor iussit nūntiōs quam celerrimōs litterās Rōmam portāre. 3. Multa flūmina sunt lēniōra Rhēnō. 4. Apud Rōmānōs quis erat clārior Caesare? 5. Nihil pulchrius urbe Rōmā vīdī. 6. Subitō multitudō audācissima magnō clāmōre proelium ācrius commisit. 7. Num est equus tuus tardus? Nōn vērō tardus, sed celerior aquilā. 8. Ubi Rōmae fuī, nēmō erat mihi amīor Sextō. 9. Quaedam mulierēs cibum militibus dare cupivērunt. 10. Rēx vetuit cīvīs ex urbe noctū discēdere. 11. Ille puer est gracilior hāc muliere. 12. Explōrātor duās (*two*) viās, alteram facilem, alteram difficiliōrem, dēmōstrāvit.

II. 1. What city have you seen more beautiful than Rome? 2. The Gauls were not more eager than the Germans. 3. The eagle is not slower than the horse. 4. The spirited woman did not fear to make the journey by night. 5. The mind of the multitude was quite gentle and friendly. 6. But the king's mind was very different. 7. The king was not like (similar to) his noble father. 8. These hills are lower than the huge mountains of our territory.



ARMA ROMANA

LESSON LV

 IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

311. Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison, as *good*, *better*, *best*; *many*, *more*, *most*. So Latin comparison presents some irregularities. Among the adjectives that are compared irregularly are

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

312. The following four adjectives have two superlatives. Unusual forms are placed in parentheses.

exterus, -a, -um, <i>outward</i>	(exterior, -ius, <i>outer</i>)	{ extrēmus, -a, -um } <i>outermost</i> , { (extimus, -a, -um) } <i>last</i>
inferus, -a, -um, <i>low</i>	inferior, -ius, <i>lower</i>	{ infimus, -a, -um } <i>lowest</i> , { īmus, -a, -um }
posterus, -a, -um, <i>next</i>	(posterior, -ius, <i>later</i>)	{ postrēmus, -a, -um } <i>last</i> , { (postumus, -a, -um) }
superus, -a, -um, <i>above</i>	superior, -ius, <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus, -a, -um } <i>highest</i> , { summus, -a, -um }

313. Plūs, *more* (plural *more*, *many*, *several*), is declined as follows :

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. ———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen. ———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat. ———	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc. ———	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
Abl. ———	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

a. In the singular **plūs** is used only as a neuter substantive.

314.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1. Reliqui hostēs, quī ā dextrō cornū proelium commiserant, dē superiōre locō fūgērunt et sēsē in silvam maximam recēpērunt. 2. In extrēmā parte silvae castra hostium posita erant. 3. Plūrimī captivī ab equitibus ad Caesarem ductī sunt. 4. Caesar vērō iussit eōs in servitūtem trādī. 5. Posterō diē magna multitudō mulierum ab Rōmānīs in valle imā reperta est. 6. Hae mulierēs maximē perterritae adventū Caesaris sēsē occīdere studēbant. 7. Eae quoque plūris fābulās dē exercitūs Rōmāni sceleribus audiverant. 8. Fāma illōrum militum optima nōn erat. 9. In barbarōrum aedificiis maior cōpia frūmentī reperta est. 10. Nēmō crēbris proeliis contendere sine aliquō periculō potest.

II. 1. The remaining women fled from their dwellings and hid themselves. 2. They were terrified and did not wish to be captured and given over into slavery. 3. Nothing can be worse than slavery. 4. Slavery is worse than death. 5. In the Roman empire a great many were killed because they refused to be slaves. 6. To surrender the fatherland is the worst crime.

LESSON LVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Concluded*) • ABLATIVE
OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

315. The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the superlative and have nō positive. Forms rarely used are in parentheses.

COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
citerior, <i>hither</i>	(citimus, <i>hithermost</i>)
interior, <i>inner</i>	(intimus, <i>inmost</i>)
prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next, nearest</i>
ulterior, <i>further</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest</i>

316. In the sentence *Galba is a head taller than Sextus*, the phrase *a head taller* expresses the **measure of difference** in height between

Galba and Sextus. The Latin form of expression would be *Galba is taller than Sextus by a head*. This is clearly an ablative relation, and the construction is called the **ablative of the measure of difference**.

EXAMPLES	{ Galba est altior capite quam Sextus
	{ <i>Galba is a head taller</i> (taller by a head) <i>than Sextus</i> .
	{ Illud iter ad Italiam est multō brevius
	{ <i>That route to Italy is much shorter</i> (shorter by much)

317. RULE. Ablative of the Measure of Difference. *With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.*

a Especially common in this construction are the neuter ablatives

eō, *by this, by that*

hōc, *by this*

multō, *by much*

nihilō,¹ *by nothing*

paulō, *by a little*

318.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1. Barbari proelium committere statuērunt eō magis quod Rōmānī infirmī esse vidēbantur. 2. Meum cōsilium est multō melius quam tuum quia multō facilius est. 3. Haec via est multō lātior quam illa. 4. Barbari erant nihilō tardiōrēs quam Rōmānī. 5. Tuus equus est paulō celerior quam meus. 6. Ii quī paulō fortiōrēs erant prohibuērunt reliquōs aditum relinquere. 7. Inter illās civitatēs Germānia militēs habet optimōs. 8. Propior via quae per hanc vallem dūcit est inter portum et lacum. 9. Servi, quī agrōs citeriōrēs incolēbant, priōrēs dominōs relinquere nōn cupivērunt, quod eōs amābant. 10. Ultimaē Germāniae partēs numquam in fidem Rōmānōrum vērunt. 11. Nam trāns Rhēnum aditus erat multō difficilior exercituī Rōmānō.

II. 1. Another way much more difficult (more difficult by much) was left through hither Gaul. 2. In ancient times no state was stronger than the Roman empire. 3. The states of further Gaul did not wish to give hostages to Cæsar. 4. Slavery is no better (better by nothing) than death. 5. The best citizens are not loved by the worst. 6. The active enemy immediately withdrew into the nearest forest, for they were terrified by Cæsar's recent victories.

¹ nihil was originally nihilum and declined like pilum. There is no plural.

LESSON LVII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

319. Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives, as in English (e.g. adj. *sweet*, adv. *sweetly*). Like adjectives, they can be compared; but they have no declension.

320. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed and compared as follows:

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>Adj.</i>	<i>cārus, dear</i>	<i>cārior</i>	<i>cārissimus</i>
<i>Adv.</i>	<i>cārē, dearly</i>	<i>cārius</i>	<i>cārissimē</i>
<i>Adj.</i>	<i>pulcher, beautiful</i>	<i>pulchrrior</i>	<i>pulcherrimus</i>
<i>Adv.</i>	<i>pulchrē, beautifully</i>	<i>pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrimē</i>
<i>Adj.</i>	<i>liber, free</i>	<i>liberior</i>	<i>liberrimus</i>
<i>Adv.</i>	<i>liberē, freely</i>	<i>liberius</i>	<i>liberrimē</i>

a. The positive of the adverb is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the positive of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective in the same way.

b. The comparative of any adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

321. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed like those described above in the comparative and superlative. The positive is usually formed by adding *-iter* to the base of adjectives of three endings or of two endings, and *-ter* to the base of those of one ending;¹ as,

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>Adj.</i>	<i>fortis, brave</i>	<i>fortior</i>	<i>fortissimus</i>
<i>Adv.</i>	<i>fortiter, bravely</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>
<i>Adj.</i>	<i>audāx, bold</i>	<i>audācior</i>	<i>audācissimus</i>
<i>Adv.</i>	<i>audācter, boldly</i>	<i>audācius</i>	<i>audācissimē</i>

¹ This is a good working rule, though there are some exceptions to it.

322. Case Forms as Adverbs. As we learned above, the neuter accusative of comparatives is used adverbially. So in the positive or superlative some adjectives, instead of following the usual formation, use the accusative or the ablative singular neuter adverbially; as,

<i>Adj.</i> facilis, <i>easy</i>	<i>p̄rimus, first</i>
<i>Adv.</i> facile (acc.), <i>easily</i>	<i>p̄rimum (acc.), first</i>
	<i>p̄rimō (abl.), at first</i>
<i>Adj.</i> multus, <i>many</i>	<i>plūrimus, most</i>
<i>Adv.</i> multum (acc.), <i>much</i>	<i>plūrimum (acc.), most</i>
	<i>multō (abl.), by much</i>

323. Learn the following irregular comparisons :

<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius, better</i>	<i>optimē, best</i>
<i>diū, long (time)</i>	<i>diūtius, longer</i>	<i>diūtissimē, longest</i>
<i>magnopere, greatly</i>	<i>magis, more</i>	<i>maximē, most</i>
<i>parum, little</i>	<i>minus, less</i>	<i>minimē, least</i>
<i>prope, nearly, near</i>	<i>propius, nearer</i>	<i>proximē, nearest</i>
<i>saepe, often</i>	<i>saepius, oftener</i>	<i>saepissimē, oftenest</i>

324. Form adverbs from the following adjectives, using the regular rules, and compare them : *laetus, superbus, molestus, amicus, ācer, brevis, gravis, recēns.*

325. RULE. Adverbs. *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

326. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1. Nūlla rēs melius gesta est quam proelium illud¹ ubi Marius multō minōre exercitū multō maiōrēs cōpiās Germānōrum in fugam dedit. 2. Audācter in Rōmānōrum cohortis hostēs impetūs fēcērunt. 3. Marius autem omnēs hōs fortissimē sustinuit. 4. Barbari nihilō fortiōrēs erant quam Rōmānī. 5. Primō barbari esse superiōrēs vidēbantur, tum Rōmānī ācrius contendērunt. 6. Dēnique, ubi iam diūtissimē paene aequō proeliō pugnātum est, barbari fugam petiērunt. 7. Quaedam Germānōrum gentēs, simul atque rūmōrem illius calamitātis audivērunt, sēsē in ultimis regiōnibus finium suōrum abdidērunt.

¹ ille standing after its noun means *that well-known, that famous.*

8. Rōmānī saepius quam hostēs vicērunt, quod meliōra arma habēbant.
 9. Inter omnis gentis Rōmānī plūrimum valēbant. 10. Hae cohortēs simul atque in aequiōrem regiōnem sē recēpērunt; castra sine ūllā difficultāte posuērunt.

II. 1. Some nations are easily overcome by their enemies. 2. Germany is much larger than Gaul. 3. Were not the Romans the most powerful among the tribes of Italy? 4. On account of (his) wounds the soldier dragged his body from the ditch with the greatest difficulty. 5. He was able neither to run nor to fight. 6. Who saved him? A certain horseman boldly undertook the matter. 7. The rumors concerning the soldier's death were not true.

LESSON LVIII

NUMERALS · THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

327. The Latin numeral adjectives may be classified as follows:

1. **Cardinal Numerals**, answering the question *how many?* as, **ūnus**, *one*; **duo**, *two*; etc.

2. **Ordinal Numerals**, derived in most cases from the cardinals and answering the question *in what order?* as, **prīmus**, *first*; **secundus**, *second*; etc.

3. **Distributive Numerals**, answering the question *how many at a time?* as, **singulī**, *one at a time*.

328. The Cardinal Numerals. The first twenty of the cardinals are as follows:

1, ūnus	6, sex	11, ūndecim	16, sēdecim
2, duo	7, septem	12, duodecim	17, septendecim
3, trēs	8, octō	13, tredecim	18, duodēvigintī
4, quattuor	9, novem	14, quattuordecim	19, ūndēvigintī
5, quinque	10, decem	15, quīndecim	20, vigintī

a. Learn also **centum** = 100, **ducentī** = 200, **mille** = 1000.

329. Declension of the Cardinals. Of the cardinals only **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, the hundreds above one hundred, and **mille** used as a noun, are declinable.

a. **ūnus** is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like **nūllus** (cf. §§ 109, 470). The plural of **ūnus** is used to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning, as, **ūna castra**, *one camp*; and with other nouns in the sense of *only*, as, **Gallī ūnī**, *only the Gauls*.

b. Learn the declension of **duo**, *two*; **trēs**, *three*; and **mille**, *a thousand*. (§ 479.)

c. The hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of **bonus**; as,

	ducentī, -ae, -a
	ducentōrum, -ārum, -ōrum
etc.	etc. etc.

330. We have already become familiar with sentences like the following:

Omnium avium aquila est vēlōcissima
Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest
Hoc ōrāculum erat omnium clārissimum
This oracle was the most famous of all

In such sentences the genitive denotes the whole, and the word it modifies denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called a **partitive genitive**.

331. RULE. Partitive Genitive. *Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the partitive genitive.*

a. Words denoting a part are especially pronouns, numerals, and other adjectives. But cardinal numbers excepting **mille** regularly take the ablative with **ex** or **dē** instead of the partitive genitive.

b. **Mille**, *a thousand*, in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective (as, **mille militēs**, *a thousand soldiers*), but in the plural it is a declinable noun and takes the partitive genitive (as, **decem mīlia militum**, *ten thousand soldiers*).

EXAMPLES:

Fortissimī hōrum sunt Germānī
The bravest of these are the Germans
Decem mīlia hostium interfecta sunt
Ten thousand (lit. thousands) of the enemy were slain
Ūna ex captīvīs erat soror rēgis
One of the captives was the king's sister

332.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1. Caesar maximam partem aedificiōrum incendit. 2. Magna pars mūnitiōnis aquā flūminis dēlēta est. 3. Galli huius regiōnis quinque milia hominum coēgerant. 4. Duo ex meis frātribus eundem rūmōrem audivērunt. 5. Quis Rōmānōrum erat clārior Caesare? 6. Quinque cohortēs ex illā legiōne castra quam fortissimē dēfendēbant. 7. Hic locus aberat aequō spatiō¹ ab castris Caesaris et castris Germānōrum. 8. Caesar simul atque pervēnit, plūs commeātūs ab sociis postulāvit. 9. Nōne mercātōrēs magnitudinem insulae cognōverant? Longitudinem sed nōn lātitudinem cognōverant. 10. Paucī hostium obtinēbant collem quem explōrātōrēs nostrī vidērunt.

II. 1. I have two brothers, and one of them lives at Rome. 2. Caesar stormed that very town with three legions. 3. In one hour he destroyed a great part of the fortification. 4. When the enemy could no longer² defend the gates, they retreated to a hill which was not far distant.³ 5. There three thousand of them bravely resisted the Romans.⁴

LESSON LIX

NUMERALS (*Continued*) · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

333. Learn the first twenty of the ordinal numerals (§ 478).

The ordinals are all declined like **bonus**.

334. The distributive numerals are declined like the plural of **bonus**.
The first three are

singulī, -ae, -a, *one each, one by one*

bīnī, -ae, -a, *two each, two by two*

ternī, -ae, -a, *three each, three by three*

335. We have learned that, besides its use as object, the accusative is used to express space relations not covered by the ablative. We have had such expressions as **per plūrimōs annōs**, *for a great many*

¹ Ablative of the measure of difference. ² Not longius. Why? ³ Latin, *was distant by a small space*. ⁴ Not the accusative.

years; *per tōtum diem*, for a whole day. Here the space relation is one of *extent of time*. We could also say *per decem pedēs*, for ten feet, where the space relation is one of *extent of space*. While this is correct Latin, the usual form is to use the accusative with no preposition, as,

Vir tōtum diem cucurrit, the man ran for a whole day

Caesar mūrum decem pedēs mōvit, Caesar moved the wall ten feet

336. RULE. Accusative of Extent. *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

a. This accusative answers the questions *how long? how far?*

b. Distinguish carefully between the accusative of time *how long* and the ablative of time *when*, or *within which*.

Select the accusatives of time and space and the ablatives of time in the following:

When did the general arrive? He arrived at two o'clock. How long had he been marching? For four days. How far did he march? He marched sixty-five miles. Where has he pitched his camp? Three miles from the river, and he will remain there several days. The wall around the camp is ten feet high. When did the war begin? In the first year after the king's death.

337.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.

I. *Cæsar in Gaul.* *Caesar bellum in Galliā septem annōs gessit. Primō annō Helvētiōs vicit, et eōdem annō multae Germānōrum gentēs ei sēsē dēdidērunt. Multōs iam annōs Germānī Gallōs vexābant*¹ *et ducēs Germānī cōpiās suās trāns Rhēnum saepe trādūcēbant.*¹ *Nōn singulī veniēbant, sed multa milia hominum in Galliam contendē-* 5 *bant. Quā dē causā principēs Galliae concilium convocāvērunt atque statuērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere. Caesar, simul atque hunc rūmōrem audivit, cōpiās suās sine morā coēgit. Primā lūce fortiter cum Germānīs proclium commisit. Tōtum diem ācritēr pugnātum est. Caesar ipse ā dextrō cornū aciem dūxit. Magna pars exercitūs* 10 *Germānī cecidit. Post magnam caedem paucī multa milia passuum ad flūmen fūgērunt.*

¹ Translate as if pluperfect.

II. 1. Cæsar pitched camp two miles from the river. 2. He fortified the camp with a ditch fifteen feet wide and a rampart nine feet high. 3. The camp of the enemy was a great way off (was distant by a great space). 4. On the next day he hastened ten miles in three hours. 5. Suddenly the enemy with all their forces made an attack upon (*in with acc.*) the rear. 6. For two hours the Romans were hard pressed by the barbarians. 7. In three hours the barbarians were fleeing.

LESSON LX

DEPONENT VERBS

338. A number of verbs are passive in form but active in meaning; as, *hortor*, *I encourage*; *vereor*, *I fear*. Such verbs are called **deponent** because they have laid aside (*dē-pōnere*, *to lay aside*) the active forms.

a. Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive and a few other active forms which will be noted later. (See §§ 375, 403. *b.*)

339. The principal parts of deponents are of course passive in form, as,

<i>Conj. I</i>	<i>hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, encourage</i>
<i>Conj. II</i>	<i>vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear</i>
<i>Conj. III (a)</i>	<i>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow</i>
	<i>(b) patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, allow</i>
<i>Conj. IV</i>	<i>partior, partīrī, partītus sum, share, divide</i>

Learn the synopses of these verbs. (See § 493.) *Patior* is conjugated like the passive of *capiō* (§ 492).

340. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The prepositions with the accusative that occur most frequently are

<i>ad, to</i>	<i>ante, before</i>	<i>intrā, within</i>
<i>apud, among</i>		<i>ob, on account of (quam ob rem,</i>
<i>circum, around</i>		<i>wherefore, therefore)</i>
<i>contrā, against, contrary to</i>		<i>per, through, by means of</i>
<i>extrā, outside of</i>		<i>post, after, behind</i>
<i>in, into, in, against, upon</i>		<i>propter, on account of, because of</i>
<i>inter, between, among</i>		<i>trāns, across, over</i>

a. Most of these you have had before. Review the old ones and learn the new ones. Review the list of prepositions governing the ablative, § 209.

341.

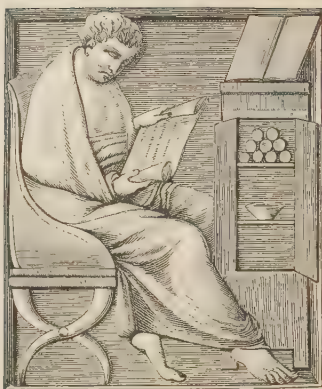
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.

I. 1. Trēs ex lēgātis, contrā Caesaris opīniōnem, iter facere per hostium finis verēbantur. 2. Quis eōs hortātus est? Imperātor eōs hortātus est et iis persuādere cōnatus est, sed nōn potuit. 3. Quid lēgātōs perterruit? Aut timor hostium, quī undique premēbant, aut longitūdō viae eōs perterruit. 4. Tamen omnēs ferē Caesarem multō magis quam hostis veritī sunt. 5. Fortissimae gentēs Galliae ex Germanis oriēbantur. 6. Quam ob rem tam fortēs erant? Quia nec vinum nec alia quae virtūtem dēlent ad sē portārī patiēbantur. 7. Caesar ex mercātoribus dē insulā Britannīā quacsīvit, sed nihil cognōscere potuit. 8. Itaque ipse statuit hanc terram petere, et mediā ferē aestāte cum multis nāvibus longis profectus est. 9. Magnā celeritāte iter confēcit et in opportūnissimō locō ēgressus est. 10. Barbari summīs viribus eum ab insulā prohibere cōnātī sunt. 11. Ille autem barbarōs multa milia passuum insecūtus est; tamen sine equitātū eōs cōnsequi nōn potuit.

II. 1. Contrary to our expectation, the enemy fled and the cavalry followed close after them. 2. From all parts of the multitude the shouts arose of those who were being wounded. 3. Caesar did not allow the cavalry to pursue too far.¹ 4. The cavalry set out at the first hour and was returning² to camp at the fourth hour. 5. Around the Roman camp was a rampart twelve feet high. 6. Caesar will delay three days because of the grain supply. 7. Nearly all the lieutenants feared the enemy and attempted to delay the march.

¹ Comparative of *longē*. ² Will this be a deponent or an active form?



PART III

CONSTRUCTIONS

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The preceding part of this book has been concerned chiefly with forms and vocabulary. There remain still to be learned the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, the Participles, and the Gerund of the regular verb, and the conjugation of the commoner irregular verbs. These will be taken up in connection with the study of constructions, which will be the chief subject of our future work. The special vocabularies of the preceding lessons contain, exclusive of proper names, about six hundred words. As these are among the commonest words in the language, *they must be mastered*. They properly form the basis of the study of words, and will be reviewed and used with but few additions in the remaining lessons.

For practice in reading and to illustrate the constructions presented, a continued story has been prepared and may be begun at this point (see p. 204). It has been divided into chapters of convenient length to accompany progress through the lessons, but may be read with equal profit after the lessons are finished. The story gives an account of the life and adventures of Publius Cornelius Lentulus, a Roman boy, who fought in Cæsar's campaigns and shared in his triumph. The colored plates illustrating the story are faithful representations of ancient life and are deserving of careful study.



CAPTIVI INTERROGANTUR
(See page 221)

LESSON LXI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

342. In addition to the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, which you have learned, Latin has a fourth mood called the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunctive are

PRESENT	} ACTIVE AND PASSIVE
IMPERFECT	
PERFECT	
PLUPERFECT	

343. The tenses of the subjunctive have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and, in addition, *each of them may refer to future time*. No meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms, as the translation varies with the construction used.

344. The present subjunctive is inflected as follows :

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
ACTIVE VOICE				
SINGULAR				
1. a'mem	mo'neam	re'gam	ca'piam	au'diam
2. a'mēs	mo'neās	re'gās	ca'piās	au'diās
3. a'met	mo'neat	re'gat	ca'piat	au'diat
PLURAL				
1. amē'mus	moneā'mus	regā'mus	capiā'mus	audiā'mus
2. amē'tis	moneā'tis	regā'tis	capiā'tis	audiā'tis
3. a'ment	mo'neant	re'gant	ca'piant	au'diant
PASSIVE VOICE				
SINGULAR				
1. a'mer	mo'near	re'gar	ca'piar	au'diar
2. amē'ris (-re)	moneā'ris (-re)	regā'ris (-re)	capiā'ris (-re)	audiā'ris (-re)
3. amē'tur	moneā'tur	regā'tur	capiā'tur	audiā'tur

PLURAL

1. amē'mur	moneā'mur	regā'mur	capiā'mur	audiā'mur
2. amē'minī	moneā'minī	regā'minī	capiā'minī	audiā'minī
3. amen'tur	monean'tur	regan'tur	capiān'tur	audian'tur

a. The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem.

b. The mood sign of the present subjunctive is -ē- in the first conjugation and -ā- in the others. It is shortened in the usual places (cf. § 12), and takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in the first and third conjugations, but not in the second and fourth.

c. The personal endings are the same as in the indicative.

d. In a similar way inflect the present subjunctive of *cūrō*, *iubeō*, *sūmō*, *iaciō*, *mūniō*.

345. The present subjunctive of the irregular verb *sum* is inflected as follows:

SING.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ sim} \\ 2. \text{ sis} \\ 3. \text{ sit} \end{array} \right.$	PLUR.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ simus} \\ 2. \text{ sitis} \\ 3. \text{ sint} \end{array} \right.$
-------	---	-------	--

346. The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared. 1. The two most important of the finite moods are the indicative and the subjunctive. The indicative deals with facts either real or assumed. If, then, we wish to assert something as a fact or to inquire after a fact, we use the indicative.

2. On the other hand, if we wish to express a *desire* or *wish*, a *purpose*, a *possibility*, an *expectation*, or some such notion, we must use the subjunctive. The following sentences illustrate the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive ideas.

INDICATIVE IDEAS

1. *He is brave*
Fortis est
2. *We set out at once*
Statim proficiscimur
3. *You hear him every day*
Cotīdiē eum audis

SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS

1. *May he be brave*
Fortis sit (idea of wishing)
2. *Let us set out at once*
Statim proficiscāmur (idea of willing)
3. *You can hear him every day*
Cotīdiē eum audiās (idea of possibility)

INDICATIVE IDEAS

4. *He remained until the ship arrived*

Mānsit dum nāvis pervēnit

5. *Cæsar sends men who find the bridge*

Cæsar mittit hominēs quī pontem reperiunt

SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS

4. *He waited until the ship should arrive*

Exspectāvit dum nāvis perveniret¹ (idea of expectation)

5. *Cæsar sends men who are to find (or to find) the bridge*

Cæsar hominēs mittit quī pontem reperiant (idea of purpose)

NOTE. From the sentences above we observe that the subjunctive may be used in either independent or dependent clauses; but it is far more common in the latter than in the former.

347.

EXERCISE

Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative and which in the subjunctive in a Latin translation?

There have been times in the history of our country when you might be proud of being an American citizen. Do you remember the day when Dewey sailed into Manila Bay to capture or destroy the enemy's fleet? You might have seen the admiral standing on the bridge calmly giving his orders. He did not even wait until the mines should be removed from the harbor's mouth, but sailed in at once. Let us not despair of our country while such valor exists, and may the future add new glories to the past.

LESSON LXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

348. Observe the sentence

Cæsar hominēs mittit quī pontem reperiant, *Cæsar sends men to find the bridge*

The verb **reperiant** in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it tells us what Cæsar wants the men to do; in other words, it expresses his will and the purpose in his mind. Such a use of the subjunctive is called the subjunctive of purpose.

¹ **perveniret**, imperfect subjunctive.

3. Mittit nūntiōs { dicant, audiant, veniant,
quī { nārrent, audiantur, in conciliō sedeant.
4. Castra mūniunt { sēsē dēfendant, impetum sustineant,
quō facilius { hostis vincant, salūtem petant.

II. 1. The Helvetii send ambassadors to seek¹ peace. 2. They are setting out at daybreak in order that they may make a longer march before night. 3. They will hide the women in the forest (*acc. with in*) that they may not be captured. 4. The Gauls wage many wars to free¹ their fatherland from slavery. 5. They will resist the Romans² bravely lest they be destroyed.

LESSON LXIII

INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

354. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III		CONJ. IV
ACTIVE				
1. amā'rem	monē'rem	re'gerem	ca'perem	audī'rem
2. amā'rēs	monē'rēs	re'gerēs	ca'perēs	audī'rēs
3. amā'ret	monē'ret	re'geret	ca'peret	audī'ret
1. amārē'mus	monērē'mus	regerē'mus	caperē'mus	audirē'mus
2. amārē'tis	monērē'tis	regerē'tis	caperē'tis	audirē'tis
3. amā'rent	monē'rent	re'gerent	ca'perent	audī'rent
PASSIVE				
1. amā'rer	monē'rer	re'gerer	ca'perer	audī'rer
2. amārē'ris(-re)	monērē'ris(-re)	regerē'ris(-re)	caperē'ris(-re)	audirē'ris(-re)
3. amārē'tur	monērē'tur	regerē'tur	caperē'tur	audirē'tur
1. amārē'mur	monērē'mur	regerē'mur	caperē'mur	audirē'mur
2. amārē'minī	monērē'minī	regerē'minī	caperē'minī	audirē'minī
3. amāren'tur	monēren'tur	regeren'tur	caperen'tur	audiren'tur

a. In a similar way inflect the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

¹ Not infinitive.² Not accusative.

355. The imperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb **sum** is inflected as follows :

SING.	1. es'sem	PLUR.	1. essē'mus
	2. es'sēs		2. essē'tis
	3. es'set		3. es'sent

356. The three great distinctions of time are *present*, *past*, and *future*. All tenses referring to present or future time are called **primary tenses**, and those referring to past time are called **secondary tenses**. Now it is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause. In the sentence *He says that he is coming*, the principal verb, *says*, is present, that is, is in a primary tense; and *is coming*, in the dependent clause, is naturally also primary. If I change *he says* to *he said*, — in other words, if I make the principal verb secondary in character, — I feel it natural to change the verb in the dependent clause also, and I say, *He said that he was coming*. This following of a tense by another of the same kind is called *tense sequence*, from *sequi*, "to follow."

In Latin the law of tense sequence is obeyed with considerable regularity, especially when an indicative in the principal clause is followed by a subjunctive in the dependent clause. Then a primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive. Learn the following table :

357. TABLE FOR SEQUENCE OF TENSES

	PRINCIPAL VERB IN THE INDICATIVE	DEPENDENT VERBS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE	
		<i>Incomplete or Continuing Action</i>	<i>Completed Action</i>
PRIMARY	Present Future Future perfect	Present	Perfect
	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

358. RULE. Sequence of Tenses. *Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses and secondary by secondary.*

359.

EXAMPLES

I. Primary tenses in principal and dependent clauses :

	Mittit	}	hominēs ut agrōs vāstent	
	Mittet			
	Miserit			
He	<i>sends</i> <i>will send</i> <i>will have sent</i>	men	<i>that they may</i> <i>in order to</i> <i>to</i>	lay waste the fields

II. Secondary tenses in principal and dependent clauses :

	Mittēbat	}	hominēs ut agrōs vāstārent	
	Mīsīt			
	Mīserat			
He	{ was sending sent or has sent had sent }	men	{ that they might in order to to }	lay waste the fields

360.

EXERCISES

I.

- Vēnerant ut { dūcerent, mitterent, vidērent, audirent,
dūcerentur, mitterentur, vidērentur, audirentur.
- Fugiēbat nē { caperētur, trāderētur, vidērētur,
necārētur, raperētur, resisteret.
- Misit nūtiōs quī { dicerent, audirent, venīrent,
nārrārent, audirentur, in conciliō sedērent.
- Castra mūnivērunt { sēsē dēfenderent, impetum sustinērent,
quō facilius { hostis vincerent, salūtem peterent.

II. 1. Cæsar encouraged the soldiers in order that they might fight more bravely. 2. The Helvetii left their homes to wage war. 3. The scouts set out at once lest they should be captured by the Germans. 4. Cæsar inflicted punishment on them in order that the others might be more terrified. 5. He sent messengers to Rome to announce the victory.

LESSON LXIV

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

361. The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are inflected as follows:

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE				
SINGULAR				
1. amā'verim	monu'erim	rē'xerim	cē'perim	audī'verim
2. amā'veris	monu'eris	rē'xeris	cē'peris	audī'veris
3. amā'verit	monu'erit	rē'xerit	cē'perit	audī'verit
PLURAL				
1. amāve'rimus	monue'rimus	rēxe'rimus	cēpe'rimus	audīve'rimus
2. amāve'ritis	monue'ritis	rēxe'ritis	cēpe'ritis	audīve'ritis
3. amā'verint	monu'erint	rē'xerint	cē'perint	audī'verint
PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE				
SINGULAR				
1. amāvis'sem	monuis'sem	rēxis'sem	cēpis'sem	audīvis'sem
2. amāvis'sēs	monuis'sēs	rēxis'sēs	cēpis'sēs	audīvis'sēs
3. amāvis'set	monuis'set	rēxis'set	cēpis'set	audīvis'set
PLURAL				
1. amāvissē'mus	monuissē'mus	rēxissē'mus	cēpissē'mus	audīvissē'mus
2. amāvissē'tis	monuissē'tis	rēxissē'tis	cēpissē'tis	audīvissē'tis
3. amāvis'sent	monuis'sent	rēxis'sent	cēpis'sent	audīvis'sent

a. Observe that these two tenses, like the corresponding ones in the indicative, are formed from the perfect stem.

b. Observe that the perfect subjunctive active is like the future perfect indicative active, excepting that the first person singular ends in **-m** and not in **-ō**.

c. Observe that the pluperfect subjunctive active may be formed by adding **-issem**, **-issēs**, etc. to the perfect stem.

d. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of **cūrō**, **iubeō**, **sūmō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**.

362. The passive of the perfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **sim**, the present subjunctive of **sum**.

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III		CONJ. IV
PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE				
SINGULAR				
1. amā'tus sim	mo'nitus sim	rēc'tus sim	cap'tus sim	audī'tus sim
2. amā'tus sīs	mo'nitus sīs	rēc'tus sīs	cap'tus sīs	audī'tus sīs
3. amā'tus sit	mo'nitus sit	rēc'tus sit	cap'tus sit	audī'tus sit
PLURAL				
1. amā'tī simus	mo'nitī simus	rēc'tī simus	cap'tī simus	audī'tī simus
2. amā'tī sītis	mo'nitī sītis	rēc'tī sītis	cap'tī sītis	audī'tī sītis
3. amā'tī sint	mo'nitī sint	rēc'tī sint	cap'tī sint	audī'tī sint

363. The passive of the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **essem**, the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**.

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III		CONJ. IV
PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE				
SINGULAR				
1. amātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	captus essem	audītus essem
2. amātus essēs	monitus essēs	rēctus essēs	captus essēs	audītus essēs
3. amātus esset	monitus esset	rēctus esset	captus esset	audītus esset
PLURAL				
1. amātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	rēctī essēmus	captī essēmus	audītī essēmus
2. amātī essētis	monitī essētis	rēctī essētis	captī essētis	audītī essētis
3. amātī essent	monitī essent	rēctī essent	captī essent	audītī essent

α. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive of **cūrō**, **iubeō**, **sūmō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**.

364. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb **sum** are inflected as follows:

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fu'erim	fue'rimus	fuis'sem	fuissē'mus
fu'eris	fue'ritis	fuis'sēs	fuissē'tis
fu'erit	fu'erint	fuis'set	fuis'sent

365. A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun, as,

That the men are afraid is clear enough (clause as subject)

He ordered *them to call on him* (clause as object)

We have already had many instances of infinitive clauses used in this way (cf. § 213), and have noted the similarity between Latin and English usage in this respect. But the Latin often uses the *subjunctive* in substantive clauses, and this marks an important difference between the two languages.

366. RULE. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. *A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as the object of verbs of commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising, where in English we should usually have the infinitive.*

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>The general ordered the soldiers to run</i> | Imperātor mīlitibus imperāvit ut current |
| 2. <i>He urged them to resist bravely</i> | Hortātus est ut fortiter resisterent |
| 3. <i>He asked them to give the children food</i> | Petivit ut liberis cibum darent |
| 4. <i>He will persuade us not to set out</i> | Nōbīs persuādēbit nē proficiscāmur |
| 5. <i>He advises us to remain at home</i> | Monet ut domī maneāmus |

a. The object clauses following these verbs all express the purpose or will of the principal subject that something be done or not done. (Cf. § 348.)

367. The following verbs are used with object clauses of purpose. Learn the list and the principal parts of the new ones.

hortor, urge	petō, quaerō, rogō, ask, seek
imperō, order (with the dative of the person ordered and a subjunctive clause of the thing ordered done)	persuādēō, persuade (with the same construction as imperō)
moneō, advise	postulō, demand, require
	suādēō, advise (cf. persuādēō)

N.B. Remember that iubeō, order, takes the infinitive as in English. (Cf. § 213. 1.) Compare the sentences

Iubeō eum venīre, I order him to come

Imperō eī ut veniat, I give orders to him that he is to come

We ordinarily translate both of these sentences like the first, but the difference in meaning between *iubeō* and *imperō* in the Latin requires the *infinitive* in the one case and the *subjunctive* in the other.

368.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Petit atque hortātur ut ipse dicat. 2. Caesar Helvētiis imperāvit nē per prōvinciam iter facerent. 3. Caesar nōn iussit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam iter facere. 4. Ille cīvibus persuāsit ut dē finibus suis discēderent. 5. Caesar prīncipēs monēbit nē proelium committant. 6. Postulāvit nē cum Helvētiis aut cum eōrum sociis bellum gererent. 7. Ab iis quaesīvi nē proficiscerentur. 8. Iis persuādere nōn potui ut domi manērent.

II. 1. Who ordered Cæsar to make the march? (*Write this sentence both with imperō and with iubeō.*) 2. The faithless scouts persuaded him to set out at daybreak. 3. They will ask him not to inflict punishment. 4. He demanded that they come to the camp. 5. He advised them to tell everything (*omnia*).

NOTE. Do not forget that the English infinitive expressing purpose must be rendered by a Latin subjunctive. Review § 352.



LEGIO ITER FACIT

LESSON LXV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF POSSUM · VERBS OF FEARING

369. Learn the subjunctive of **possum** (§ 495), and note especially the position of the accent.

370. **Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.** We have learned that what we want done or not done is expressed in Latin by a subjunctive clause of purpose. In this class belong also *clauses after verbs of fearing*, for we fear either that something will happen or that it will not, and we either want it to happen or we do not. If we want a thing to happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause is introduced by **ut**. If we do not want it to happen and fear that it will, **nē** is used. Owing to a difference between the English and Latin idiom we translate **ut** after a verb of fearing by *that not*, and **nē** by *that or lest*.

371.

EXAMPLES

timeō	} ut {	veniat
timēbō		
timuerō		vēnerit

*I fear, shall fear, shall have feared, that he will not come,
has not come*

timēbam	} ut {	venīret
timuī		
timueram		vēnisset

*I was fearing, feared, had feared, that he would not come,
had not come*

The same examples with **nē** instead of **ut** would be translated *I fear that or lest he will come, has come, etc.*

372. **RULE.** Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing. *Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by ut (that not) or nē (that or lest).*

373.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar verēbātur ut supplicium captivōrum Gallis placēret. 2. Rōmānī ipsī magnopere verēbantur nē Helvētīi iter per prōvinciam facerent. 3. Timēbant ut satis rei frūmentāriae mitti posset. 4. Vereor ut hostium impetum sustinēre possim. 5. Timuit nē impedimenta ab hostibus capta essent. 6. Caesar numquam timuit nē legiōnēs vincerentur. 7. Legiōnēs pugnāre nōn timuērunt.¹

II. 1. We fear that they are not coming. 2. We fear lest they are coming. 3. We feared that they had come. 4. We feared that they had not come. 5. They feared greatly that the camp could not be defended. 6. Almost all feared¹ to leave the camp.

LESSON LXVI

THE PARTICIPLES

374. The Latin verb has the following Participles:²

	CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
	ACTIVE				
PRESENT	{ amāns loving	monēns advising	regēns ruling	capiēns taking	audiēns hearing
FUTURE	{ amātūrus about to love	monitūrus about to advise	rēctūrus about to rule	captūrus about to take	auditūrus about to hear
	PASSIVE				
PERFECT	{ amātus loved, hav- ing been loved	monitus advised, hav- ing been advised	rēctus ruled, hav- ing been ruled	captus taken, hav- ing been taken	auditus heard, hav- ing been heard
FUTURE ²	{ amandus to be loved	monendus to be advised	regendus to be ruled	capiendus to be taken	audiendus to be heard

¹ Distinguish between what one is afraid *to do* (complementary infinitive as here) and what one is afraid *will take place* or *has taken place* (substantive clause with the subjunctive). ² Review § 203. ³ The future passive participle is often called the *gerundive*.

a. The present active and future passive participles are formed from the present stem, and the future active and perfect passive participles are formed from the participial stem.

b. The present active participle is formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem. In **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, the stem is modified by the addition of **-ē-**, as **capi-ē-ns**, **audi-ē-ns**. It is declined like an adjective of one ending of the third declension. (Cf. § 256.)

amāns, loving

BASE amant-		STEM amanti-	
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i> amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i> amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i> amantem	amāns	amantīs or -ēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i> amantī or -e	amantī or -e	amantibus	amantibus

(1) When used as an adjective the ablative singular ends in **-ī**; when used as a participle or as a substantive, in **-e**.

(2) In a similar way decline **monēns, regēns, capiēns, audiēns**.

c. The future active participle is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the base of the participial stem. We have already met this form combined with **esse** to produce the future active infinitive. (Cf. § 206.)

d. For the perfect passive participle see § 201. The future passive participle or gerundive is formed by adding **-ndus** to the present stem.

e. All participles in **-us** are declined like **bonus**.

f. Participles agree with nouns or pronouns like adjectives.

g. Give all the participles of the following verbs: **cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō**.

375. Participles of Deponent Verbs. Deponent verbs have the participles of the active voice as well as of the passive; consequently every deponent verb has four participles, as,

<i>Pres. Act.</i>	hortāns, urging
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	hortātūrus, about to urge
<i>Perf. Pass. (in form)</i>	hortātus, having urged
<i>Fui. Pass. (Gerundive)</i>	hortandus, to be urged

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is passive in form but *active* in meaning. *No other verbs have a perfect active participle.* On the other hand, the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as in other verbs.

b. Give the participles of *cōnor*, *vereor*, *sequor*, *patior*, *partior*.

376. Tenses of the Participle. The tenses express time as follows:

1. The present active participle corresponds to the English present active participle in *-ing*, but can be used only of an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; as, *militēs insequentēs cēpērunt multōs*, *the soldiers, while pursuing, captured many*. Here the pursuing and the capturing are going on together.

2. The perfect participle (excepting of deponents) is regularly passive and corresponds to the English past participle with or without the auxiliary *having been*; as, *auditus*, *heard* or *having been heard*.

3. The future active participle, translated *about to*, etc., denotes time after the action of the main verb.

377. Review §§ 203, 204, and note the following model sentences:

1. *Militēs currentēs erant dēfessī*, *the soldiers who were running (lit. running) were weary*.

2. *Caesar profectūrus Rōmam nōn exspectāvit*, *Cæsar, when about to set out (lit. about to set out) for Rome, did not wait*.

3. *Oppidum captum vidimus*, *we saw the town which had been captured (lit. 'captured town')*.

4. *Imperātor trīduum morātus profectus est*, *the general, since (when, or after) he had delayed (lit. the general, having delayed) three days, set out*.

5. *Militēs victī terga nōn vertērunt*, *the soldiers, though they were conquered (lit. the soldiers conquered), did not retreat*.

In each of these sentences the literal translation of the participle is given in parentheses. We note, however, that its proper translation usually requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (*when, since, after, though, etc.*), or a relative clause. Consider, in each case, what translation will best bring out the thought, and do not, as a rule, translate the participle literally.

378.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Puer timēns nē capiātur fugit. 2. Aquila irā commōta avīs reliquās interficere cōnāta erat. 3. Militēs ab hostibus pressī tēla iacere nōn potuērunt. 4. Caesar decimam legiōnem laudātūrus ad primum agmen prōgressus est. 5. Imperātor hortātus equitēs ut fortiter pugnārent signum proeliō dedit. 6. Militēs hostis octō milia passuum īsecūtī multis cum captivīs ad castra revertērunt. 7. Sōl oriēns multōs interfectōs vīdit. 8. Rōmānī cōnsilium audāx suspicātī barbarīs sēsē nōn commīsērunt. 9. Nāvis ē portū ēgressa nūllō in periculō erat.

II.¹ 1. The army was in very great danger while marching through the enemy's country. 2. Frightened by the length of the way, they longed for home. 3. When the scouts were about to set out, they heard the shouts of victory. 4. When we had delayed many days, we set fire to the buildings and departed. 5. While living at Rome I heard orators much better than these. 6. The soldiers who are fighting across the river are no braver than we.

LESSON LXVII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLŌ, NŌLO, MALŌ* · THE ABLATIVE
WITH A PARTICIPLE, OR ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

379. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of *volō*, *wish*; *nōlō* (*ne + volō*), *be unwilling*; *malō* (*magis + volō*), *be more willing, prefer* (§ 497). Note the irregularities in the present indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, and in the imperfect subjunctive. (Cf. § 354.)

a. These verbs are usually followed by the infinitive with or without a subject accusative; as, *volunt venīre*, *they wish to come*; *volunt amīcōs venīre*, *they wish their friends to come*. The English usage is the same.²

380. Observe the following sentences:

1. *Magistrō laudante omnēs puerī diligenter labōrant*, *with the teacher praising, or since the teacher praises, or the teacher praising, all the boys labor diligently*.

¹ In this exercise use participles for the subordinate clauses. ² Sometimes the subjunctive of purpose is used after these verbs. (See § 366.)

2. *Caesare dūcente nēmō prōgredi timet*, *with Cæsar leading*, or *when Cæsar leads*, or *if Cæsar leads*, or *Cæsar leading*, *no one fears to advance*.

3. *His rēbus cognitīs militēs fūgērunt*, *when this was known*, or *since this was known*, or *these things having been learned*, *the soldiers fled*.

4. *Proeliō commissō multī vulnerātī sunt*, *after the battle had begun*, or *when the battle had begun*, or *the battle having been joined*, *many were wounded*.

a. One of the fundamental ablative relations is expressed in English by the preposition *with* (cf. § 50). In each of the sentences above we have a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative, and the translation shows that in each instance the ablative expresses *attendant circumstance*. For example, in the first sentence the circumstance attending or accompanying the diligent labor of the boys is the praise of the teacher. This is clearly a *with* relation, and the ablative is the case to use.

b. We observe, further, that the ablative and its participle are absolutely independent grammatically of the rest of the sentence. If we were to express the thought in English in a similar way, we should use the nominative independent or absolute. In Latin the construction is called the Ablative Absolute, or the Ablative with a Participle. This form of expression is exceedingly common in Latin, but rather rare in English, so we must not, as a rule, employ the English absolute construction to translate the ablative absolute. The attendant circumstance may be one of *time* (when or after), or one of *cause* (since), or one of *concession* (though), or one of *condition* (if). In each case try to discover the precise relation, and translate the ablative and its participle by a clause which will best express the thought.

381. RULE. Ablative Absolute. *The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance.*

NOTE 1. The verb *sum* has no present participle. In consequence we often find two nouns or a noun and an adjective in the ablative absolute with no participle expressed; as, *tē duce*, *you (being) leader*, *with you as leader*; *patre infirmō*, *my father (being) weak*.

NOTE 2. Be very careful not to put in the ablative absolute a noun and participle that form the subject or object of a sentence. Compare

a. *The Gauls, having been conquered by Cæsar, returned home*

b. *The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar, the army returned home*

In a the subject is *The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar*, and we translate,

Galli ā Caesare victī domum revertērunt

In *b* the subject is *the army*. *The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar* is nominative absolute in English, which requires the ablative absolute in Latin, and we translate,

Gallīs ā Caesare victīs exercitus domūm revertit

NOTE 3. The fact that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle (cf. § 375. *a*) often compels a change of voice when translating from one language to the other. For example, we can translate *Cæsar having encouraged the legions* just as it stands, because *hortor* is a deponent verb. But if we wish to say *Cæsar having conquered the Gauls*, we have to change the voice of the participle to the passive because *vincō* is not deponent, and say, *the Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar* (see translation above).

382.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Māvīs, nōn vīs, vultis, nōlumus. 2. Ut nōlit, ut vellēmus, ut mālīt. 3. Nōlī, velle, nōluisse, mālīe. 4. Vult, māvultis, ut nōllet, nōlīte. 5. Sōle oriente, avēs cantāre incēpērunt. 6. Clāmōribus audītis, barbarī prōgredi recūsābant. 7. Caesare legiōnēs hortātō, militēs paulō fortius pugnāvērunt. 8. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Helvētiī finitimīs persuāsērunt ut sēcūm iter facerent. 9. Labōribus cōfectīs, militēs ā Caesare quaerēbant ut sibi praemia daret. 10. Conciliō convocātō, principēs ita respondērunt. 11. Dux plūris diēs in Helvētiōrum finibus morāns multōs vicōs incendit. 12. Magnitūdine Germānōrum cognitā, quīdam ex Rōmānīs timēbant. 13. Mercātōribus rogātīs, Cæsar nihilō plūs reperīre potuit.

II. 1. He was unwilling, lest they prefer, they have wished. 2. You prefer, that they might be unwilling, they wish. 3. We wish, they had preferred, that he may prefer. 4. Cæsar, when he heard the rumor (*the rumor having been heard*), commanded (*imperāre*) the legions to advance more quickly. 5. Since Cæsar was leader, the men were willing to make the journey. 6. A few, terrified¹ by the reports which they had heard, preferred to remain at home. 7. After these had been left behind, the rest hastened as quickly as possible. 8. After Cæsar had undertaken the business (*Cæsar, the business having been undertaken*), he was unwilling to delay longer.²

¹ Would the ablative absolute be correct here?

² Not *longius*. Why?

LESSON LXVIII

THE IRREGULAR VERB *FĪŌ* · THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

383. The verb *fīō*, *be made, happen*, serves as the passive of *faciō*, *make*, in the present system. The rest of the verb is formed regularly from *faciō*. Learn the principal parts and conjugation (§ 500). Observe that the *i* is long except before *-er* and in *fit*.

a. The compounds of *faciō* with prepositions usually form the passive regularly, as,

Active *cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus*

Passive *cōnfīcior, cōnfīcī, cōnfectus sum*

384. Observe the following sentences :

1. *Terror erat tantus ut omnēs fugerent, the terror was so great that all fled.*

2. *Terror erat tantus ut nōn facile milītēs sēsē reciperent, the terror was so great that the soldiers did not easily recover themselves.*

3. *Terror fēcit ut omnēs fugerent, terror caused all to flee (lit. made that all fled).*

a. Each of these sentences is complex, containing a principal clause and a subordinate clause.

b. The principal clause names a cause and the subordinate clause states the *consequence* or *result* of this cause.

c. The subordinate clause has its verb in the subjunctive, though it is translated like an indicative. The construction is called the *subjunctive of consequence or result*, and the clause is called a consecutive or result clause.

d. In the last example the clause of result is the object of the verb *fēcit*.

e. The conjunction introducing the consecutive or result clause is *ut* = *so that*; negative, *ut nōn* = *so that not*.

385. RULE. *Subjunctive of Result. Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by ut or ut nōn and have the verb in the subjunctive.*

386. RULE. *Object clauses of result with ut or ut nōn are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about.*

387. Purpose and Result Clauses Compared. There is great similarity in the expression of purpose and of result in Latin. If

the sentence is affirmative, both purpose and result clauses may be introduced by **ut**; but if the sentence is negative, the purpose clause has **nē** and the result clause **ut nōn**. Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause by such words as **tam**, **ita**, **sic** (*so*), and these serve to point them out. Compare

- a. **Tam graviter vulnerātus est ut caperētur** *He was so severely wounded that he was captured*
 b. **Graviter vulnerātus est ut caperētur** *He was severely wounded in order that he might be captured*

Which sentence contains a result clause, and how is it pointed out?

388.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fit, fiet, ut fiat, fiēbāmus. 2. Fiō, fiēs, ut fierent, fierī, fiunt. 3. Fiētis, ut fiāmus, fis, fiēmus. 4. Militēs erant tam tardī ut ante noctem in castra nōn pervenirent. 5. Sōl facit ut omnia sint pulchra. 6. Eius modī perīcula erant ut nēmō proficīscī vellet. 7. Equitēs hostium cum equitātū nostrō in itinere contendērunt, ita tamen¹ ut nostrī omnibus in partibus superiōrēs essent. 8. Virtūs militum nostrōrum fēcit ut hostēs nē ūnum quidem² impetum sustinērent. 9. Hominēs erant tam audācēs ut nūllō modō continērī possent. 10. Spatium erat tam parvum ut militēs tēla iacere nōn facile possent. 11. Hōc proeliō factō barbarī ita perterritī sunt ut ab ultimīs gentibus lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur. 12. Hoc proelium factum est nē lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur.

II. 1. It will happen, they were being made, that it may happen. 2. It happens, he will be made, to happen. 3. They are made, we were being made, lest it happen. 4. The soldiers are so brave that they conquer. 5. The soldiers are brave in order that they may conquer. 6. The fortification was made so strong that it could not be taken. 7. The fortification was made strong in order that it might not be taken. 8. After the town was taken,³ the townsmen feared that they would be made slaves. 9. What state is so weak that it is unwilling to defend itself?

¹ ita tamen, with such a result however. ² nē . . . quidem, not even. The emphatic word is placed between. ³ Ablative absolute.

LESSON LXIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION
THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

389. Akin to the subjunctive of consequence or result is the use of the subjunctive in clauses of characteristic or description.

This construction is illustrated in the following sentences:

1. Quis est quī suam domum nōn amet? *who is there who does not love his own home?*

2. Erant quī hoc facere nōllent, *there were (some) who were unwilling to do this.*

3. Tū nōn is es quī amīcōs trādās, *you are not such a one as to, or you are not the man to, betray your friends.*

4. Nihil videō quod timeam, *I see nothing to fear (nothing of such a character as to fear it).*

a. Each of these examples contains a descriptive relative clause which tells what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is. To express this thought the subjunctive is used. A relative clause that merely states a fact and does not describe the antecedent uses the indicative. Compare the sentences

Cæsar is the man who is leading us, Caesar est is quī nōs dūcit
(mere statement of fact, no description, with the indicative)

Cæsar is the man to lead us, Caesar est is quī nōs dūcat (descriptive relative clause with the subjunctive)

b. Observe that in this construction a demonstrative pronoun and a relative, as is quī, are translated *such a one as to, the man to.*

c. In which of the following sentences would you use the indicative and in which the subjunctive?

These are not the men who did this

These are not the men to do this

390. RULE. Subjunctive of Characteristic. *A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description.*

391. Observe the sentences

1. Rōmānī **Caesarem cōsulem** fēcērunt, *the Romans made Caesar consul.*
2. **Caesar cōsul** ā Rōmānīs factus est, *Caesar was made consul by the Romans.*

a. Observe in 1 that the transitive verb **fēcērunt**, *made*, has two objects : (1) the direct object, **Caesarem** ; (2) a second object, **cōsulem**, referring to the same person as the direct object and completing the predicate. The second accusative is called a Predicate Accusative.

b. Observe in 2 that when the verb is changed to the passive both of the accusatives become nominatives, the *direct object* becoming the *subject* and the *predicate accusative* the *predicate nominative*.

392. RULE. Two Accusatives. *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, showing, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives.*

393. The verbs commonly found with two accusatives are

creo, creāre, creāvī, creātus, <i>choose</i>	
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus	} <i>call</i>
nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātus	
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus	
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, <i>make</i>	

394.**EXERCISES**

1. ~~1.~~ In Germāniae silvīs sunt ¹ multa genera ferārum quae reliquīs in locīs nōn visa sint. 2. Erant ¹ itinera duo quibus Helvētiī domō discēdere possent. 3. Erat ¹ manus nūlla, nūllum oppidum, nūllum prae-sidium quod sē armis dēfenderet. 4. Tōtō frūmentō raptō, domī nihil erat quō mortem prohibēre possent. 5. Rōmānī Galbam ducem cre-āvērunt et summā celeritātē profecti sunt. 6. Neque erat ¹ tantae multitudinis quisquam quī morārī vellet. 7. Germānī nōn īi sunt quī adventum Caesaris vereantur. 8. Cōsulibus occīsīs erant quī ² vellent

¹ Remember that when the verb *sum* precedes its subject it is translated *there is, there are, there were*, etc. ² *erant quī, there were (some) who*. A wholly indefinite antecedent of *quī* does not need to be expressed.

eum rēgem creāre. 9. Pāce factā erat nēmō quī arma trādere nōllet.
10. Inter Helvētiōs quis erat quī nōbīlior illō esset?

II. 1. The Romans called the city Rome. 2. The city was called Rome by the Romans. 3. The better citizens wished to choose him king. 4. The brave soldier was not the man to run. 5. There was no one ¹to call me friend. 6. These are not the men to ²betray their friends. 7. There were (some) who called him the bravest of all.

~~~~~  
Eighth Review, Lessons LXI-LXIX, §§ 527-528  
~~~~~

LESSON LXX

THE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION *CUM* THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

395. The conjunction **cum** has the following meanings and constructions:

cum TEMPORAL = *when*, followed by the indicative or the subjunctive

cum CAUSAL = *since*, followed by the subjunctive

cum CONCESSIVE = *although*, followed by the subjunctive

As you observe, the mood after **cum** is sometimes indicative and sometimes subjunctive. The reason for this will be made clear by a study of the following sentences:

1. *Caesarem vidī tum cum in Galliā eram, I saw Cæsar at the time when I was in Gaul.*

2. *Caesar in eōs impetum fēcit cum pācem peterent, Cæsar made an attack upon them when they were seeking peace.*

3. *Hoc erat difficile cum paucī sine vulneribus essent; this was difficult, since only a few were without wounds.*

4. *Cum primī ordinēs fūgissent, tamen reliquī fortiter cōsistēbant, though the front ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood their ground.*

a. The underlying principle is one already familiar to you (cf. § 389. *a*). When the **cum** clause states a fact and simply *fixes the time* at which the main action took place, the indicative mood is used. So, in the first example, **cum in Galliā eram** fixes the time when I saw Cæsar.

¹ A relative clause of characteristic or description.

² See § 389. *b*.

b. On the other hand, when the **cum** clause *describes the circumstances* under which the main act took place, the subjunctive mood is used. So, in the second example, the principal clause states that Cæsar made an attack, and the **cum** clause describes the circumstances under which this act occurred. The idea of *time* is also present, but it is subordinate to the idea of *description*. Sometimes the descriptive clause is one of *cause* and we translate **cum** by *since*; sometimes it denotes *concession* and **cum** is translated *although*.

396. RULE. Constructions with Cum. *The conjunction cum means when, since, or although. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means when and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place.*

NOTE. **Cum** in clauses of description with the subjunctive is much more common than its use with the indicative.

397. Note the following sentences :

1. Oppidum erat parvum magnitudine sed magnum multitudi-
ne hominum, *the town was small in size but great in population.*

2. Homō erat corpore infirmus sed validus animō, *the man was weak in body but strong in courage.*

a. Observe that **magnitudine**, **multitudine**, **corpore**, and **animō** tell in *what respect* something is true. The relation is one covered by the ablative case, and the construction is called the *ablative of specification*.

398. RULE. Ablative of Specification. *The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

399.

IDIOMS

aliquem certiorem facere, *to inform some one (lit. to make some one more certain)*

certior fieri, *to be informed (lit. to be made more certain)*

iter dare, *to give a right of way, allow to pass*

obsidēs inter sē dare, *to give hostages to each other*

400.

EXERCISES

I. ~~✓~~ Helvētīi cum patrum nostrōrum tempore domō profecti essent, cōsulis exercitum in fugam dederant. ~~✓~~ Cum Cæsar in Galliam vēnit, Helvētīi alios agrōs petēbant. ~~✓~~ Cæsar cum in citeriōre Galliā esset, tamen dē Helvētiōrum cōsiliis certior fiēbat.

4. Cum Helvētī bellō clārissimī essent, Caesar iter per prōvinciam dare recūsāvit. 5. ~~E~~gātus cum haec audivisset, Caesarem certiorē fēcit. 6. Cum prīncipēs inter sē obsidēs darent, Rōmānī bellum parāvērunt. 7. Caesar, cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci. 8. Nē virtūte quidem Galli erant parēs Germānis. 9. Caesar neque corpore neque animō infirmus erat. 10. Illud bellum tum incēpit cum Caesar fuit cōsul.

Observe in each case what mood follows **cum**, and try to give the reasons for its use. In the third sentence the **cum** clause is concessive, in the fourth and sixth causal.

II. 1. That battle was fought at the time when (**tum cum**) I was at Rome. 2. Though the horsemen were few in number, nevertheless they did not retreat. 3. When the camp had been sufficiently fortified, the enemy returned home. 4. Since the tribes are giving hostages to each other, we shall inform Cæsar. 5. The Gauls and the Germans are very unlike in language and laws.

LESSON LXXI

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

401. Review the word lists in §§ 510, 511.

402. The Gerund. Suppose we had to translate the sentence

By overcoming the Gauls Cæsar won great glory

We can see that *overcoming* here is a verbal noun corresponding to the English infinitive in *-ing*, and that the thought calls for the ablative of means. To translate this by the Latin infinitive would be impossible, because the infinitive is indeclinable and therefore has no ablative case form. Latin, however, has another verbal noun of corresponding meaning, called the **gerund**, declined as a neuter of the second declension in the *genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular*, and thus supplying the cases that the infinitive lacks.¹ Hence, to

¹ Sometimes, however, the infinitive is used as an accusative.

decline in Latin the verbal noun *overcoming*, we should use the infinitive for the nominative and the gerund for the other cases, as follows:

Nom.	superāre	{ <i>overcoming</i> <i>to overcome</i> }	INFINITIVE
Gen.	superandī,	<i>of overcoming</i>	} GERUND
Dat.	superandō,	<i>for overcoming</i>	
Acc.	superandum,	<i>overcoming</i>	
Abl.	superandō,	<i>by overcoming</i>	

Like the infinitive, the gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived. So the sentence given above becomes in Latin

Superandō Gallōs Caesar magnam glōriam reportāvit

403. The gerund¹ is formed by adding **-ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō**, to the present stem, which is shortened or otherwise changed, as shown below:

PARADIGM OF THE GERUND

	CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III		CONJ. IV
<i>Gen.</i>	amandī	monendī	regendī	capiendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō

a. Give the gerund of *cūrō, dēleō, sūmō, iaciō, veniō*.

b. Deponent verbs have the gerund of the active voice (see § 493). Give the gerund of *cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior*.

404. The Gerundive. The gerundive is the name given to the future passive participle (§ 374.*d*) when the participle approaches the meaning of a verbal noun and is translated like a gerund. It is the adjective corresponding to the gerund. For example, to translate *the plan of waging war*, we may use the gerund with its direct object and say **cōnsilium gerendī bellum**; or we may use the gerundive and say **cōnsilium bellī gerendī**, which means, literally, *the plan of the war to be waged*, but which came to have the same force as the gerund with its object, and was even preferred to it.

¹ The gerund is the neuter singular of the future passive participle used as a noun, and has the same formation. (Cf. § 374.*d*.)

405. Compare the following parallel uses of the gerund and gerundive:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
<i>Gen.</i> Spēs faciendī pācem <i>The hope of making peace</i>	Spēs faciendae pācis <i>The hope of making peace</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Locus idōneus pugnandō <i>A place suitable for fighting</i>	Locus idōneus castrīs pōnendīs <i>A place suitable for pitching camp</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Mīsīt equitēs ad īnsequendum <i>He sent horsemen to pursue</i>	Mīsīt equitēs ad īnsequendōs hostīs <i>He sent horsemen to pursue the enemy</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Nārrandō fābulās magister puerīs placuit <i>The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories</i>	Nārrandīs fābulīs magister puerīs placuit <i>The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories</i>

a. We observe

- (1) That the gerund is a noun and the gerundive an adjective.
- (2) That the gerund, being a noun, may stand alone or with an object.
- (3) That the gerundive, being an adjective, is used only in agreement with a noun.

406. RULE. Gerund and Gerundive. 1. *The Gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns.*

2. *The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual.*

407. RULE. Gerund or Gerundive of Purpose. *The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad, or the genitive with causā¹ (=for the sake of), is used to express purpose.*

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Ad audiendum vēnērunt or Audiendī causā vēnērunt <i>They came to hear</i>	Ad urbem videndam vēnērunt or Urbis videndae causā vēnērunt <i>They came to see the city</i>

¹ causā always follows the genitive.

NOTE. These sentences might, of course, be written with the subjunctive of purpose,—*vērunt ut audirent*; *vērunt ut urbem vidērent*. In short expressions, however, the gerund and gerundive of purpose are rather more common.

408. We have learned that the word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive, as, *equus Galbae*, *Galba's horse*. If, now, we wish to express the idea *the horse is Galba's*, Galba remains the possessor, and hence in the genitive as before, but now stands in the predicate, as, *equus est Galbae*. Hence this is called the predicate genitive.

409. RULE. Predicate Genitive. *The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of sum, and is then called the predicate genitive.*

410.**IDIOMS**

alicui negōtium dare, to employ some one (lit. to give business to some one)

novīs rēbus studēre, to be eager for a revolution (lit. to be eager for new things)

reī militāris perītissimus, very skillful in the art of war
sē suaque omnia, themselves and all their possessions

411.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Caesar cum in Galliā bellum gereret, militibus decimae legiōnis maximē fāvit quia reī militāris perītissimī erant. 2. Sociis negōtium dedit reī frūmentāriae cūrandae. 3. Lēgātī nōn solum audiendī causā sed etiam dicendī causā vērunt. 4. Imperātor iussit explōrātōrēs locum idōneum mūniendō reperire. 5. Nūper hae gentēs novīs rēbus studēbant; mox iis persuādēbō ut Caesari sē suaque omnia dēdant. 6. Iubēre est rēginā¹ et pārere est multitudinis.¹ 7. Hōc proeliō factō quīdam ex hostibus ad pācem petendam vērunt. 8. Erant quī arma trādere nōllent. 9. Hostēs tam celeriter prōgressī sunt ut spatium pīla in hostīs iaciendī nōn darētur. 10. Spatium neque arma capiendī² neque auxili petendī² datum est.

¹ Predicate genitive. ² Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?

II. 1. These ornaments ¹belong to Cornelia. 2. Men very skillful in the art of war were sent ²to capture the town. 3. The scouts found a hill suitable for fortifying very near to the river. 4. Soon the cavalry will come ³to seek supplies. 5. The mind of the Gauls is eager for revolution and for undertaking wars. 6. To lead the line of battle ⁴belongs to the general. 7. ⁵Whom shall we employ to look after the grain supply?

LESSON LXXII

THE IRREGULAR VERB *EŌ* · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

412. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of *eŏ*, *go* (§ 499).

a. Notice that *ī-*, the root of *eŏ*, is changed to *e-* before a vowel, excepting in *iēns*, the nominative of the present participle. In the perfect system *-v-* is regularly dropped.

413. Learn the meaning and principal parts of the following compounds of *eŏ* with prepositions:

ad'eŏ, *adī're*, *ad'īī*, *ad'itus*, *go to, visit*, with the accusative
ex'eŏ, *exī're*, *ex'īī*, *ex'itus*, *go forth*, with *ex* or *dē* and the ablative of the place from which

in'eŏ, *inī're*, *in'īī*, *in'itus*, *begin, enter upon*, with the accusative
red'eŏ, *redī're*, *red'īī*, *red'itus*, *return*, with *ad* or *in* and the accusative of the place to which

trāns'eŏ, *trānsī're*, *trāns'īī*, *trāns'itus*, *cross*, with the accusative

414. **Indirect Statements in English.** Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

Direct statements	{	1. The Gauls are brave 2. The Gauls were brave 3. The Gauls will be brave
-------------------	---	---

¹ *belong to* = *are of*. ² Use the gerundive with *ad*. ³ Use the genitive with *causā*. Where should *causā* stand? ⁴ Compare the first sentence.

⁵ Compare the second sentence in the Latin above.

Indirect statements { 1. *He says* that the Gauls *are* brave
 after a verb in { 2. *He says* that the Gauls *were* brave
 the present tense { 3. *He says* that the Gauls *will be* brave

Indirect statements { 1. *He said* that the Gauls *were* brave
 after a verb in { 2. *He said* that the Gauls *had been* brave
 a past tense { 3. *He said* that the Gauls *would be* brave

We see that in English

a. The indirect statement forms a clause introduced by the conjunction *that*.

b. The verb is finite (cf. § 173) and its subject is in the nominative.

c. The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, *He said*.

415. Indirect Statements in Latin. In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be as follows:

DIRECT STATEMENTS	{	1. Gallī sunt fortēs
		2. Gallī erant fortēs
		3. Gallī erunt fortēs

INDIRECT STATEMENTS	{	1. Dīcit or Dīxit Gallōs esse fortīs (<i>He says or He said the Gauls to be brave</i>) ¹
		2. Dīcit or Dīxit Gallōs fuisse fortīs (<i>He says or He said the Gauls to have been brave</i>) ¹
		3. Dīcit or Dīxit Gallōs futūrōs esse fortīs (<i>He says or He said the Gauls to be about to be brave</i>) ¹

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences:

a. There is no conjunction corresponding to *that*.

b. The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.

c. The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.

416. RULE. Indirect Statements. *When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.*

¹ These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.

417. Tenses of the Infinitive. When the sentences in § 415 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, *sunt* became *esse*, *erant* became *fuisse*, and *erunt* became *futūrōs esse*.

418. RULE. Infinitive Tenses in Indirect Statements. *A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.*

NOTE. When translating into Latin an English indirect statement, first decide what tense of the indicative would have been used in the direct form. That will show you what tense of the infinitive to use in the indirect.

419. RULE. Verbs followed by Indirect Statements. *The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving.*

420. Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are :

a. Verbs of saying and telling :

dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, say
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus, deny, say not
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus, announce
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, reply

b. Verbs of knowing :

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, (in the perf.) know
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know

c. Verbs of thinking :

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, think, consider
existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, think, believe
iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, judge, decide
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, reckon, think
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, hope

d. Verbs of perceiving :

audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus, hear
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive
videō, vidēre, vidī, visus, see
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, understand, perceive

Learn such of these verbs as are new to you.

421.

IDIOMS

postrīdiē eius diēi, *on the next day* (lit. *on the next day of that day*)
 initā aestāte, *at the beginning of summer*
 memoriā tenēre, *to remember* (lit. *to hold by memory*)
 per explōrātōrēs cognōscere, *to learn through scouts*

422.

EXERCISES

I. 1. It, imus, ite, ire. 2. Euntī, iisse *or* isse, ibunt, eunt. 3. Eundi, ut eant, ibitis, is. 4. Nē irent, ī, ibant, ierat. ~~5.~~ Cāesar per explōrātōrēs cognōvit Gallōs flūmen trānsisse. 6. Rōmānī audivērunt Helvētiōs initā aestāte dē finibus suis exitūrōs esse. 7. Lēgātī respondērunt nēminem ante Caesarem illam insulam adisse. 8. Principēs Gallōrum dīcunt sē nūllum cōnsilium contrā Caesaris imperium initūrōs esse. 9. Arbitrāmur potentiam rēginae esse maiōrem quam cīvium. 10. Rōmānī negant sē libertātem Gallis ēreptūrōs esse. ~~11.~~ His rēbus cognitīs sēnsimus lēgātōs nōn vēnisse ad pācem petendam. 12. Helvētīi sciunt Rōmānōs priōrēs victōriās memoriā tenēre. 13. Socii cum intellegerent multōs vulnerārī, statuērunt in suōs finis redire. 14. Aliquis nūntiāvit Mārcum cōsulem creātum esse.

II. ~~1.~~ The boy is slow. He says that the boy is, was, (and) will be slow. 2. The horse is, has been, (and) will be strong. He judged that the horse was, had been, (and) would be strong. 3. We think that the army will go forth from the camp at the beginning of summer. 4. The next day we learned through scouts that the enemy's town was ten miles off.¹ 5. The king replied that the ornaments belonged to² the queen.

¹ to be off, to be distant, abesse.

² Latin, were of (§ 409).



TUBA

LESSON LXXIII

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERŌ*
THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

423. Review the word lists in §§ 513, 514.

424. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the verb *ferō*, *bear* (§ 498).

1. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of *ferō*, *bear*:

ad'ferō, *adfer're*, *at'tulī*, *adlā'tus*, *bring to; report*
cōn'ferō, *cōnfer're*, *con'tulī*, *conlā'tus*, *bring together, collect*
dē'ferō, *dēfer're*, *dē'tulī*, *dēlā'tus*, *bring to; report; grant, confer*
in'ferō, *infer're*, *in'tulī*, *inlā'tus*, *bring in, bring against*
re'ferō, *refer're*, *ret'tulī*, *relā'tus*, *bear back; report*

425. The dative is the case of the indirect object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object and are therefore used with the dative (cf. § 153). Transitive verbs take a direct object in the accusative; but sometimes they have an indirect object or dative as well. *The whole question, then, as to whether or not a verb takes the dative, depends upon its capacity for governing an indirect object.* A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form would not take an indirect object, when compounded with certain prepositions, have a meaning which calls for an indirect object. Observe the following sentences:

1. *Haec rēs exercituī magnam calamitātem attulit, this circumstance brought great disaster to the army.*

2. *Germānī Gallīs bellum inferunt, the Germans make war upon the Gauls.*

3. *Hae cōpiae proeliō nōn intererant, these troops did not take part in the battle.*

4. *Equitēs fugientibus hostibus occurrunt, the horsemen meet the fleeing enemy.*

5. *Galba cōpiīs filium praefēcit, Galba put his son in command of the troops.*

In each sentence there is a dative, and in each a verb combined with a preposition. In no case would the simple verb take the dative.

426. RULE. Dative with Compounds. *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

NOTE I. Among such verbs are ¹

ad'ferō, adfer're, at'tulī, adlā'tus, *bring to; report*
 ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fuī, adfutū'rus, *assist; be present*
 dē'ferō, dēfer're, dē'tulī, dēlā'tus, *report; grant, confer*
 dē'sum, dees'se, dē'fuī, —, *be wanting, be lacking*
 in'ferō, infer're, in'tulī, inlā'tus, *bring against, bring upon*
 inter'sum, inter'es'se, inter'fuī, interfutū'rus, *take part in*
 occur'rō, occur'rere, occur'rī, occur'sus, *run against, meet*
 praefi'ciō, praefi'cere, praefē'ci, praefec'tus, *appoint over, place*
in command of
 prae'sum, prae'es'se, prae'fuī, —, *be over, be in command*

427.

IDIOMS

graviter or molestē ferre, *to be annoyed at, to be indignant*
at, followed by the accusative and infinitive
 sē cōnferre ad or in, with the accusative, *to betake one's self to*
 alicui bellum inferre, *to make war upon some one*
 pedem referre, *to retreat (lit. to bear back the foot)*

428.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fer, ferent, ut ferant, ferunt. 2. Ferte, ut ferrent, tulisse, tulerant. 3. Tulimus, ferēns, lātus esse, ferre. Cum nāvigia insulae adpropinquārent, barbarī terrōre commōtī pedem referre cōnātī sunt. 5. Galli molestē ferēbant Rōmānōs agrōs vāstāre. Caesar sociis imperāvit nē finitimis suis bellum inferrent. 7. Explōratōrēs, quī Caesarī occurrērunt, dixerunt exercitum hostium vulneribus dēfessum sēsē in alium locum contulisse. 8. Hostēs sciēbant Rōmānōs frūmentō egēre et hanc rem Caesarī summum periculum adlātūrā esse. 9. Impedimentis in ūnum locum conlātis, aliquī militum flūmen quod nōn longē

¹ But the accusative with ad or in is used with some of these, when the idea of *motion to or against* is strong.

aberat trānsiērunt. 10. Hōs rēx hortātus est ut ōrāculum adirent et
 rēs auditās ad sē referrent. 11. Quem imperātor illi legiōnī praefēcit?
 Pūblius illi legioni praeerat. 12. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā,
 crēbrī ad eum¹ rūmōrēs allerēbantur litterisque quoque certior fiēbat
 Gallōs obsidēs inter sē dare.

II. 1. The Gauls will make war upon Cæsar's allies. 2. We heard
 that the Gauls would make war upon Cæsar's allies. 3. Publius did
 not take part in that battle. 4. We have been informed that Publius
 did not take part in that battle. 5. The man who was in command of
 the cavalry was wounded and began to retreat. 6. Cæsar did not
 place you in command of the cohort to bring² disaster upon the army.

LESSON LXXIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

429. Review the word lists in §§ 517, 518.

430. When we report a statement instead of giving it directly, we have an indirect statement. (Cf. § 414.) So, if we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

DIRECT QUESTION

Who conquered the Gauls?

INDIRECT QUESTION

He asked who conquered the Gauls

a. An indirect question depends, usually as object, upon a verb of asking (as *petō*, *postulō*, *quaerō*, *rogō*) or upon some verb or expression of saying or mental action. (Cf. § 420.)

431. Compare the following direct and indirect questions:

DIRECT

Quis Gallōs vincit?

Who is conquering the Gauls?

INDIRECT

- | | |
|---|--|
| { | a. Rogat quis Gallōs vincat
<i>He asks who is conquering the Gauls</i> |
| | b. Rogāvit quis Gallōs vinceret
<i>He asked who was conquering the Gauls</i> |

¹ Observe that when *adferō* denotes *motion to*, it is not followed by the dative; cf. footnote, p. 182. ² Not the infinitive. (Cf. § 352.)

Ubi est Rōma?

Where is Rome?

a. Rogat ubi sit Rōma

He asks where Rome is

b. Rogāvit ubi esset Rōma

He asked where Rome was

Caesarne Gallōs vīcit?

Did Caesar conquer the Gauls?

a. Rogat num Caesar Gallōs vīcerit

He asks whether Caesar conquered the Gauls

b. Rogāvit num Caesar Gallōs vīcisset

He asked whether Caesar had conquered the Gauls

a. The verb in a direct question is in the indicative mood, but the mood is subjunctive in an indirect question.

b. The tense of the subjunctive follows the rules for tense sequence.

c. Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as introduce direct questions, excepting that *yes-or-no* direct questions (cf. § 210) on becoming indirect are usually introduced by *num*, *whether*.

432. RULE. Indirect Questions. *In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence.*

433.

IDIOMS

dē tertiā vigiliā, *about the third watch*

iniūriās alicui īferre, *to inflict injuries upon some one*

facere verba prō, *with the ablative, to speak in behalf of*
in reliquum tempus, *for the future*

434.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēx rogāvit quid lēgātī postulārent et cūr ad sē vēnissent. 2. Quaesivit quoque num nec recentis iniūriās nec dubiam Rōmānōrum amicitiam memoriā tenērent. 3. Vidētisne quae oppida hostēs oppugnāverint? 4. Nōne scītis cūr Gallī sub montem sēsē contulerint? 5. Audīvimus quās iniūriās tibi Germānī intulissent. 6. Dē tertiā vigiliā imperātor mīsīt hominēs quī cognōscerent quae esset nātūra montis. 7. Prō his ōrātor verba fēcīt et rogāvit cūr cōsulēs nāvis ad plēnum summī perīculi locum mittere vellent. 8. Lēgātis convocātis dēmōstrāvit quid fierī vellet. 9. Nūntius referēbat quid

in Gallorum conciliō dē armis trādendis dictum esset. 10. Moneō nē in reliquum tempus peditēs et equitēs trāns flūmen dūcās.

II. 1. What hill did they seize? I see what hill they seized. 2. Who has inflicted these injuries upon our dependents? 3. They asked who had inflicted those injuries upon their dependents. 4. Whither did you go about the third watch? You know whither I went. 5. At what time did the boys return home? I will ask at what time the boys returned home.

LESSON LXXV

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR END FOR WHICH

435. Review the word lists in §§ 521, 522.

436. Observe the following sentences:

1. Explōrātōrēs locum castrīs dēlēgērunt, *the scouts chose a place for a camp.*

2. Hoc erat magnō impedimentō Gallīs, *this was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls.*

3. Duās legiōnēs praesidiō castrīs reliquit, *he left two legions as (lit. for) a guard to the camp.*

In each of these sentences we find a dative expressing the *purpose or end for which* something is intended or for which it serves. These datives are castrīs, impedimentō, and praesidiō. In the second and third sentences we find a second dative expressing the *person or thing affected* (Gallīs and castrīs). As you notice, these are true datives, covering the relations of *for which* and *to which*. (Cf. § 43.)

437. RULE. Dative of Purpose or End. *The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected.*

438.

IDIOMS

cōnsilium omittere, *to give up a plan*

locum castrīs dēligere, *to choose a place for a camp*

alicui magnō ūsuī esse, *to be of great advantage to some one (lit. for great advantage to some one)*

439.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rogāvit cūr illae cōpiae relictæ essent. Respondērunt illās cōpiās esse praesidiō castris. 2. Caesar misit explorātōrēs ad locum dēligendum castris. 3. Quisque existimāvit ipsum nōmen Caesaris magnō terrōrī barbaris futūrum esse. 4. Primā lūce idem exercitus proelium ācre commisit, sed gravia suōrum vulnera magnæ cūrae imperātōri erant. 5. Rēx respondit amicitiam populi Romāni sibi ōrnamētō et praesidiō debēre esse. 6. Quis praeerat equitātui quem auxiliō Caesarī socii miserant? 7. Aliquibus rēs secundae sunt summae calamitātī et rēs adversae sunt mirō ūsuī. 8. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod equitātus ā dextrō cornū premēbat. 9. Memoria pristinæ virtūtis nōn minus quam metus hostium erat nostris magnō ūsuī. 10. Tam dēnsa erat silva ut prōgredi nōn possent.

II. 1. I advise you ¹to give up the plan ²of making war upon the brave Gauls. 2. Do you know ³where the cavalry has chosen a place for a camp? 3. The fear of the enemy will be of great advantage to you. 4. Caesar left three cohorts as (for) a guard to the baggage. 5. In winter the waves of the lake are so great ⁴that they are (for) a great hindrance to ships. 6. Caesar inflicted severe ⁵punishment on those who burned the public buildings.

LESSON LXXVI

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION

440. Review the word lists in §§ 524, 525.

441. Observe the English sentences

- (1) *A man of great courage*, or (2) *A man with great courage*
 (3) *A forest of tall trees*, or (4) *A forest with tall trees*

Each of these sentences contains a phrase of quality or description. In the first two a man is described; in the last two a forest. The descriptive phrases are introduced by the prepositions *of* and *with*.

¹ Subjunctive of purpose. (Cf. § 366.) ² Express by the genitive of the gerundive. ³ Indirect question. ⁴ A clause of result. ⁵ *gravis*, -e.

In Latin the expression of quality or description is very similar. The prepositions *of* and *with* suggest the genitive and the ablative respectively, and we translate the sentences above

(1) *Vir magnæ virtutis*, or (2) *Vir magnâ virtute*

(3) *Silva altârum arborum*, or (4) *Silva altis arboribus*

There is, however, one important difference between the Latin and the English. In English we may say, for example, *a man of courage*, using the descriptive phrase without an adjective modifier. *In Latin, however, an adjective modifier must always be used*, as above.

a. Latin makes a distinction between the use of the two cases in that *numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive and descriptions of physical characteristics are in the ablative*. Other descriptive phrases may be in either case.

442.

EXAMPLES

1. *Fossa duodecim pedum*, a ditch of twelve feet.

2. *Homō magnis pedibus et parvō capite*, a man with big feet and a small head.

3. *Rēx erat vir summâ audaciâ* or *rēx erat vir summae audaciæ*, the king was a man of the greatest boldness.

443. RULE. Genitive of Description. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective.

444. RULE. Ablative of Description. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective.

445. RULE. Genitive or Ablative of Description. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective.

446.

IDIOMS

Helvêtiis in animō est, the Helvetii intend (lit. it is in mind to the Helvetians)

in mâtirimōnium dare, to give in marriage

nihil posse, to have no power

fossam perdūcere, to construct a ditch (lit. to lead a ditch through)

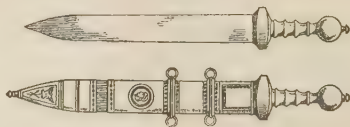
447.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militēs fossam decem pedum per eōrum finis perdūxērunt. 2. Princeps Helvētiōrum, vir summae audāciae, principibus gentium finitimārum sorōrēs in mātirimōnium dedit. 3. Eōrum amicitiam cōnfirmare voluit quō facilius Rōmānis bellum inferret. 4. Germānī et Galli nōn erant eiusdem gentis. 5. Omnēs ferē Germānī erant magnīs corporum vīribus.¹ 6. Galli quī oppidum fortiter dēfendēbant saxa ingentis magnitudinis dē mūrō iaciēbant. 7. Cum Caesar ab explōrātōribus quaereret quī illud oppidum incoherent, explōrātōrēs, respondērunt eōs esse hominēs summā virtūte et magnō cōnsiliō. 8. Moenia vigintī pedum ā sinistrā parte, et ā dextrā parte flūmen magnae altitudinis oppidum dēfendēbant. 9. Cum Caesar in Galliam pervēnisset, erat rūmor Helvētiīs in animō esse iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam facere. 10. Caesar, ut eōs ab finibus Rōmānis prohiberet, mūnitiōnem ²multa milia passuum longam fēcit.

II. 1. Cæsar was a general of much wisdom and great boldness, and very skillful in the art of war. 2. The Germans were of great size, and thought that the Romans had no power. 3. Men of the highest courage were left in the camp as (for) a guard to the baggage. 4. The king's daughter, who was given in marriage to the chief of a neighboring state, was a woman of very beautiful appearance. 5. The soldiers will construct a ditch of nine feet around the camp. 6. A river of great width was between us and the enemy.

¹ From *vis*. (Cf. § 468.) ² Genitives and ablatives of description are adjective phrases. When we use an *adverbial* phrase to tell *how long* or *how high* or *how deep* anything is, we must use the accusative of extent. (Cf. § 336.) For example, in the sentence above *multa milia passuum* is an adverbial phrase (accusative of extent) modifying *longam*. If we should omit *longam* and say *a fortification of many miles*, the genitive of description (an adjective phrase) modifying *mūnitiōnem* would be used, as *mūnitiōnem multōrum milium passuum*.



GLADI

LESSON LXXVII

REVIEW OF AGREEMENT, AND OF THE GENITIVE, DATIVE,
AND ACCUSATIVE

448. There are four agreements:

1. That of the predicate noun or of the appositive with the noun to which it belongs (§§ 76, 81).
2. That of the adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle with its noun (§ 65).
3. That of a verb with its subject (§ 28).
4. That of a relative pronoun with its antecedent (§ 224).

449. The relation expressed by the **genitive** is, in general, denoted in English by the preposition *of*. It is used to express

1. Possession { *a.* As attributive (§ 38).
 b. In the predicate (§ 409).
2. The whole of which a part is taken (partitive genitive) (§ 331).
3. Quality or description (§§ 443, 445).

450. The relation expressed by the **dative** is, in general, denoted in English by the prepositions *to* or *for* when they do not imply motion through space. It is used to express

1. The indirect object { *a.* With intransitive verbs and with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object in the accusative (§ 45).
 b. With special intransitive verbs (§ 154).
 c. With verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super** (§ 426).
2. The object to which the quality of an adjective is directed (§ 143).
3. The purpose, or end for which, often with a second dative denoting the person or thing affected (§ 437).

451. The **accusative** case corresponds, in general, to the English objective. It is used to express

1. The direct object of a transitive verb (§ 37).
2. The predicate accusative together with the direct object after verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing*, and the like (§ 392).
3. The subject of the infinitive (§ 214).
4. The object of prepositions that do not govern the ablative (§ 340).
5. The duration of time and the extent of space (§ 336).
6. The place to which (§§ 263, 266).

452.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Militēs quōs vidimus dixerunt imperium bellī esse Caesaris imperatoris. 2. Helvētīi statuērunt quam¹ maximum numerum equōrum et carrōrum cōgere. 3. Tōtius Galliae Helvētīi plūrimum valuērunt. 4. Multās hōrās ācriter pugnātum est neque quisquam poterat vidēre hostem fugientem. 5. Virī summae virtūtis hostis decem milia passuum insecūtī sunt. 6. Caesar populō Rōmānō persuāsit ut sē cōnsulem creāret. 7. Victōria exercitūs erat semper imperatōri grātissima. 8. Trīdium iter fēcērunt et Genāvam, in oppidum² hostium, pervēnērunt. 9. Caesar audīvīt Germānōs bellum Gallis intulisse. 10. Magnō ūsuī militibus Caesaris erat quod priōribus proeliis sēsē exercuerant.

II. 1. One³ of the king's sons and many of his men were captured. 2. There was no one who wished⁴ to appoint her queen. 3. The grain supply was always a care (for a care) to Cæsar, the general. 4. I think that the camp is ten miles distant. 5. We marched for three hours through a very dense forest. 6. The plan⁵ of making war upon the allies was not pleasing to the king. 7. When he came to the hill he fortified it⁶ by a twelve-foot wall.

¹ What is the force of **quam** with superlatives? ² **urbs** or **oppidum**, appositive to a name of a town, takes a preposition. ³ What construction is used with numerals in preference to the partitive genitive? ⁴ What mood? (Cf. § 390.) ⁵ Use the gerund or gerundive. ⁶ Latin, *by a wall of twelve feet*.

LESSON LXXVIII

REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

453. The relations of the ablative are, in general, expressed in English by the prepositions *with* (or *by*), *from* (or *by*), and *in* (or *at*). The constructions growing out of these meanings are

I. Ablative rendered *with* (or *by*):

1. Cause (§ 102)
2. Means (§ 103)
3. Accompaniment (§ 104)
4. Manner (§ 105)
5. Measure of difference (§ 317)
6. With a participle (ablative absolute) (§ 381)
7. Description or quality (§§ 444, 445)
8. Specification (§ 398)

II. Ablative rendered *from* (or *by*):

1. Place from which (§§ 179, 264)
2. Ablative of separation (§ 180)
3. Personal agent with a passive verb (§ 181)
4. Comparison without **quam** (§ 309)

III. Ablative rendered *in* (or *at*):

1. Place at or in which (§§ 265, 266)
2. Time when or within which (§ 275)

454.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Gallī locīs superiōribus occupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. 2. Omnēs oppidānī ex oppidō ēgressī salūtem fugā petere incōpērunt. 3. Caesar docet sē militum vitam suā salūte habēre multō cārīorem. 4. Cum celerius omnium opīniōne pervēnisset, hostēs ad eum obsidēs misērunt. 5. Vicus in valle positus montibus altissimis undique continētur. 6. Plūrimum inter Gallōs haec gēns et virtūte et hominum numerō valēbat. 7. Secundā vigiliā nullō certō ōrdine neque imperiō ē castris ēgressī sunt. 8. Duābus legiōnibus Genāvae relictis,

proximō diē cum reliquīs domum profectus est. 9. Erant itinera duo quibus itineribus Helvētīi domō exīre possent. 10. Rēx erat summā audāciā et magnā apud populum potentiā. 11. Galli timōre servitūtis commōtī bellum parābant. 12. Caesar monet lēgātōs ut contineant milītēs, nē studiō pugnandi aut spē praedae longius¹ prōgrediantur. 13. Bellum ācerrimum ā Caesare in Gallōs gestum est.

II. 1. The lieutenant after having seized the mountain restrained his (men) from battle. 2. All the Gauls differ from each other in laws. 3. This tribe is much braver than the rest. 4. This road is ²ten miles shorter than that. 5. In summer Cæsar carried on war in Gaul, in winter he returned to Italy. 6. At midnight the general set out from the camp with three legions. 7. I fear that you cannot protect³ yourself from these enemies. 8. ⁴After this battle was finished peace was made by all the Gauls.

LESSON LXXIX

REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

455. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns (§§ 402, 406. 1).

456. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual (§ 406. 2).

457. The infinitive is used:

I. As in English.

a. As subject or predicate nominative (§ 216).

b. To complete the predicate with verbs of incomplete predication (complementary infinitive) (§ 215).

c. As object with subject accusative after verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like (§ 213).

¹ *longius, too far.* (Cf. § 305.)

² Latin, *by ten thousands of paces.*

³ *dēfendere.*

⁴ Ablative absolute.

II. In the principal sentence of an indirect statement after verbs of *saying* and *mental action*. The subject is in the accusative (§§ 416, 418, 419).

458. The subjunctive is used:

1. To denote purpose (§§ 349, 366, 372).
2. To denote consequence or result (§§ 385, 386).
3. In relative clauses of characteristic or description (§ 390).
4. In **cum** clauses of time, cause, and concession (§ 396).
5. In indirect questions (§ 432).

459.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar, cum pervēnisset, milītēs hortābātur rē cōsiliū oppidi capiendī omitterent. 2. Rēx, castris prope oppidum positis, misit explorātōrēs quī cognōscerent ubi exercitus Rōmānus esset. 3. Nēmō relinquēbātur quī arma ferre posset. 4. Nūntiī vidērunt ingentem armōrum multitudīnem dē mūrō in fossam iactam esse. 5. Dux suōs trānsire flūmen iussit. Trānsire autem hoc flūmen erat difficillimum. 6. Rōmānī cum hanc calamitātem molestē ferrent, tamen terga vertere recūsāverunt. 7. Hōc rūmōre auditō, tantus terror omnium animōs occupāvit ut nē fortissimī quidem proelium committere vellent. 8. Erant quī putārent tempus anni idōneum nōn esse itinerī faciendō. 9. Tam ācriter ab utrāque parte pugnābātur ut multa milia hominum occiderentur. 10. Quid timēs? Timeō nē Rōmānis in animō sit tōtam Galliam superāre et nōbīs iniūriās inferre.

II. 1. Do you not see who is standing on the wall? 2. We hear that the plan of taking the town has been given up. 3. Since the Germans thought that the Romans could not cross the Rhine, Cæsar ordered a bridge to be made. 4. When the bridge was finished, the savages were so terrified that they hid themselves. 5. They feared that Cæsar would pursue them. 6. Cæsar ¹asked the traders what the size of the island was. 7. The traders advised him not ²to cross the sea. 8. He sent scouts ³to choose a place for a camp.

¹ quaerere ab.

² Not infinitive.

³ Use the gerundive with ad.

READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS

How to Translate. You have already had considerable practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings of the words. If these are neglected, no skill can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties remain. Observe the following suggestions:

1. Read the Latin sentence through to the end, noting endings of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.

2. Read it again and see if any of the words you know are nominatives or accusatives. This will often give you what may be called the backbone of the sentence; that is, subject, verb, and object.

3. Look up the words you do not know, and determine their use in the sentence from their endings.

4. If you cannot yet translate the sentence, put down the English meanings of all the words *in the same order as the Latin words*. You will then generally see through the meaning of the sentence.

5. Be careful to

- a. Translate adjectives with the nouns to which they belong.

- b. Translate together prepositions and the nouns which they govern.

- c. Translate adverbs with the words that they modify.

- d. *Make sense.* If you do not make sense, you have made a mistake.

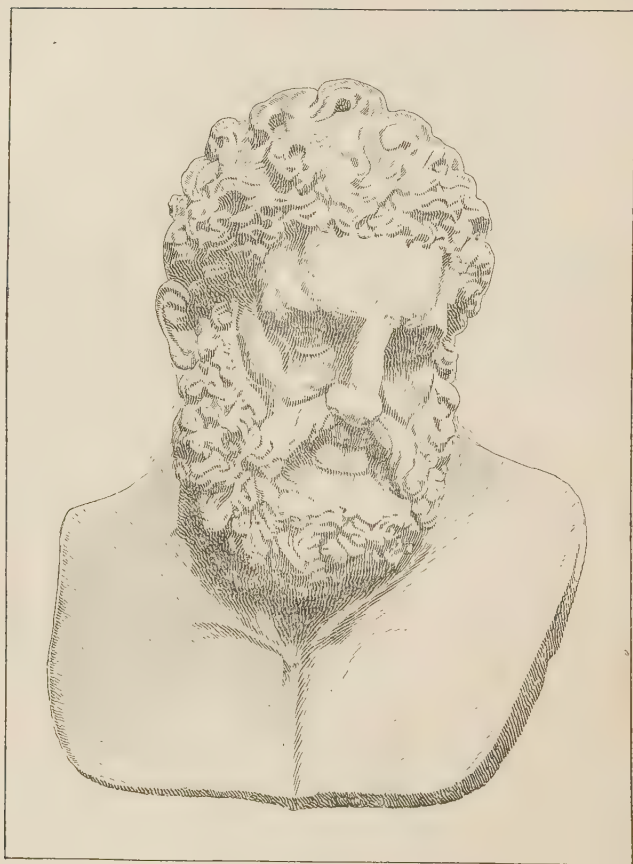
One mistake will spoil a whole sentence.

6. When the sentence is correctly translated, read the Latin over again, and try to understand it as Latin, without thinking of the English translation.

The Parts of a Sentence. You will now meet somewhat longer sentences than you have had before. To assist in translating them, remember, first of all, that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells us something, asks a question, or gives a command. Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive, will have a direct object.

However long a sentence is, you will usually be able to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate complement without any difficulty. These will give you the leading thought, and they must never be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence. The chief difficulty in translating arises from the fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and phrases. For example, in the sentence *The idle boy does not study*, the word *idle* is an adjective. In *The boy wasting his time does not study*, the words *wasting his time* form an adjective phrase modifying *boy*. In the sentence *The boy who wastes his time does not study*, the words *who wastes his time* form an adjective clause modifying *boy*, and the sentence is complex. These sentences would show the same structure in Latin.

In translating, it is important to keep the parts of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and not let them become confused with the principal sentence. To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and the principal sentence is of the first importance, and is not difficult if you remember that a clause regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause and that this word usually stands first. These words join clauses to the words they depend on, and are called *subordinate conjunctions*. They are not very numerous, and you will soon learn to recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents for such words as *when, while, since, because, if, before, after, though, in order that, that*, etc. Form the habit of memorizing the Latin subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses which they introduce.



HERCULES

THE LABORS OF HERCULES

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyæ. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband's love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband's garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.



HERCULES ET SERPENTES

LIII.¹ THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

¹³⁴Di² grave supplicium sūmunt dē malis, sed ii quī lēgibus³ deōrum pārent, etiam post mortem cūrantur. Illa vita dis² erat grātissima quae hominibus miseris ūtilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiōrum summum erat immortalitās. Illud praemium Herculi datum est.

Herculis pater fuit Iuppiter, māter Alcmena, et omnium hominum 5 validissimus fuisse dīcitur. Sed Iūnō, rēgina deōrum, eum, adhūc

¹ This number refers to the lesson after which the selection may be read.

² Di and dis are from deus. Cf. § 468.

³ lēgibus, § 501. 14.

infantem, interficere studēbat; nam ei¹ et² Herculēs et Alcmēna erant invisi. Itaque misit duās serpentis, utramque saevissimam, quae mediā nocte domum³ Alcmēnae vērunt. Ibi Herculēs, cum fratre suō, nōn in lectulō sed in scūtō ingenti dormiēbat. Iam audācēs serpentēs
 5 adpropinquāverant, iam scūtum movēbant. Tum frāter, terrōre commōtus, magnā vōce mātrem vocāvit, sed Herculēs ipse, fortior quam frāter, statim ingentis serpentis manibus suis rapuit et interfēcit.

LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYÆ

Herculēs ā puerō⁴ corpus suum gravissimis et difficillimis labōribus exercēbat et hōc modō virēs⁵ suās cōfirmāvit. Iam adulēscēns
 10 Thēbīs⁶ habitābat. Ibi Creōn quidam erat rēx. Minyae, gēns validdissima, erant finitimī Thēbānis, et, quia ōlim Thēbānōs vicerant, quotannis lēgātōs mittēbant et vectigal postulābant. Herculēs autem cōstituit cīvis suōs hōc vectigālī liberāre et dixit rēgī, "Dā mihi exercitum tuum et ego hōs superbōs hostis superābō." Hanc con-
 15 diciōnem rēx nōn recūsāvit, et Herculēs nūntiōs in omnīs partis dimisit et cōpiās coēgit.⁷ Tum tempore opportunissimō proelium cum Minyis commisit. Diū pugnātum est, sed dēnique illi impetum Thēbānōrum sustinēre nōn potuerunt et terga vertērunt fugamque cēperunt.

HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION

Post hoc proelium Creōn rēx, tantā victōriā laetus, filiam suam
 20 Herculi in mātrimonium dedit. Thēbīs Herculēs cum uxōre suā diū vivēbat et ab omnibus magnopere amābatur; sed post multōs annōs subitō⁸ in furōrem incidit et ipse suā manū liberōs suōs interfēcit. Post breve tempus⁹ ad sānitātem reductus tantum scelus expiāre cupiēbat et cōstituit ad ōrāculum Delphicum iter facere. Hoc autem
 25 ōrāculum erat omnium clārissimum. Ibi sedēbat fēmina quaedam quae Pŷthia appellābatur. Ea cōsiliū dabat iīs qui ad ōrāculum veniēbant.

¹ ei, *to her*, referring to Juno. ² et . . . et, *both . . . and*. ³ domum, § 501. 20. ⁴ ā puerō, *from boyhood*. ⁵ virēs, *from vis*. Cf. § 468. ⁶ Thēbīs, § 501. 36. I. ⁷ coēgit, *from cōgō*. ⁸ in furōrem incidit, *went mad*. ⁹ ad sānitātem reductus, *lit. led back to sanity*. What in good English?

IV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS¹
HE STRANGLES THE NEMEAN LION

Itaque Herculēs Pŷthiae tōtam rem dēmōnstrāvit nec scelus suum abdidit. Ubi iam Herculēs finem fēcit, Pŷthia iussit eum ad urbem Tīrynthā² discēdere et ibi rēgī Eurystheō sēsē committere. Quae³ ubi audivit, Herculēs ad illam urbem statim contendit et Eurystheō sē in servitūtem trādidit et dixit, "Quid primum, Ō rēx, mē facere iubēs?" 5



HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT

Eurystheus, quī perterrēbātur vī et corpore ingentī Herculis et eum occidī⁴ studēbat, ita respondit: "Audi, Herculēs! Multa mīra⁵ nārrantur dē leōne saevissimō quī hōc tempore in valle Nemaēā omnia vāstat. Iubeō tē, virōrum omnium fortissimum, illō mōnstrō hominēs libērāre." Haec verba Herculi maximē placuērunt. "Properābō," inquit, 10

¹ *Eu-rys'theus* (pronounced *U-ris'thūs*) was king of *Tī'ryns*, a Grecian city, whose foundation goes back to prehistoric times. ² *Tīrynthā*, the acc. case of *Tīryns*, a Greek noun. ³ *Quae*, obj. of *audivit*. It is placed first to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. This is called a connecting relative. ⁴ *occidī*, pres. pass. infin. ⁵ *mīra*, *marvelous things*, the adj. being used as a noun. Cf. *omnia*, in the next line.

"et pārēbō imperiō¹ tuō." Tum in silvās in quibus leō habitābat statim iter fēcit. Mox feram vidit et plūris impetūs fēcit; frūstrā tamen, quod neque sagittis neque ūllō aliō tēlō mōnstrum vulnerāre potuit. Dēnique Herculēs saevum leōnem suis ingentibus bracchiis
 5 rapuit et faucis eius omnibus vīribus compressit. Hōc modō brevi tempore eum interfēcit. Tum corpus leōnis ad oppidum in umeris reportāvit et pellem postea prō² veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis ingentis accēpērunt, erant laetissimi et Herculem laudābant verbis amplissimis.

LVI. SLAYING THE LERNEAN HYDRA

10 Deinde Herculēs ab Eurystheō iussus est Hydram occidere. Itaque cum amicō Iolāō³ contendit ad palūdem Lernaem ubi Hydra incolēbat. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat serpēns ingēns quae novem capita habēbat. Mox is mōnstrum repperit et summō⁴ cum periculō collum eius sinistrā manū rapuit et tenuit. Tum dextrā manū capita novem
 15 abscīdere incēpit, sed frūstrā labōrābat, quod quotiēns hoc fēcērat totiēns alia nova capita vidēbat. Quod⁵ ubi vidit, statuit capita igni cremāre. Hōc modō octō capita dēlēvit, sed extrēmum caput vulnerārī nōn potuit, quod erat immortāle. Itaque illud sub ingenti saxō Herculēs posuit et ita victōriam reportāvit.

LVII. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

20 Postquam Eurystheō mors Hydrae nūtiāta est, summus terror animū eius occupāvit. Itaque iussit Herculem capere et ad sē reportāre cervum quendam; nam minimē cupīvit tantum virum in rēgnō suō tenēre. Hic autem cervus dicēbātur aurea cornua et pedēs multō⁶ celeriorēs ventō⁷ habēre. Primum Herculēs vestigia animālis petivit,
 25 deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, omnibus vīribus currere incēpit. Per plūrimōs diēs contendit nec noctū cessāvit. Dēnique postquam per

¹ imperiō, § 501. 14. ² prō, *for, instead of*. ³ Iolāō, abl. of *I-o-lā'us*, the hero's best friend. ⁴ Note the emphatic position of this adjective. ⁵ Quod ubi, *when he saw this*, another instance of the connecting relative. Cf. p. 199, l. 3.

⁶ multō, § 501. 27. ⁷ ventō, § 501. 34.

tōtum annum cucurrerat — ita dicitur — cervum iam dēfessum cēpit et ad Eurystheum portāvit.

Tum vērō iussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere quī illō tempore agrōs Erymanthios vāstābat et hominēs illius loci magnopere perterrēbat. Herculēs laetē negōtium suscepit et in Arcadiam celeriter sē 5 recēpit. Ibi mox aprum repperit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculem vidit, statim quam¹ celerrimē fūgit et metū perterritus in fossam altam sēsē abdidit. Herculēs tamen summā cum difficultāte eum extrāxit, nec aper ullō modō sēsē liberāre potuit, et vivus ad Eurystheum portātus est. 10

LVIII. HERCULES CLEANS THE AUGEAN STABLES AND KILLS THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS

Deinde Eurystheus Herculi hunc labōrem multō graviōrem imperāvit. Augēas² quidam, quī illo tempore rēgnū Ēlīdis³ obtinēbat, tria milia boum⁴ habēbat. Hi ⁵ingenti stabulō continēbantur. Hoc stabulum, quod per trigintā annōs nōn pūrgātum erat, Herculēs intrā spatium ūnius diei pūrgāre iussus est. Ille negōtium alacriter suscepit, et pri- 15 mum labōre gravissimō maximam fossam fōdit per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad murum stabuli dūxit. Tum partem parvam mūri delēvit et aquam in stabulum immisit. Hōc modō finem operis fēcit ūnō diē facillimē. •

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcit; nam 20 Eurystheus iusserat eum avis Stymphālīdēs occidere. Hae avēs rōstra ferrea habēbant et hominēs miserōs dēvorābant. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vidit in quō avēs incolēbant. Nullō tamen modō Herculēs avibus adpropinquāre potuit; lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē limō cōstitit.⁶ Dēnique autem avēs ⁷dē aliquā causā perterritae in 25 aurās volāvērunt et magna pars earum sagittīs Herculis occisa est.

¹ quam. What is the force of quam with a superlative? ² Augēas, pronounced in English *Aw jé'as*. ³ Ēlīdis, gen. case of Ēlis, a district of Greece. ⁴ boum, gen. plur. of bōs. For construction see § 501.11. ⁵ ingenti stabulō, abl. of means, but in our idiom we should say in a huge stable. ⁶ cōstitit, from cōnstō. ⁷ dē aliquā causā perterritae, frightened for some reason.

LIX. HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND
CARRIES HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS

Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portāre vīvum ex insulā Crētā taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit—nam ventus erat idōneus—atque statim solvit. Postquam triduum nāvigāvit, incolumis insulae adpropinquāvit. Deinde, postquam omnia
5 parāta sunt, contendit ad eam regiōnem quam taurus vexābat. Mox taurum vidit ac sine ūllō metū cornua eius corripuit. Tum ingentī labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit atque cum hāc praedā ex insulā discēssit.



HERCULES ET TAURUS

THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOMEDES

Postquam ex insulā Crētā domum pervēnit, Herculēs ab Eurystheō
10 in Thrāciam missus est. Ibi Diomēdēs quīdam, vir saevissimus, rēgnū obtinēbat et omnis ā finibus suis prohibēbat. Herculēs iussus erat equōs Diomēdis rapere et ad Eurystheum dūcere. Hī autem equī hominēs miserrimōs dēvorābant dē quibus rēx supplicium sūmere cupiēbat. Herculēs ubi pervēnit, primum equōs ā rēge postulāvit, sed
15 rēx eōs dēdere recūsāvit. Deinde ille irā commōtus rēgem occidit et corpus eius equīs trādidit. Itaque is quī antea multōs necāverat, ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus est. Et equī, nūper saevissima animālia, postquam dominī suī corpus dēvorāvērunt, mānsuētī erant.

LX. THE BELT OF HIPPOLYTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS

Gēns Amāzonum¹ dicitur² omnīnō ex mulieribus fuisse. Hae cum virīs proelium committere nōn verēbantur. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit pulcherrimum. Hunc balteum possidēre filia Eurystheī vehementer cupiēbat. Itaque Eurystheus iussit Herculem impetum in Amāzonēs facere. Ille multis cum cōpiis nāvem cōn- 5 scendit et paucīs diēbus in Amāzonum finis pervēnit, ac balteum postulāvit. Eum trādere ipsa Hippolytē quidem cupīvit; reliquīs tamen Amāzonibus³ persuādēre nōn potuit. Postrīdiē Herculēs proelium commisit. Multās hōrās utrimque quam fortissimē pugnātum est. Dēnique tamen mulierēs terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt. 10 Multae autem captae sunt, in quō numerō erat ipsa Hippolytē. Herculēs postquam balteum accēpit, omnibus captivīs libertātem dedit.

THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CERBERUS

Iamque ūnus modo ē duodecim labōribus relinquiēbātur sed inter omnis hic erat difficillimus. Iussus est enim canem Cerberum⁴ ex 15 Orcō in lūcem trahere. Ex Orcō autem nēmō antea reverterat. Praeterea Cerberus erat mōnstrum maximē horribile et tria capita habēbat. Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, statim profectus est et in Orcum dēscendit. Ibi vērō nōn sine summō periculō Cerberum manibus rapuit et ingentī cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit.

Sic duodecim labōrēs illi⁵ intra duodecim annōs cōfecti sunt. Dē- 20 mum post longam vitam Herculēs ā deīs receptus est et Iuppiter filiō suō dedit immortalitatem.



HERCULES ET CERBERUS

¹ A fabled tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor. ² omnīnō, etc., to have consisted entirely of women. ³ Amāzonibus, § 501. 14.

⁴ The dog Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode of the dead. ⁵ illi, those famous.

P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY¹

LXI. PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPEII

P. Cornēlius Lentulus,² adulēscēns Rōmānus, amplissimā familiā³ nātus est; nam pater eius, Mārcus, erat dux peritissimus, cuius virtūte⁴ et cōsiliō multae victōriae reportātae erant; atque māter eius, Iūlia, ā clārissimis maiōribus orta est. Nōn vērō in urbe sed rūri⁵ Pūblius
5 nātus est, et cum māt্রে habitābat in villā quae in maris lītore et sub rādicibus magnī montis sita erat. Mōns autem erat Vesuvius et parva



PUERI ROMANI

urbs Pompēiī octō milia⁶ passuum⁷ aberat. In Italiā antiquā erant plūrimae quidem villae et pulchrae, sed inter hās omnīs nūlla erat pulchrior quam villa Mārci Iūliaeque. Frōns villae mūrō ā maris fluctibus
10 mūniēbātur. Hinc mare et litora et insulae longē lātēque cōspici⁸ ac saepe nāvēs longae et onerāriae poterant. Ā tergō et ab utrōque latere agrī ferācissimī patēbant. Undique erat magna variōrum flōrum cōpia et multa ingentium arborum genera quae aestāte⁹ umbram

¹ This story is fiction with certain historical facts in Cæsar's career as a setting. However, the events chronicled might have happened, and no doubt did happen to many a Roman youth. ² A Roman had three names, as,

Pūblius (given name), Cornēlius (name of the *gēns* or clan), Lentulus (family name). ³ Abl. of source, which is akin to the abl. of separation (§ 501. 32).

⁴ virtūte, § 501. 24. ⁵ rūri, § 501. 36. 1. ⁶ milia, § 501. 21. ⁷ passuum, § 501. 11. ⁸ cōspici, infin. with poterant, § 215. Consult the map of Italy for the approximate location of the villa. ⁹ aestāte, § 501. 35.

dēfessīs agricolīs grātissimam adferēbant. Praetereā erant¹ in agrīs stabulisque multa animālium genera, nōn solum equī et bovēs sed etiam rārae avēs. Etiam erat¹ magna piscīna plēna piscium; nam Rōmānī piscīs diligenter colēbant.

LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

Huius villae Dāvus, servus Mārci, est vilicus² et cum Lesbiā uxōre 5 omnia cūrat. Vilicus et uxor in casā humilī, mediīs in agrīs sitā, habitant. Ā primā lūce ūsque ad vesperum sē³ gravibus labōribus exercent ut omnīs rēs bene gerant.⁴ Plūrima enim sunt officia Dāvī et Lesbiae. Vilicus servōs regit nē tardī sint⁴; mittit aliōs quī agrōs arent,⁴ aliōs quī hortōs inrigent,⁴ et opera in⁵ tōtum 10 diem impōnit. Lesbia autē omnibus vestimenta parat, cibum coquit, pānem facit.

Nōn longē ab hōrum casā et in summō colle situm surgēbat domici- 15 lium ipsius dominī dominaeque amplissimum. Ibi plūrīs annōs⁶ Pūblius cum māt্রে vitam fēlicem agēbat; nam pater eius, Mārcus, in terrīs longinquīs gravia reī publicae bella gerēbat nec domum⁷ revertī poterat. Neque pucrō quidem molestum est rūrī⁸ 20 vivere. Eum multae rēs dēlectant. Magnopere amat silvās, agrōs, equōs, bovēs, gallinās, avīs, reliquaue animālia. Saepe plūrīs hōrās⁹ ad mare sedet quō¹⁰ melius fluctūs et nāvis spectet. Nec omnīnō sine comitibus erat, quod Lȳdia, Dāvī filia, quae erat eiusdem aetātis, 25 cum eō adhūc infante lūdēbat, inter quōs cum annis amicitia crēscēbat. Lȳdia nūllum alium ducem dēligēbat et Pūblius ab puellae latere rārō



CASA ROMANA

¹ How are the forms of *sum* translated when they precede the subject?

² The *vilicus* was a slave who acted as overseer of a farm. He directed the farming operations and the sale of the produce. ³ *sē*, reflexive pron., object of *exercent*.

⁴ For the construction, see § 501. 40. ⁵ *in*, *for*. ⁶ *annōs*, § 501. 21. ⁷ *domum*, § 501. 20. ⁸ *rūrī*, § 501. 36. 1. ⁹ *hōrās*, cf. *annōs*, line 17.

¹⁰ *quō* . . . *spectet*, §§ 349, 350.

discēdēbat. Itaque sub clārō Italiae sōle Pūblius et Lȳdia, amīcī fidē-
lissimī, per campōs collisque cotīdiē vagābantur. Modo in silvā finitimā
lūdēbant ubi Pūblius sagittīs¹ celeribus avīs dēiciēbat et Lȳdia corōnis
variōrum flōrum comās suās ōrnābat; modo aquam et cibum portābant
5 ad Dāvum servōsque dēfessōs quī agrōs colēbant; modo in casā parvā
aut hōrās laetās in lūdō cōsūmēbant aut auxilium dabant Lesbiae,
quae cibum virō et servīs parābat vel aliās rēs domesticās agēbat.

LXIII. MARCUS LENTULUS, THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS,
IS SHIPWRECKED · JULIA RECEIVES A
LETTER FROM HIM

Iam Pūblius² decem annōs habēbat cum M. Cornēlius Lentulus, pater
eius, quī quinque annōs³ grave bellum in Asiā gerēbat, nōn sine glōriā
10 domum⁴ revertēbātur. Namque multa secunda proelia fēcērat, maximās
hostium cōpiās dēlēverat, multās urbīs populō⁵ Rōmānō inimicās cēperat.
Primum nūntius pervēnit quī ā Lentulō⁶ missus erat⁷ ut profectiōnem
suam nūntiāret. Deinde plūris diēs⁸ redditum virī optimī māter filiusque
exspectābant et animīs⁹ sollicitīs deōs immortālīs frūstrā colēbant. Tum
15 dēmum hās litterās summō cum gaudiō accēpērunt :

¹⁰ " Mārcus Iūliae suae salūtem dicit. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō.
Ex Graeciā, quō¹¹ praeter spem et opīniōnem hodiē pervēnī, hās litterās
ad tē scribō. Namque nāvis nostra frācta est; nōs autem —¹² dis est
grātia — incolumēs sumus. Ex Asiae¹³ portū nāvem lēnī ventō solvi-
20 mus. Postquam¹⁴ altum mare tenuimus¹⁵ nec iam ūllae terrae appāru-
ērunt, caelum undique et undique fluctūs, subitō magna tempestās
coorta est et nāvem vehementissimē adflixit. Ventis fluctibusque

¹ sagittīs, § 501. 24. ² *was ten years old.* ³ annōs, § 501. 21. ⁴ domum, § 501. 20. ⁵ populō, dat. with inimicās, cf. § 501. 16. ⁶ Lentulō, § 501. 33.
⁷ ut . . . nūntiāret, § 501. 40. ⁸ diēs, cf. annōs, l. 9. ⁹ animīs, abl. of manner.
Do you see one in line 15? ¹⁰ This is the usual form for the beginning of a Latin letter. First we have the greeting, and then the expression *Sī valēs*, etc. The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing, if not previously mentioned in the letter. ¹¹ quō, *where.* ¹² *dis est grātia*, *thank God*, in our idiom. ¹³ Asia refers to the Roman province of that name in Asia Minor. ¹⁴ *altum mare tenuimus*, *we were well out to sea.* ¹⁵ *nec iam*, *and no longer.*

adflictātī¹ nec sōlem discernere nec cursum tenēre poterāmus et omnia praesentem mortem intentābant. Trīs diēs² et trīs noctīs² sine rēmīs vēlisque agimur. Quārtō diē³ primum terra vīsa est et violenter in saxa, quae nōn longē ā litore aberant, dēiectī sumus. Tum vērō maiōra pericula timēbāmus; sed nauta quīdam, vir fortissimus, 5 ex nāve in fluctūs irātōs dēsiliuit⁴ ut fūnem ad litus portāret; quam rem summō labōre vix effēcīt. Ita omnēs servātī sumus. Grātiās igitur et honōrem Neptūnō dēbēmus, quī deus nōs ē periculō ēripuit. Nunc Athēnīs⁵ sum, quō cōnfūgī ut mihi paucās hōrās ad quiētem darem.⁶ Quam primum autem aliam nāvem condūcam ut iter ad 10 Italiam reliquum cōnficiam et domum⁷ ad meōs cārōs revertar. Salūtā nostrum Pūblium amīcissimē et valētūdinem tuam cūrā diligenter. ⁸Kalendis Mārtiis."

LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME · PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII
WITH HIS FATHER

Post paucōs diēs nāvis M. Cornēli Lentulī portum Misēnī⁹ petiit, quī portus nōn longē ā Pompēiīs situs est; quō in portū classis Rōmāna 15 pōnēbātur et ad pugnās nāvalis ōrnābātur. Ibi nāvēs omnium generum cōspici poterant. Iamque incēdibili celeritātē nāvis longa quā Lentulus vehēbātur litori adpropinquāvit; nam nōn solum ventō sed etiam rēmīs impellēbātur. In altā puppe stābat gubernātor et nōn procul aliquī militēs Rōmānī cum armīs splendidis, inter quōs clārissimus erat 20 Lentulus. Deinde servī rēmīs contendere cessāvērunt¹⁰; nautae vēlum contrāxērunt et ancorās iēcērunt. Lentulus statim ē nāvī ēgressus est et ¹¹ad villam suam properāvit. Eum Iūlia, Pūblius, tōtaque familiā excēpērunt. ¹²Quī complexūs, quanta gaudia fuērunt!

¹³Postrīdiē eius diēi Lentulus filiō suo dixit, "Venī, mī Pūbli, mēcum. 25

¹ adflictātī, perf. passive part. *tossed about*. ² What construction? ³ diē, § 501. 35. ⁴ ut . . . portāret, § 501. 40. ⁵ Athēnīs, § 501. 36. 1. ⁶ darem, cf. portāret, l. 6. ⁷ Why not ad domum? ⁸ Kalendis Mārtiis, *the Calends or first of March*; abl. of time, giving the date of the letter. ⁹ Misenum had an excellent harbor, and under the emperor Augustus became the chief naval station of the Roman fleet. See map of Italy. ¹⁰ Why is the infinitive used with cessāvērunt? ¹¹ See Plate I, Frontispiece. ¹² Observe that these words are exclamatory. ¹³ Postrīdiē eius diēi, *on the next day*.

Pompēiōs iter hodiē faciam. Māter tua suādet¹ ut frūctūs et cibāria enam. Namque plūris amīcōs ad cēnam vocāvimus et multis rēbus² egēmus. Ea hortātur ut quam primum proficiscāmur.” “Libenter, mī pater,” inquit Pūblius. “Tēcum esse mihi semper est grātum; nec Pompēiōs umquam vidī. Sine morā proficisci parātus sum.”
 5 Tum celeriter currum cōnscendērunt et ad urbis mūrōs vectī sunt. Stabiānā portā³ urbem ingressī sunt. Pūblius strātās viās mirātur et saxa altiōra quae in mediō disposita erant et altās orbitās quās rotae inter haec saxa fēcerant. Etiam strepitum mirātur, multitudinem, car-
 10 rōs, fontis, domōs, tabernās, forum⁴ cum statuīs, templīs, reliquisque aedificiīs publicīs.

LXV. A DAY AT POMPEII

Apud forum ē currū dēscendērunt et Lentulus dixit, “Hic sunt multa tabernārum genera, mī Pūbli. Ecce, trāns viam est popīna!
 5 Hoc genus tabernārum cibāria vēndit. Frūctūs quoque ante iānuam stant. Ibi cibāria mea enam.” “Optimē,” respondit Pūblius. “At ubi, mī pater, crūstula emere possumus? Namque māter nōbīs imperāvit⁶ ut haec quoque parārēmus. Timeō ut⁷ ista popīna vēndat crūstula.” “Bene dīcis,” inquit Lentulus. “At nōnne vidēs illum fontem ā dextrā ubi aqua per leōnis caput fluit? In illō ipsō locō est taberna
 20 pīstōris quī sine dubiō vēndit crūstula.”

Brevi tempore⁸ omnia erant parāta, iamque⁹ quinta hōra erat. Deinde Lentulus et filius ad caupōnam properāvērunt, quod famē¹⁰ et

¹ What construction follows *suādet*? § 501. 41. ² *rēbus*, § 501. 32. ³ This is the abl. of the *way by which* motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route. The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means. For the scene here described, see Plate II, p. 53, and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street (*saxa quae in mediō disposita erant*). ⁴ The forum of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public halls, and markets of various sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map. ⁵ We say, *this kind of shop*; Latin, *this kind of shops*. ⁶ *ut . . . parārēmus*, § 501. 41. ⁷ How is *ut* translated after a verb of fearing? How *nē*? Cf. § 501. 42. ⁸ *tempore*, § 501. 35. ⁹ *quinta hōra*. The Romans numbered the hours of the day consecutively from sunrise to sunset, dividing the day, whether long or short, into twelve equal parts. ¹⁰ *famē* shows a slight irregularity in that the abl. ending *-e* is long.

siti¹ urgēbantur. Ibi sub arboris umbrā sēdērunt et puerō imperā-
vērunt ut sibi² cibum et vinum daret. Huic imperiō³ puer celeriter
pāruit. Tum laeti sē⁴ ex labōre refēcērunt.

Post prandium profecti sunt ut alia urbis spectacula vidērent. Illō
tempore fuērunt Pompēiis⁵ multa templa, duo theātra, thermae mag- 5
numque amphitheātrum, quae omnia post paucōs annōs flammis atque
incendiis Vesuvī et terrae mōtū dēlēta sunt. Ante hanc calamitatem
autem hominēs⁶ nihil dē monte veriti sunt. In amphitheātrō quidem
Pūblius morārī cupīvit ut spectacula gladiātōria vidēret, quae in⁷ illum
ipsum diem prōscripta erant et iam⁸ rē vērā incēperant. Sed Lentu- 10
lus dixit, "Morārī, Pūbli, ⁹vereor ut possimus. Iam decima hōra est
et via est longa. Tempus suādet ut quam primum domum revertā-
mur." Itaque servō imperāvit ut equōs iungeret, et sōlis occāsū¹⁰
ad villam pervēnērunt.

LXVI. LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON

Ā primis annis quidem Iūlia ipsa filium suum docuerat, et Pūblius 15
nōn solum¹¹ pūrē et Latīnē loquī poterat sed etiam commodē legēbat
et scribēbat. Iam Ennium¹² aliōsque poētās lēgerat. Nunc vērō
Pūblius¹³ duodecim annōs habēbat; itaque eī pater bonum magistrum,
¹⁴virum omnī doctrinā et virtūte ōmnātissimum, parāvit, ¹⁵quī Graeca,
mūsicam, aliāsque artis docēret. ¹⁶Namque illis temporibus omnēs ferē 20
gentēs Graecē loquēbantur. Cum Pūbliō aliī puerī, Lentulī amicōrum

¹ *sitis, thirst*, has -im in the acc. sing., -ī in the abl. sing., and no plural.
² Observe that the reflexive pronoun *sibi* does not here refer to the subject of the subordinate clause in which it stands, but to the subject of the main clause. This so-called *indirect* use of the reflexive is often found in object clauses of purpose. ³ What case? Cf. § 501. 14. ⁴ *sē*, cf. p. 205, l. 7, and note.
⁵ *Pompēiis*, § 501. 36. 1. ⁶ *nihil . . . veriti sunt*, *had no fears of the mountain*.
⁷ *in, for*. ⁸ *rē vērā*, *in fact*. ⁹ *vereor ut*, § 501. 42. ¹⁰ *occāsū*, § 501. 35.
¹¹ *pūrē . . . poterat*, *freely, could speak Latin well*. What is the literal translation? ¹² *Ennium*, the father of Latin poetry. ¹³ *duodecim . . . habēbat*, cf. p. 206, l. 8, and note. ¹⁴ *virum*, etc., *a very well-educated and worthy man*. Observe the Latin equivalent. ¹⁵ *quī . . . docēret*, a relative clause of purpose. Cf. §§ 349, 350. ¹⁶ In *Cæsar's* time Greek was spoken more widely in the Roman world than any other language.

fili¹, discēbant. Nam saepe apud Rōmānōs mōs erat ²nōn in lūdum filiōs mittere sed domī per magistrum docēre. Cotidiē discipulī cum magistrō in peristylō³ Mārci domūs sedēbant. Omnēs puerī bullam auream, originis honestae signum, in collō gerēbant, et omnēs togā
5 praetextā amictī erant, ⁴quod nōndum sēdecim annōs⁵ nātī sunt.

SCENE IN SCHOOL · AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION

DISCIPULĪ. Salvē, magister.

MAGISTER. Vōs quoque omnēs, salvēte. ⁶Tabulāsne portāvistis et stilōs?

10 D. Portāvimus.

M. Iam fābulam Aesōpī⁷ discēmus. Ego legam, vōs in tabulis scribite. Et tū, Pūbli, dā mihi ē capsā⁸ Aesōpī volūmen.⁹ Iam
15 audite omnēs: *Vulpēs et Ūva*.

Vulpēs ōlim famē coācta ūvam dēpendentem vidit. Ad ūvam salībat, sūmere cōnāns. Frūstrā diū cōnāta, tandem irāta erat et salire cessāns dixit: "Illa ūva est acerba; acerbam ūvam ¹⁰nihil moror."

20 Omnia'ne scrīpsistis, puerī?

D. Omnia, magister.



TABULA ET STILUS

¹ filiī, in apposition with puerī. ² nōn . . . mittere. This infinitive clause is the subject of erat. Cf. § 216. The same construction is repeated in the next clause, domī . . . docēre. The object of docēre is filiōs understood. ³ The peristyle was an open court surrounded by a colonnade. ⁴ At the age of sixteen a boy laid aside the *bullā* and the *toga praetexta* and assumed the *toga virilis* or manly gown. ⁵ annōs, § 501. 21. The expression nōndum sēdecim annōs nātī sunt means literally, *they were born not yet sixteen years*. This is the usual expression for age. What is the English equivalent? ⁶ Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax. The writing was done with a stylus, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with a knob at the other end. The knob was used to smooth over the wax in making erasures and corrections. ⁷ Aesōpī, the famous Greek to whom are ascribed most of the fables current in the ancient world. ⁸ A cylindrical box for holding books and papers, shaped like a hatbox. ⁹ Ancient books were written on rolls made of papy'rus. ¹⁰ nihil moror, *I care nothing for*.

LXVII. PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION

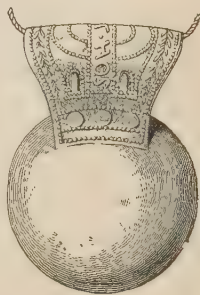
Iamque Pūblius, ¹quīndecim annōs nātus, ²prīmīs litterārū elementis cōfectis, Rōmā petere voluit ut scholās grammaticōrum et philosophōrum frequentāret. Et facillimē patri³ suō, quī ipse philosophiae studiō tenēbātur, persuāsit. Itaque ⁴omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, pater filiusque equīs animōsis vectī⁵ ad ⁵ magnam urbem profecti sunt. Eōs proficiscentis Iūlia tōtaque familia vōtis precibusque prōsecūtae sunt. Tum per loca⁶ plāna et collis silvīs vestitōs viam ingressi sunt ad Nōlam, quod oppidum eōs hospitio modicō excēpit. Nōlae⁷ duās hōrās morātī sunt, quod sōl meridiānus ārdēbat. Tum rēctā viā⁸ circiter vīginti milia⁹ passuum⁹ ¹⁰ Capuam,⁹ ad insignem Campāniae urbem, contendērunt. Eō¹⁰ multā nocte dēfessi pervēnērunt. ¹¹Postridiē eius diēi, somnō et cibō recreātī, Capuā discessērunt et ¹²viam Appiam ingressi, quae Capuam tangit et ūsque ad urbem Rōmā dūcit, ante meridiem Sinuessam pervēnērunt, quod oppidum tangit mare. Inde primā lūce proficiscentēs ¹⁵ Formiās¹³ properāverunt, ubi Cicerō, ōrātor clārissimus, quī forte apud villam suam erat, eōs benignē excēpit. Hinc ¹⁴itinere vīginti quinque milium passuum factō, Tarracinam, oppidum in saxīs altissimis situm, vidērunt. Iamque nōn longē aberant palūdēs magnae, quae multa milia passuum undique patent. Per eās pedestris via est gravis et in nāve ²⁰ viātōrēs vehuntur. Itaque ¹⁵equīs relictis Lentulus et Pūblius nāvem cōnscendērunt, et, ūnā nocte in trānsitū cōnsūptā, Forum Appi vērunt. Tum brevī tempore Aricia eōs excēpit. Hoc oppidum, in colle

¹ quīndecim, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note. ² prīmīs . . . cōfectis, abl. abs. Cf. § 501. 28. ³ patri, dat. with persuāsit. ⁴ omnibus . . . comparātis, cf. note 2. ⁵ vectī, perf. pass. part. of vehō. ⁶ What is there peculiar about the gender of this word? ⁷ Nōlae, locative case, § 501. 36. 2. ⁸ viā, cf. portā, p. 208, l. 7, and note. ⁹ What construction? ¹⁰ Eō, adv. there. ¹¹ Postridiē eius diēi, on the next day. ¹² viam Appiam, the most famous of all Roman roads, the great highway from Rome to Tarentum and Brundisium, with numerous branches. Locate on the map the various towns that are mentioned in the lines that follow. ¹³ Formiās, *Formiae*, one of the most beautiful spots on this coast, and a favorite site for the villas of rich Romans. ¹⁴ itinere . . . factō, abl. abs. The gen. milium modifies itinere. ¹⁵ equīs relictis. What construction? Point out a similar one in the next line.

situm, ab urbe Rōmā sēdecim milia passuum abest. Inde dēclivis via
 ūsque ad lātum campum dūcit ubi Rōma stat. Quem ad locum ubi
 Pūblius vēnit et Rōmam adhūc remōtam, maximam tōtius orbis terrā-
 rum urbem, cōspēxit, summā admirātiōne et gaudiō adfectus est.
 5 Sine morā dēscendērunt, et, mediō intervāllō quam celerrimē superātō,
 urbem portā Capēnā ingressi sunt.

LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TŌGA VIRILIS

Pūblius iam tōtum annum Rōmae morābātur¹ multaque urbis
 spectācula viderat et multōs sibi² amīcōs parāverat. Ei³ omnēs
 favēbant; ⁴dē eō omnēs bene spērāre poterant. Cotidiē Pūblius
 10 scholās philosophōrum et grammaticōrum tantō
 studiō frequentābat ⁵ut aliis clārum exemplum
 praebēret. Saepe erat cum patre in cūrīā⁶; quae
 rēs effēcit ⁷ut summōs reī pūblīcae virōs et audī-
 ret et vidēret. Ubi ⁸sēdecim annōs nātus est,
 15 bullam⁹ auream et togam praetextam mōre
 Rōmānō dēposuit atque virīlem togam sūmpsit.
 Virilis autem toga erat omnīnō alba, sed praetexta
 clāvum purpureum in margine habēbat. ¹⁰Dēpō-
 nere praetextam togam et sūmere virīlem togam
 20 erat rēs grātissima puerō Rōmānō, quod postcā
 vir et cīvīs Rōmānus habēbātur.



BULLA

¹¹ His rēbus gestis Lentulus ad uxōrem suam hās litterās scrīpsit:
¹² "Mārcus Iūliae suae salūtem dicit. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō.
 Accēpī tuās litterās. Hās nunc Rōmā per servum fidēlissimum mittō
 25 ut dē Pūbliō nostrō quam celerrimē sciās. Nam hodiē eī togam virīlem
 dedi. Ante lūcem surrēxi¹³ et prīmum bullam auream dē collō eius

¹ morābātur, translate as if pluperfect. ² sibi, for himself. ³ Ei, why dat.?
⁴ dē . . . poterant, in English, *all regarded him as a very promising youth*; but what
 does the Latin say? ⁵ ut . . . praebēret, § 501. 43. ⁶ cūrīā, a famous building
 near the Roman Forum. ⁷ ut . . . audīret et vidēret, § 501. 44. ⁸ sēdecim,
 etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note. ⁹ bullam, cf. p. 210, l. 3, and note 4. ¹⁰ These
 infinitive clauses are the subject of erat. Cf. § 216. ¹¹ His rēbus gestis, i. e.
 the assumption of the *toga virilis* and attendant ceremonies. ¹² Compare
 the beginning of this letter with the one on page 206. ¹³ surrēxi, from surgō.



"ECCE CAESAR NUNC TRIUMPHAT"

(See page 224)

remōvī. Hāc Laribus¹ cōnsecrātā et sacrīs factis, eum togā virilī vestīvī. Interim plūrēs amicī cum multitudīne optimōrum civium et honestōrum clientium pervēnerant² quī Pūblium domō in forum dēdūcerent. Ibi in civitātem receptus est et nōmen, Pūblius Cornēlius Lentulus, apud civīs Rōmānōs ascriptum est. Omnēs eī amicissimī⁵ fuērunt et magna³ de eō praedicunt. Sapientior enim aequalibus⁴ est et magnum ingenium habet. ⁵Cūrā ut valeās.”

LXIX. PUBLIUS JOINS CAESAR'S ARMY IN GAUL

Pūblius iam adulēscēns postquam togam virilem sūmpsit, aliīs rēbus studēre incēpit et praesertim ūsū⁶ armōrum sē⁷ diligenter exercuit. Magis magisque amāvit illās artis quae militārem animum dēlectant. ¹⁰ Iamque erant⁸ quī eī cursum militārem praedicerent. Nec sine causā, quod certē patris insigne exemplū⁹ ita multum trahēbat. ¹⁰ Paucis ante annis C. Iūlius Caesar, ducum Rōmānōrum maximus, cōsul creātus erat et hōc tempore in Galliā bellum grave gerēbat. Atque in exercitū eius plūrēs adulēscētēs militābant, apud quōs erat amīcus ¹⁵ quīdam Pūbli. Ille Pūblium crēbris litteris vehementer hortābātur¹¹ ut iter in Galliam faceret. Neque Pūblius recūsāvit, et, multis amīcis ad portam urbis prōsequentibus, ad Caesaris castra profectus est. Quārtō diē postquam iter ingressus est, ad Alpīs, montis altissimōs, pervēnit. His summā difficultāte superātis, tandem Gallōrum in finibus erat. ²⁰ Primō autem veritus est ut¹² castris Rōmānis adpropinquāre posset, quod Galli, maximis cōpiis coāctis, Rōmānōs obsidēbant et viās omnīs iam clausuerant. His rēbus commōtus Pūblius vestem Gallicam induit nē ā Gallis caperētur, et ita per hostium cōpiās incolumis ad castra

¹ The Lares were the spirits of the ancestors, and were worshiped as household gods. All that the house contained was confided to their care, and sacrifices were made to them daily. ² quī . . . dēdūcerent, § 350. ³ magna, *great things*, a neuter adj. used as a noun. ⁴ aequalibus, § 501. 34. ⁵ Cūrā ut valeās, *take good care of your health*. How does the Latin express this idea?

⁶ Abl. of means. ⁷ sē, reflexive object of exercuit. ⁸ quī . . . praedicerent, § 501. 45. ⁹ ita multum trahēbat, *had a great influence in that direction*. ¹⁰ Paucis ante annis, *a few years before*; in Latin, *before by a few years*, ante being an adverb and annis abl. of degree of difference. ¹¹ ut . . . faceret, § 501. 41.

¹² ut, how translated here? See § 501. 42.

pervenire potuit. Intrā mūnitiōnēs acceptus, ā Caesare benignē exceptus est. Imperātor fortem adulēscēntem amplissimīs verbis laudāvit et eum ¹tribūnum militum creāvit.

HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED

Exercitus quī in hostium finibus bellum gerit multis periculis circū cumdatus est. ²Quae pericula ut vitārent, Rōmānī summam cūram



IMPEDIMENTA

adhibēre solēbant. Adpropinquantēs cōpiīs hostium agmen ita dispōnēbant ³ut imperātor ipse cum plūribus legiōnibus expeditis⁴ primum agmen dūceret. Post eās cōpiās impedimenta⁵ tōtius exercitūs

¹ The *military tribune* was a commissioned officer nearly corresponding to our rank of colonel. The tribunes were often inexperienced men, so Cæsar did not allow them much responsibility. ² *Quae pericula*, object of vitārent.

It is placed first to make a proper connection with the preceding sentence. ³ ut . . . dūceret, § 501. 43. ⁴ *expeditis*, i.e. without baggage and ready for action. ⁵ *impedimenta*. Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on

beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless *expeditus*) carried a heavy pack. See also picture, p. 159.

conlocābant. ¹Tum legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant. Equitēs quoque in omnis partīs dīmīttēbantur quī loca explorārent; et centuriōnēs praemittēbantur ut locum castrīs idōneum dēligerent. Locus habēbatur idōneus castrīs ²quī facile dēfendi posset et prope aquam esset. Quā dē causā castra³ in colle ⁵ab utrāque parte arduō, ā fronte lēniter dēclivī saepe pōnēbantur; vel locus palūdibus cinctus vel in flūminis rīpīs situs dēligēbātur. Ad locum postquam exercitus pervēnit, aliī militum ⁴in armīs erant, aliī castra mūnīre incipiēbant. Nam ⁵quō tūtiōrēs ab hostibus militēs essent, nēve incautī et imparātī opprimerentur, castra fossā lātā et ¹⁰vāllō altō mūniēbant. In castrīs portae quattuor erant ut ēruptiō militum omnis in partīs fieri posset. In angulis castrōrum erant turrēs dē quibus tēla in hostīs coniciēbantur. ⁶Tālibus in castrīs quālia dēscripsimus Pūblius ā Caesare exceptus est.

LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS

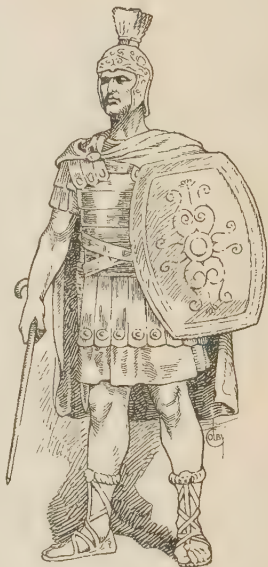
Illis in castrīs erant duo centuriōnēs,⁷ fortissimī virī, T. Pullō et ¹⁵L. Vorēnus, quōrum neuter alterī virtūte⁸ cēdere volēbat. Inter eōs iam multōs annōs infēnsū certāmen gerēbātur. Tum dēmum finis contrōversiae hōc modō⁹ factus est. Diē tertiō postquam Pūblius pervēnit, hostēs, maiōribus cōpiīs coactīs, ācerrimū impetum in castra fēcērunt. Tum Pullō, ¹⁰cum Rōmānī tardiōrēs¹¹ vidērentur, ²⁰"Cūr dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? Quam commodiōrem occāsiōnem exspectās? Hic diēs dē virtūte nostrā iūdicābit." Haec¹² cum dixisset,

¹ The newest legions were placed in the rear, because they were the least reliable. ² quī . . . posset . . . esset, § 501. 45. ³ castra, subject of pōnēbantur. ⁴ in armīs erant, *stood under arms*. ⁵ quō . . . essent. When is quō used to introduce a purpose clause? See § 350. I. ⁶ Tālibus in castrīs quālia, *in such a camp as*. It is important to remember the correlatives tālis . . . quālis, *such . . . as*. ⁷ A centurion commanded a company of about sixty men. He was a common soldier who had been promoted from the ranks for his courage and fighting qualities. The centurions were the real leaders of the men in battle. There were sixty of them in a legion. The centurion in the picture (p. 216) has in his hand a staff with a crook at one end, the symbol of his authority. ⁸ virtūte, § 501. 30. ⁹ Abl. of manner. ¹⁰ cum . . . vidērentur, § 501. 46. ¹¹ tardiōrēs, *too slow*, a not infrequent translation of the comparative degree. ¹² Haec, obj. of dixisset. It is placed before cum to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. What is the construction of dixisset?

extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcessit et in eam hostium partem quae cōnfertissima ¹vidēbātur inrūpit. Neque Vorēnus quidem tum vāllō ²sēsē continet, sed Pullōnem subsequitur. Tum Pullō pilum in hostis immittit atque ūnum
 5 ex multitudīne prōcurrentem trāicit. Hunc percussum et exanimātum hostēs scūtis prōtegunt et in Pullōnem omnēs tēla coniciunt. Eius scūtum trānsfigitur et tēlum in balteō dēfigitur. Hic cāsus vāginam
 10 āvertit et dextram manum eius gladium ēdūcere cōnantis ³morātur. Eum ita impeditum hostēs circumsistunt.

Tum vērō ⁴eī labōranti Vorēnus, cum sit inimicus, tamen auxilium dat. Ad hunc
 15 cōnfestim ⁵ā Pullōne omnis multitudō sē convertit. Gladiō comminus pugnat Vorēnus, atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs paulum prōpellit. Sed instāns cupidius ⁶infelix, ⁷pede sē fallente, concidit.

20 Huic rūsus circumventō auxilium dat Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, plūribus interfectis, summā cum laude intrā mūnitiōnēs sē recipiunt. Sic inimicōrum alter alterī auxilium dedit nec dē eōrum virtūte quisquam iūdicāre potuit.



CENTURIO

LXXI. THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED

25 Cum iam sex hōrās pugnātum esset ⁸ac nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs dēficerent, ⁸atque hostēs ācrius instārent, ⁸et vāllum scindere fossamque complēre incēpissent, ⁸Caesar, vir rei militāris perītissimus,

¹ vidēbātur, inrūpit. Why is the imperfect used in one case and the perfect in the other? Cf. § 190. ² vāllō, abl. of means, but in English we should say *within the rampart*. Cf. *ingenti stabulō*, p. 201, l. 13, and note. ³ cōnantis, pres. part. agreeing with eius. ⁴ eī labōranti, indir. obj. of dat. ⁵ ā Pullōne, from *Pullo*, abl. of separation. ⁶ cupidius, *too eagerly*. ⁷ pede sē fallente, lit. *the foot deceiving itself*; in our idiom, *his foot slipping*. ⁸ pugnātum esset, dēficerent, instārent, incēpissent. These are all subjunctives with *cum*. Cf. § 501. 46.

suīs imperāvit ut proelium paulisper intermitterent,¹ et, signō datō, ex castris ērumpent.¹ ²Quod iussī sunt faciunt, et subitō ex omnibus portis ērumpunt. Atque tam celeriter militēs concurrērunt et tam propinquī erant hostēs³ ut spatium pila coniciendi⁴ nōn darētur. Itaque reiectis pilis⁵ comminus gladiis pugnātum est. Diū et audācter hostēs⁵ restitērunt et in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut ā dextrō cornū vehementer⁶ multitudine suōrum aciem Rōmānam premerent. ⁷Id imperātor cum animadvertisset, Pūblium adulēscēntem cum equitātū mīsīt quī labōrantibus⁸ auxilium daret. Eius impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt hostēs⁹ et omnēs terga vertērunt. Eōs in ¹⁰fugam datōs Pūblius subsecūtus est ūsque ad flūmen Rhēnum, quod ab eō locō quīnque milia passuum aberat. Ibi paucī salutem sibi repperērunt. Omnibus reliquīs interfectis, Pūblius et equitēs in castra sēsē recēpērunt. Dē hāc calamitāte finitimae gentēs cum certiōrēs factae essent, ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt et sē suaeque omnia dēdidērunt. ¹⁵

LXXII. PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY · ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS

Initā aestāte Caesar litteris certior fiēbat et per explōrātōrēs cognōscēbat plūris civitatēs Galliae novis rēbus studēre,¹⁰ et contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre¹⁰ obsidēsq̄ ¹¹inter sē dare,¹⁰ atque cum his Germānōs quōsdam quoque sēsē coniūctūrōs esse.¹⁰ His litteris nūntiisque commōtus Caesar cōstituit quam celerrimē in Gallōs proficiscī,¹² ²⁰ut eōs inopinantis opprimeret, et Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus peditum et duōbus milibus equitum in Germānōs mittere.¹²

¹ intermitterent, ērumpent. What use of the subjunctive? ² Quod, etc., *they do as ordered*. The antecedent of *quod* is *id* understood, which would be the object of *faciunt*. ³ ut . . . darētur. Is this a clause of purpose or of result? ⁴ coniciendī, § 402. ⁵ comminus gladiis pugnātum est, *a hand-to-hand conflict was waged with swords*. ⁶ multitudine suōrum, *by their numbers*. *suōrum* is used as a noun. What is the literal translation of this expression? ⁷ Id imperātor. *Id* is the obj. and *imperātor* the subj. of *animadvertisset*. ⁸ labōrantibus. This participle agrees with *iis* understood, the indir. obj. of *daret*; quī . . . daret is a purpose clause, § 501. 40. ⁹ hostēs, subj. of *potuērunt*. ¹⁰ Observe that all these infinitives are in indirect statements after *certior fiēbat*, *he was informed*, and *cognōscēbat*, *he learned*. Cf. § 501. 48, 49. ¹¹ inter sē, *to each other*. ¹² proficiscī, mittere. These infinitives depend upon *cōstituit*.

¹Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra mōvit. Ab utrōque² rēs bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter in hostium finis pervēnit ut spatium ³cōpiās cōgendī nōn darētur⁴; et Labiēnus dē Germānis tam grave supplicium sūmpsit ut nēmō ex eā gente in reliquum tempus
5 Gallis auxilium dare auderet.⁴

Hoc iter in Germāniam Pūblius quoque fēcit et, ⁵cum ibi morārētur, multa mirābilia vidit. Praesertim vērō ingentem silvam mirābātur, quae tantae magnitudinis esse dicēbātur ⁶ut nēmō eam trānsire posset, nec quisquam scīret aut initium aut finem. Quā dē rē plūra cognō-
10 verat ā milite quōdam quī ōlim captus ā Germānis multōs annōs ibi incoluit. Ille⁷ dē silvā dicēns, " Īfinītāe magnitudinis est haec silva," inquit; " nec quisquam est ⁸huius Germāniae ⁹quī initium eius sciat aut ad finem adierit. Nāscuntur illic multa tālia animālium genera quālia reliquīs in locīs nōn inveniuntur. Sunt bovēs quī ūnum¹⁰ cornū
15 habent; sunt etiam animālia quae appellantur alcēs. Hae nūllōs crūrū¹¹ articulōs habent. Itaque, sī forte concidērunt, sēsē ērigere nūllō modō possunt. Arborēs habent prō¹² cubilibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt paulō minōrēs elephantis.¹³ Magna vis eōrum
20 est et magna vėlōcitās. Neque hominī neque ferae parcut.¹⁴"

LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY

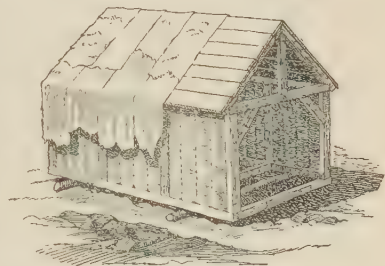
Pūblius plūris diēs in Germāniā morātus¹⁵ in Galliam rediit, et ad Caesaris castra sē contulit. Ille quia molestē ferēbat Gallōs¹⁶ eius regiōnis obsidēs dare recūsāvisse et exercitūi frūmentum praebere

¹ Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided. Every fifteen days grain was distributed. Each soldier received about two pecks. This he carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what he could find by foraging. ² Abl. of personal agent, § 501. 33. ³ cōpiās cōgendī, § 501. 37. 1. ⁴ darētur, auderet, § 501. 43. auderet is not from audiō. ⁵ cum . . . morārētur, § 501. 46. ⁶ ut . . . posset, . . . scīret, § 501. 43. ⁷ Ille, subj. of inquit. . ⁸ huius Germāniae, of this part of Germany. ⁹ quī . . . sciat . . . adierit, § 501. 45. ¹⁰ ūnum, only one. ¹¹ crūrū, from crūs. ¹² prō, for, in place of. ¹³ elephantis, § 501. 34. ¹⁴ parcut. What case is used with this verb? ¹⁵ morātus. Is this part. active or passive in meaning? ¹⁶ Gallōs, subj. acc. of the infins. recūsāvisse and nōluisse. The indirect statement depends upon molestē ferēbat.

nōluisse, cōstituit eis¹ bellum inferre. Agrīs vāstātis, vicīs incēnsis, pervēnit ad oppidum validissimum quod et nātūrā et arte mūnitum erat. Cingēbātur mūrō vīgintī quīque pedēs² altō. Ā lateribus duōbus marī mūniēbātur; ā tertiō latere collis, in quō oppidum erat situm, praeuptō fastigiō ad plānitē vergēbat; ā quārtō tantum³ latere aditus erat facilis. Hoc oppidum oppugnāre, ⁴cum opus esset difficillimum, tamen cōstituit Caesar. Et castrīs mūnitis Pūbliō negōtium dedit ut rēs⁵ ad oppugnandum necessāriās parāret.

Rōmānōrum autem oppugnātiō est haec.⁶ Prīmum turrēs

aedificantur quibus milītēs in summum mūrū ēvādere possint⁷; vineae⁸ fiunt quibus tēcti milītēs ad mūrū succēdant; plutei⁹ parantur post quōs milītēs tormenta¹⁰ administrent; sunt quoque arietēs quī mūrū et portās discutiant. His omnibus rēbus comparātis, deinde ¹¹agger ab eā parte ubi aditus est facillimus exstruitur et cum



VINEA

¹ eis, § 501. 15. ² pedēs, § 501. 21. ³ tantum, adv. only. ⁴ cum . . . esset, a clause of concession, § 501. 46. ⁵ ad oppugnandum, a gerund expressing purpose. ⁶ haec, as follows. ⁷ possint, subjv. of purpose. Three similar constructions follow. ⁸ vineae. These vineae were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to take a fortification. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers. ⁹ plutei, large screens or shields with small wheels attached to them. These were used to protect besiegers while moving up to a city or while serving the engines of war. ¹⁰ tormenta. The engines of war were chiefly the catapult for shooting great arrows, and the ballista, for hurling large stones. They had a range of about two thousand feet and were very effective. ¹¹ The agger, or mound, was of chief importance in a siege. It was begun just out of reach of the missiles of the enemy, and then gradually extended towards the point to be attacked. At the same time its height gradually increased until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. It was made of earth and timber, and had covered galleries running through it for the use of the besiegers. Over or beside the agger a tower was moved up to the wall, often with a battering-ram (aries) in the lowest story. (See picture, p. 221.)

vīneīs ad ipsum oppidum agitur. Tum turris in aggere prōmovētur ; arietibus quī sub vīneīs conlocātī erant mūrus et portae discutiuntur ; ballistīs, catapultīs, reliquisque tormentis lapidēs et tēla in oppidum coniciuntur. Postrēmō cum iam turris et agger altitudinem mūri
5 adaequant et arietēs moenia perfrēgērunt,¹ signō datō milītēs inruunt et oppidum expugnant.

LXXIV. THE CITY IS TAKEN · THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED

Omnibus rēbus necessariis ad oppugnandum ā Pūbliō comparātis, dēliberātur in conciliō quod cōnsilium ²oppidi expugnandi ineant.³ Tum ūnus⁴ ex centuriōnibus,
10 vir rei militāris perītissimus, "Ego suādēō," inquit, "ut ab eā parte, ubi aditus sit⁵ facillimus, aggerem exstruāmus⁶ et turrim prōmoveāmus⁶ atque
15 ariete admōtō simul mūrum discutere cōnēmur.⁶" ⁷Hoc cōnsilium cum omnibus placēret, Caesar concilium dimisit. Deinde milītēs hortātus ut pri-
20 ōrēs victōriās memoriā⁸ tenērent, iussit aggerem exstruī, turrim et arietem admovērī. Neque oppidānis⁹ cōnsilium dēfuit. Alii ignem et omne genus tēlōrum dē mūrō in turrim coniēcērunt, aliī ingentia saxa in vīneās et arietem dēvolvērunt. Diū utrimque ācerrimē



BALLISTA

¹ perfrēgērunt, from perfringō. ² oppidi expugnandi. Is this a gerund or a gerundive construction? Cf. § 501. 37. ³ ineant, § 501. 50. ⁴ ūnus, subj. of inquit. ⁵ sit. This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with ubi stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with ut, that its verb is attracted into the same mood. ⁶ All these verbs are in the same construction. ⁷ Hoc cōnsilium, subj. of placēret. For the order cf. Haec cum, etc., p. 215, l. 22, and note; Id imperātor cum, p. 217, l. 8. ⁸ memoriā, abl. of means. ⁹ oppidānis, § 501. 15.

pugnātum est. Nē vulnerāti quidem pedem rettulērunt. Tandem,
¹dē tertiā vigiliā, Pūblius, quem Caesar illi operi² praefēcerat, nūntiāvit
 partem³ mūrī ictibus
 arietis labefactam con-
 cidisse. Quā rē au-
 dītā Caesar signum
 dat; milītēs inruunt et
 magnā cum caede hos-
 tium oppidum capiunt.

Postridiē eius diēi,
 hōc oppidō expugnātō,
⁴captivōrum quī nō-
 bilissimī sunt ad im-
 perātōrem ante prae-
 tōrium⁵, addūcuntur.
 Ipse, lōricā aurātā et



TURRES, ARIETES, VINEA

palūdāmentō purpureō insignis, captivōs per interpretem in hunc
 modum interrogat:⁶ Vōs quī estis⁷?

INTERPRES. Rogat imperātōr quī sitis.

CAPTIVĪ. Filii rēgis sumus.

INTERPRES. Dīcunt sē filiōs esse rēgis.

IMPERĀTOR. Cūr mihi tantās iniūriās intulistis?

INTERPRES. Rogat cūr sibi tantās iniūriās intuleritis.

CAPTIVĪ. Iniūriās ei nōn intulimus sed prō patriā bellum gessimus.
 Semper volumus Rōmānis esse amīci, sed Rōmāni sine causā nōs
 domō patriāque expellere cōnāti sunt.

INTERPRES. ⁸Negant sē iniūriās tibi intulisse, sed prō patriā bellum
 gessisse. ⁹Semper sē voluisse amīcōs Rōmanis esse, sed Rōmānōs
 sine causā sē domō patriāque expellere cōnātōs esse.

¹ Between twelve and three o'clock in the morning. The night was divided
 into four watches. ² operi, § 501. 15. ³ partem, subj. acc. of concidisse.

⁴ captivōrum . . . sunt, the noblest of the captives. ⁵ The general's headquarters.

⁶ Study carefully these direct questions, indirect questions, and indirect state-
 ments. ⁷ See Plate III, p. 148. ⁸ Negant, etc., they say that they have not, etc.
 Negant is equivalent to dicunt nōn, and the negative modifies intulisse, but not the
 remainder of the indirect statement. ⁹ Semper, etc., that they have alwys, etc.

IMPERĀTOR. ¹Manēbitisne in reliquum tempus in fidē, hāc rebellione condōnātā?

Tum vērō captīvī multīs cum lacrimīs iūrāvērunt sē in fidē mānsūrōs esse, et Caesar eōs incolumīs domum dīmīsīt.

LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CÆSAR AND
POMPEY • THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA

5 Nē cōfectō² quidem bellō Gallicō, ³bellum civile inter Caesarem et Pompēium exortum est. Nam Pompēius, quī summum imperium petēbat, senātui persuāserat ut Caesarem rei publicae hostem⁴ iūdicāret et exercitum eius dīmitti iubēret. Quibus cognitis rēbus Caesar exercitum suum dīmittere recūsāvit, atque, hortātus milītēs ut ducem totiēns
10 victōrem ab inimicōrum iniūriis dēfenderent, imperāvit ut sē Rōmam sequerentur. Summā cum alacritātē milītēs pārūrunt, et trānsitō Rubicōne⁵ initium bellī cīvilis factum est.

Italiae urbēs quidem omnēs ferē ⁶rēbus Caesaris favēbant et eum benignē excēpērunt. Quā rē commōtus Pompēius ante Caesaris adven-
15 tum Rōmā excessit et Brundisium⁷ pervēnit, inde ⁸paucīs post diēbus cum omnibus cōpiis ad Ēpirum mare trānsiit. Eum Caesar cum septem legiōnibus et quīngentīs equitibus secūtus est, et insignis inter Caesaris comitātum erat Pūblius.

Plūribus leviōribus proeliis factis, tandem cōpiaē adversae ad Phar-
20 sālum⁹ in Thessaliā sitam castra posuērunt. Cum Pompēi exercitus

¹ Manēbitisne in fidē, *will you remain loyal?* ² With nē . . . quidem the emphatic word stands between the two. ³ The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Cæsar and Pompey. It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Cæsar to the lordship of the Roman world. ⁴ hostem, predicate accusative, § 501. 22. ⁵ The

Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Cæsar's province. By crossing it with an armed force Cæsar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government. Cæsar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C. ⁶ rēbus Caesaris favēbant, *favoured Cæsar's side*. In what case is rēbus? ⁷ Brundisium, a famous port in southern Italy whence ships sailed for Greece and the East. See map. ⁸ paucīs post diēbus, *a few days later*; literally, *afterwards by a few days*. Cf. paucīs ante annis, p. 213, l. 12, and note. ⁹ The battle of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C. In importance it ranks as one of the great battles of the world.

esset bis tantus quantus Caesaris, tamen erant multī quī veterānās legiōnēs quae Gallōs et Germānōs superāverant vehementer timēbant. Quōs¹ ²ante proelium commissum Labiēnus³ lēgātus, quī ab Caesare nūper dēfēcerat, ita adlocūtus est: “⁴Nōlite existimāre hunc esse exercitum veterānōrum militum. Omnibus interfui proeliis⁵ neque 5 temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illius exercitūs quī Gallōs superāvit adhūc superest. Magna pars occisa est, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in Italiā. Hae cōpiae quās vidētis in ⁶citeriōre Galliā nūper cōscriptae sunt.” Haec⁷ cum dixisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum esse. ⁸Hoc 10 idem Pompēius et omnēs reliquī iūrāvērunt, et magnā spē et laetitiā, sicut certam ad victōriam, cōpiae ē castrīs exiērunt.

Item Caesar, animō⁹ ad dīmicandum parātus, exercitum suum ēdūxit et septem cohortibus ¹⁰praesidiō castrīs relictīs cōpiās triplici aciē instrūxit. Tum, militibus studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum 15 dedit. Militēs prōcurrērunt et pilīs missīs gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō virtūs hostibus dēfuit. Nam et tēla missa sustinuerunt et impetum gladiōrum excēpērunt et ōrdinēs cōservāvērunt. Utrisque diū et ācritē pugnātum est nec quisquam pedem rettulit. Tum equitēs Pompēi aciem Caesaris circumīre cōnātī sunt. Quod¹¹ ubi Caesar 20 animadvertit, tertiam aciem,¹² quae ad id tempus quīēta fuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Tum vērō integrōrum impetum¹³ dēfessī hostēs sustinēre nōn potuerunt et omnēs terga vertērunt. Sed Pompēius dē fortūnis suis dēspērāns sē in castra equō contulit, inde mox cum paucis equitibus effūgit.

25

¹ Quōs, obj. of adlocūtus est. ² ante proelium commissum, *before the beginning of the battle.* ³ Labiēnus, Cæsar's most faithful and skillful lieutenant in the Gallic War. On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted Cæsar and joined Pompey. His defection caused the greatest joy among the Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends, and never accomplished anything of importance. He fought against his old commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.

⁴ Nōlite existimāre, *don't think.* ⁵ proeliis, § 501. 15. ⁶ citeriōre Galliā. This name is applied to Cisalpine Gaul, or Gaul south of the Alps.

⁷ Haec, obj. of dixisset. ⁸ Hoc idem, obj. of iūrāvērunt. ⁹ animō, § 501. 30. ¹⁰ praesidiō castrīs, § 501. 17. ¹¹ Quod, obj. of animadvertit. ¹² aciem, subj. of prōcurrere. ¹³ impetum, obj. of sustinēre.

LXXVI. THE TRIUMPH OF CÆSAR

Pompēiō amicisque eius superātis atque omnibus hostibus ubique victis, Caesar imperātor Rōmamrediit et ¹extrā moenia urbis in campō

Martiō castra posuit. Tum vērō amplissimis honoribus adfectus est. Dictātor creātus est, et eī triumphus ā senātū est dēcrētus. ²Quō

diē dē Gallis triumphum ēgit, tanta multitudō hominum in urbem undique cōnflūxit ³ut omnia loca essent cōnferta. Tempa patēbant, ārae fūmābant, columnae sertis ōrnātae erant. ⁴Cum

vērō pompa urbem intrāret, quantus hominum fremitus ortus est! Prīmum per portam ingressi sunt senātus et magistrātus. Secūti

sunt tibicinēs, signiferi, peditēs laureā corōnāti canentēs: "Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat, quī subēgit Galliam," et "Mille, mille, mille, mille Gallōs trucidāvimus." Multi praedam captā-

rum urbium portābant, arma, omnia belli instrūmenta. Secūti sunt equitēs, animōsis atque splendidissimē ōrnātis equis vecti, inter quōs

Pūblius adulēscēns fortissimus habēbātur. Addūcēbantur tauri, arietēs, ⁵quī dis immortalibus

immolārentur. Ita longō agmine prōgrediēns exercitus ⁶sacrā viā per forum in Capitōlium perrēxit.

Imperātor ipse cum urbem intrāret, undique laetō clāmōre multitudinis salūtātus est. Stābat in currū aureō quem quattuor albī equi vehēbant. Indūtus ⁷togā pictā, alterā manū habēnās et lauream

¹ A victorious general with his army was not allowed to enter the city until the day of his triumph. A triumph was the greatest of all military honors.

² Quō diē, *on the day that*, abl. of time. ³ ut . . . essent, § 501. 43. ⁴ Cum . . . intrāret, § 501. 46. ⁵ quī . . . immolārentur, § 501. 40. ⁶ The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. This route was always followed by triumphal processions. ⁷ The toga picta worn by a general in his triumph was a splendid robe of Tyrian purple covered with golden stars. See Plate IV, p. 213.



SIGNIFER

tenēbat, alterā eburneum scēptrum. Post eum servus in currū stāns auream corōnam super caput eius tenēbat. Ante currum miserrimī captivī, rēgēs principēsque superātārum gentium, catēnīs vīctī, prōgrediēbantur; et vīgintī quattuor lictōrēs¹ laureātās fascīs ferentēs et signiferī currum Caesaris comitābantur. Conclūdīt agmen multītūdō captivōrum, quī, in servitūtem redactī,² dēmissō vultū, vīctīs³ bracchiīs, sequuntur; quibuscum veniunt longissimō ordīne militēs, etiam hī praedam vel insignia militāria ferentēs.

Caesar cum Capitōlium ascendisset, in templō Iovī Capitōlinō sacra fēcīt. ⁴Simul captivōrum quī nōbilissimī erant, abductī in carcerem,⁵ interfectī sunt. Sacris factis Caesar dē Capitōliō dēscendit et in forō militibus suis hōnōrēs militāris dedit eisque pecūniam ex bellī praedā distribuit.

His omnibus rēbus cōfectis, Pūblius Caesarem ⁶valēre iussit et quam celerrimē ad villam contendit ut patrem mātremque salūtāret. ²⁵

⁷Dē rēbus gestis P. Cornēli Lentulī hāctenus.



LICTORES CUM FASCIBUS

¹ The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets. On their shoulders they carried the *fascēs*, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law. ² dēmissō vultū, with downcast countenance. ³ vīctīs, from vinciō.

⁴ Simul, etc., At the same time those of the captives who were the noblest. ⁵ The

prison was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of the Capitoline Hill.

⁶ valēre iussit, bade farewell to. ⁷ This sentence marks the end of the story.

APPENDIX I

DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

NOUNS

460. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION — **Ā**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ae**

SECOND DECLENSION — **O**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ī**

THIRD DECLENSION — Consonant stems and **I**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-is**

FOURTH DECLENSION — **U**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ūs**

FIFTH DECLENSION — **Ē**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ěī**

461. FIRST DECLENSION. **Ā**-STEMS

domina, lady STEM **dominā-** BASE **domin-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	domina	-a	dominae	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	dominae	-ae	dominārum	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	dominae	-ae	dominīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dominam	-am	dominās	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	dominā	-ā	dominīs	-īs

a. Dea and *fīlia* have the termination **-ābus** in the dative and ablative plural.

462.

SECOND DECLENSION. O-STEMS

a. MASCULINES IN -us

dominus, master STEM *domino-* BASE *domin-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	TERMINATIONS	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dominus</i> -us	<i>dominī</i> -ī
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dominī</i> -ī	<i>dominōrum</i> -ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dominō</i> -ō	<i>dominīs</i> -īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dominum</i> -um	<i>dominōs</i> -ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dominō</i> -ō	<i>dominīs</i> -īs

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -e in the vocative singular, as *domine*.

2. Proper names in -ius, and *filius*, end in -ī in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as *Vergī'li*, *fili*.

b. NEUTERS IN -um

pīlum, spear STEM *pīlo-* BASE *pīl-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	TERMINATIONS	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pīlum</i> -um	<i>pīla</i> -a
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pīlī</i> -ī	<i>pīlōrum</i> -ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pīlō</i> -ō	<i>pīlīs</i> -īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pīlum</i> -um	<i>pīla</i> -a
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pīlō</i> -ō	<i>pīlīs</i> -īs

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -ī in the genitive singular, not in -īi, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

puer, boy *ager, field* *vir, man*
 STEMS *puero-* *agro-* *viro-*
 BASES *puer-* *agr-* *vir-*

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puer</i> <i>ager</i> <i>vir</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puerī</i> <i>agrī</i> <i>virī</i>	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puerō</i> <i>agrō</i> <i>virō</i>	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puerum</i> <i>agrum</i> <i>virum</i>	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puerō</i> <i>agrō</i> <i>virō</i>	-ō

	PLURAL			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

463.

THIRD DECLENSION

CLASSIFI- CATION	I. CONSONANT STEMS	1. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only.
		2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: <i>a.</i> masculines and feminines; <i>b.</i> neuters.
	II. I-STEMS	Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

464.

I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. *Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular :
masculines and feminines only*

BASES OR STEMS	prīnceps, m., <i>chief</i>	mīles, m., <i>soldier</i>	lapis, m., <i>stone</i>
	prīncip-	mīlit-	lapid-

	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	prīnceps	mīles	lapis	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	prīncipis	mīlitis	lapidis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	prīncipī	mīlitī	lapidī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	prīncipem	mīlitem	lapidem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	prīncipe	mīlite	lapide	-e

	PLURAL			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	prīncipum	mīlitum	lapidum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	lapidibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	lapidibus	-ibus

	rēx, m., king	iūdex, m., judge	virtūs, f., virtue	
BASES OR STEMS	rēg-	iūdic-	virtūt-	
	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	iūdex	virtūs	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	iūdicis	virtūtis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	iūdicī	virtūtī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	iūdicem	virtutem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	iūdice	virtute	-e
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtūtēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	iūdicum	virtutum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtutibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtūtēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtutibus	-ibus

NOTE. For consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 233. 3.

2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

	cōsul, m., consul	legiō, f., legion	ōrdō, m., row	pater, m., father	
BASES OR STEMS	consul-	legiōn-	ōrdin-	patr-	
	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	cōsul	legiō	ōrdō	pater	—
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	legiōnis	ōrdinis	patris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulī	legiōnī	ōrdinī	patrī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	legiōnem	ōrdinem	patrem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	legiōne	ōrdine	patre	-e
	PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	legiōnēs	ōrdinēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulum	legiōnum	ōrdinum	patrum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	legiōnibus	ōrdinibus	patribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	legiōnēs	ōrdinēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	legiōnibus	ōrdinibus	patribus	-ibus

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 236. 1-3.

b. NEUTERS

		<i>flūmen</i> , n., <i>river</i>	<i>tempus</i> , n., <i>time</i>	<i>opus</i> , n., <i>work</i>	<i>caput</i> , n., <i>head</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	}	<i>flūmin-</i>	<i>tempor-</i>	<i>oper-</i>	<i>capit-</i>	
		SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>		<i>flūmen</i>	<i>tempus</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>caput</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>flūminis</i>	<i>temporis</i>	<i>operis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>flūminī</i>	<i>temporī</i>	<i>operī</i>	<i>capitī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>		<i>flūmen</i>	<i>tempus</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>caput</i>	—
<i>Abl.</i>		<i>flūmine</i>	<i>tempore</i>	<i>opere</i>	<i>capite</i>	-e
PLURAL						
<i>Nom.</i>		<i>flūmina</i>	<i>tempora</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>capita</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>flūminum</i>	<i>temporum</i>	<i>operum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	-um
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>temporibus</i>	<i>operibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>		<i>flūmina</i>	<i>tempora</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>capita</i>	-a
<i>Abl.</i>		<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>temporibus</i>	<i>operibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 238. 2, 3.

465.

II. I-STEMS

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

<i>caedēs</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i>	<i>hostis</i> , m., <i>enemy</i>	<i>urbs</i> , f., <i>city</i>	<i>cliēs</i> , m., <i>retainer</i>		
STEMS	caedi-	hosti-	urbi-	clienti-	
BASES	caed-	host-	urb-	client-	
SINGULAR					
				TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	hostis	urbs	cliēs	-s, -is, or -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedis	hostis	urbis	clientis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	caedī	hostī	urbī	clientī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	caedem	hostem	urbem	clientem	-em (-im)
<i>Abl.</i>	caede	hoste	urbe	cliente	-e (-ī)
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	hostēs	urbēs	clientēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedium	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	caedis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	urbis, -ēs	clientis, -ēs	-is, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

1. *Avis*, *civis*, *fīnis*, *ignis*, *nāvis*, have the abl. sing. in -ī or -e.
2. *Turris* has accusative *turrim* and ablative *turri* or *turre*.

b. NEUTERS

insigne, n., *decoration* animal, n., *animal* calcar, n., *spur*

STEMS	īnsigni-	animāli-	calcāri-
BASES	īnsign-	animāl-	calcār-

SINGULAR

TERMINATIONS

<i>Nom.</i>	īnsigne	animal	calcar	-e or —
<i>Gen.</i>	īnsignis	animālis	calcāris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	īnsignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	īnsigne	animal	calcar	-e or —
<i>Abl.</i>	īnsignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	īnsignium	animālium	calcārium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	īnsignibus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	īnsignibus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus

466.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

adventus, m., *arrival*cornū, n., *horn*

STEM adventu- BASE advent- STEM cornu- BASE corn-

TERMINATIONS

SINGULAR

MASC. NEUT.

<i>Nom.</i>	adventus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	adventūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	adventuī (ū)	cornū	-uī (ū)	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	adventum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	adventū	cornū	-ū	-ū

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

467.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION. *Ē*-STEMS

	diēs, m., <i>day</i>		rēs, f., <i>thing</i>	
STEM	diē-	BASE di-	STEM rē-	BASE r-
			SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs		rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī		reī	-ēī
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī		reī	-ēī
<i>Acc.</i>	diem		rem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	diē		rē	-ē
			PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs		rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum		rērum	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus		rēbus	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs		rēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus		rēbus	-ēbus

468.

SPECIAL PARADIGMS

	deus, m., <i>god</i>	domus, f., <i>house</i>	vīs, f., <i>strength</i>	iter, n., <i>way</i>
STEMS	deo-	domu-	vī- and vīri-	iter- and itiner-
BASES	de-	dom-	v- and vīr-	iter- and itiner-
			SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	domus	vīs	iter
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	domūs	vīs (rare)	itineris
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	domuī, -ō	vī (rare)	itinerī
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	domum	vim	iter
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	domō, -ū	vī	itinere
			PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	deī, dī	domūs	vīrēs	itinera
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deum	domuum, -ōrum	vīrium	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	deīs, dīs	domibus	vīribus	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	domōs, -ūs	vīrīs, -ēs	itinera
<i>Abl.</i>	deīs, dīs	domibus	vīribus	itineribus

a. The vocative singular of **deus** is like the nominative.

b. The locative of **domus** is **domī**

ADJECTIVES

469. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. *O-* AND *Ā-*STEMS*a.* ADJECTIVES IN *-us***bonus, good** STEMS **bono-** m. and n., **bonā-** f. BASE **bon-**

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

b. ADJECTIVES IN *-er***liber, free** STEMS **libero-** m. and n., **liberā-** f. BASE **liber-**

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

pulcher, pretty STEMS **pulchro-** m. and n., **pulchrā-** f. BASE **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

470.

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, another STEMS **alio-** m. and n., **aliā-** f. BASE **ali-**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aliūm	aliām	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

ūnus, one, only

STEMS **ūno-** m. and n., **ūnā-** f.

BASE **ūn-**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūniūs	ūniūs	ūniūs	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

a. For the complete list see § 108.

471. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. *I*-STEMS

I. THREE ENDINGS

	ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen, eager</i>			STEM ācri-	BASE ācr-	
	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

II. TWO ENDINGS

<i>omnis, omne, every, all</i>			STEM <i>omni-</i>	BASE <i>omn-</i>
SINGULAR			PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnīs, -ēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

III. ONE ENDING

pār, equal				STEM	pari-	BASE	par-
SINGULAR				PLURAL			
MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.		MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.	
Nom.	pār	pār		parēs		paria	
Gen.	paris	paris		parium		parium	
Dat.	parī	parī		paribus		paribus	
Acc.	parem	pār		parīs, -ēs		paria	
Abl.	parī	parī		paribus		paribus	

1. Observe that all *i*-stem adjectives have *-ī* in the ablative singular.

472.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

amāns, *loving* STEM amanti- BASE amant-

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantis, -ēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus

iēns, *going* STEM ienti-, eunti- BASE ient-, eunt-

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
<i>Gen.</i>	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
<i>Dat.</i>	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
<i>Acc.</i>	euntem	iēns	euntis, -ēs	euntia
<i>Abl.</i>	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

473.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE		
MASC.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
altus (alto-)	altior	altius	altissimus	-a	-um
liber (libero-)	liberior	liberius	liberrimus	-a	-um
pulcher (pulchro-)	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulcherrimus	-a	-um
audāx (audāci-)	audācior	audācius	audācissimus	-a	-um
brevis (brevi-)	brevior	brevius	brevissimus	-a	-um
ācer (ācri-)	ācrior	ācrius	ācerrimus	-a	-um

474.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

altior, *higher*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

	plūs, <i>more</i>		
<i>Nom.</i> ———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i> ———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i> ———	——	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i> ———	plūs	plūris (-ēs)	plūra
<i>Abl.</i> ———	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

475. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	——, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>
senex, senis, <i>old</i>	senior	maximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>similar</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>dissimilar</i>	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i>	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i>	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i>	exterior, <i>outer</i> , <i>exterior</i>	extrēmus } <i>outermost</i> , extimus } <i>last</i>
īferus, <i>below</i>	īferior, <i>lower</i>	īfimus } <i>lowest</i> īmus }
posterus, <i>following</i>	pōsterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus } <i>last</i> postumus }
superus, <i>above</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus } <i>highest</i> summus }
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i>]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i>]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior, <i>further</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest</i>

476. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (cārus), <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (miser), <i>wretchedly</i>	miserius	miserrimē
ācritēr (ācer), <i>sharply</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis), <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē

477. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
bene (bonus), <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male (malus), <i>ill</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum (multus), <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

478. NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting ūnus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

CARDINALS (How many)	ORDINALS (In what order)
1, ūnus, -a, -um <i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um <i>first</i>
2, duo, duae, duo <i>two</i>	secundus (or alter) <i>second</i>
3, trēs, tria <i>three,</i>	tertius <i>third,</i>
4, quattuor <i>etc.</i>	quārtus <i>etc.</i>
5, quīnque	quīntus
6, sex	sextus
7, septem	septimus
8, octō	octāvus
9, novem	nōnus
10, decem	decimus
11, ūndecim	ūndecimus
12, duodecim	duodecim
13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs)	tertius decimus
14, quattuordecim	quārtus decimus

CARDINALS

15, quīndecim
16, sēdecim
17, septendecim
18, duodēvigintī (octōdecim)
19, ūndēvigintī (novendecim)
20, vīgintī
21, { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī, etc.
30, trīgintā
40, quadrāgintā
50, quīnquāgintā
60, sexāgintā
70, septuāgintā
80, octōgintā
90, nōnāgintā
100, centum
101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.
120, centum (et) vīgintī
121, centum (et) vīgintī ūnus, etc.
200, ducentī, -ae, -a
300, trecentī
400, quadringentī
500, quīngentī
600, sescentī
700, septingentī
800, octingentī
900, nōngentī
1000, mille

ORDINALS

quīntus decimus
sextus decimus
septimus decimus
duodēvicensimus
ūndēvicensimus
vicensimus
{ vicensimus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vicensimus, etc.
tricensimus
quadrāgēnsimus
quīnquāgēnsimus
sexāgēnsimus
septuāgēnsimus
octōgēnsimus
nōnāgēnsimus
centēnsimus
centēnsimus (et) prīmus, etc.
centēnsimus vicensimus
centēnsimus (et) vicensimus prīmus
ducentēnsimus
trecentēnsimus
quadringentēnsimus
quīngentēnsimus
sescentēnsimus
septingentēnsimus
octingentēnsimus
nōngentēnsimus
millēnsimus

479. Declension of **duo**, *two*, **trēs**, *three*, and **mille**, *a thousand*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mille	milia
<i>G.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mille	milium
<i>D.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille	milibus
<i>A.</i>	duōs <i>or</i> duo	duās	duo	trīs <i>or</i> trēs	tria	mille	milia
<i>A.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille	milibus

NOTE. **Mille** is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of **ūnus** cf. § 470.

PRONOUNS

480.

PERSONAL

	ego, <i>I</i>		tū, <i>you</i>		suī, <i>of himself, etc.</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

Note that *suī* is always reflexive.

481.

DEMONSTRATIVE

Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings *-ius* and *-ī* in the gen. and dat. sing.

	ipse, <i>self</i>					
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

hic, this (here), he

<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

iste, this, that (of yours), he

<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istī'us	istī'us	istī'us	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

ille, that (yonder), he

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

is, this, that, he

<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

idem, the same

<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adem	idem	{ iī'dem eī'dem	eae'dem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
<i>Dat.</i>	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem	{ iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem
<i>Acc.</i>	eun'dem	ean'dem	idem	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem	{ iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem

NOTE. In the plural of *is* and *idem* the forms with two i's are preferred, the two i's being pronounced as one.

482.

RELATIVE

quī, who, which, that

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

483.

INTERROGATIVE

quis, substantive, who, what

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The interrogative adjective *quī, quae, quod*, is declined like the relative.

484.

INDEFINITES

quis and *quī*, as declined above,¹ are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of *quis* and *quī*.

quisque, each

	SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

485.

quīdam, a certain one, a certain

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has *quoddam* and the substantive *quiddam*.

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	{ quoddam quiddam (<i>subst.</i>)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'dam	cuius'dam	cuius'dam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	{ quoddam quiddam (<i>subst.</i>)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

¹ *qua* is generally used instead of *quae* in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrun'dam	quārun'dam	quōrun'dam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam

486. *quisquam*, substantive, *any one* (at all)

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'quam	cuius'quam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	quōquam

487. *aliquis*, substantive, *some one*. *aliquī*, adjective, *some*

	SINGULAR		ADJECTIVE		
	SUBSTANTIVE				
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
<i>Gen.</i>	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL FOR BOTH SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	aliquō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus

a. quis (quī), *any one, any*, is the least definite (§ 297. *b*). *aliquis* (aliquī), *some one, some*, is more definite than *quis*. *quisquam*, *any one* (at all), and its adjective *ūllus*, *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus, { sim	amātī, { sīmus
amāveris	amāveritis	sīs	sītis
amāverit	amāverint	-a, -um { sit	-ae, -a { sint

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem	amāvissemus	amātus, { essem	amātī, { essēmus
amāvisse	amāvissetis	essēs	essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent	-a, -um { esset	-ae, -a { essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, <i>love thou</i>	amāre, <i>be thou loved</i>
amāte, <i>love ye</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye loved</i>

FUTURE

amātō, <i>thou shalt love</i>	amātor, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>
amātō, <i>he shall love</i>	amātor, <i>he shall be loved</i>
amātōte, <i>you shall love</i>	_____
amantō, <i>they shall love</i>	amantor, <i>they shall be loved</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres. amāre, <i>to love</i>	amārī, <i>to be loved</i>	[<i>loved</i>]
Perf. amāvisse, <i>to have loved</i>	amātus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been</i>	
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	[amātum īrī], <i>to be about to be loved</i>	

PARTICIPLES

Pres. amāns, -antis, <i>loving</i>	Pres. _____
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to love</i>	Gerundive ¹ amandus, -a, -um, <i>to be loved</i>
Perf. _____	Perf. amātus, -a, -um, <i>having been loved, loved</i>

GERUND

Nom. _____
Gen. amandī, <i>of loving</i>
Dat. amandō, <i>for loving</i>
Acc. amandum, <i>loving</i>
Abl. amandō, <i>by loving</i>

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [amātum], <i>to love</i>
Abl. [amātū], <i>to love, in the loving</i>

¹ Sometimes called the future passive participle.

489. SECOND CONJUGATION. *Ē*-VERBS. *MONEŌ*PRINCIPAL PARTS *moneō*, *monēre*, *monuī*, *monitus*PRES. STEM *monē-* PERF. STEM *monu-* PART. STEM *monit-*

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

<i>moneō</i>	<i>monēmus</i>
<i>monēs</i>	<i>monētis</i>
<i>monet</i>	<i>monent</i>

<i>moneor</i>	<i>monēmur</i>
<i>monēris, -re</i>	<i>monēmini</i>
<i>monētur</i>	<i>monentur</i>

IMPERFECT

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

<i>monēbam</i>	<i>monēbāmus</i>
<i>monēbās</i>	<i>monēbātis</i>
<i>monēbat</i>	<i>monēbant</i>

<i>monēbar</i>	<i>monēbāmur</i>
<i>monēbāris, -re</i>	<i>monēbāmini</i>
<i>monēbātur</i>	<i>monēbantur</i>

FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

<i>monēbō</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>
<i>monēbis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>
<i>monēbit</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>

<i>monēbor</i>	<i>monēbimur</i>
<i>monēberis, -re</i>	<i>monēbimini</i>
<i>monēbitur</i>	<i>monēbuntur</i>

PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.**I have been (was) advised, etc.*

<i>monuī</i>	<i>monuimus</i>
<i>monuistī</i>	<i>monuistis</i>
<i>monuit</i>	<i>monuērunt, -re</i>

<i>monitus, -a, -um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	<i>monitī, -ae, -a</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
-------------------------	--	------------------------	--

PLUPERFECT

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

<i>monueram</i>	<i>monuerāmus</i>
<i>monuerās</i>	<i>monuerātis</i>
<i>monuerat</i>	<i>monuerant</i>

<i>monitus, -a, -um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$	<i>monitī, -ae, -a</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
-------------------------	--	------------------------	---

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

<i>monuerō</i>	<i>monuerimus</i>
<i>monueris</i>	<i>monueritis</i>
<i>monuerit</i>	<i>monuerint</i>

<i>monitus, -a, -um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	<i>monitī, -ae, -a</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
-------------------------	---	------------------------	---

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus, {	sim	monitī, {	sīmus
monueris	monueritis	-a, -um	sīs	-ae, -a	sītis
monuerit	monuerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

monuissēmus	monuissētis	monitus, {	essem	monitī, {	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	-a, -um	essēs	-ae, -a	essētis
monuisset	monuissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē, <i>advise thou</i>	monēre, <i>be thou advised</i>
monēte, <i>advise ye</i>	monēminī, <i>be ye advised</i>

FUTURE

monētō, <i>thou shalt advise</i>	monētor, <i>thou shalt be advised</i>
monētō, <i>he shall advise</i>	monētor, <i>he shall be advised</i>
monētōte, <i>you shall advise</i>	
monentō, <i>they shall advise</i>	monentor, <i>they shall be advised</i>

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> monēre, <i>to advise</i>	monērī, <i>to be advised</i>
<i>Perf.</i> monuisse, <i>to have advised</i>	monitus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been advised</i>
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to advise</i>	[monitum irī], <i>to be about to be advised</i>

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> monēns, -entis, <i>advising</i>	<i>Pres.</i> ———
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise</i>	<i>Ger.</i> monendus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised</i>
<i>Perf.</i> ———	<i>Perf.</i> monitus, -a, -um, <i>having been advised, advised</i>

GERUND

<i>Nom.</i> ———
<i>Gen.</i> monendī, <i>of advising</i>
<i>Dat.</i> monendō, <i>for advising</i>
<i>Acc.</i> monendum, <i>advising</i>
<i>Abl.</i> monendō, <i>by advising</i>

SUPINE (Active Voice)

<i>Acc.</i> [monitum], <i>to advise</i>
<i>Abl.</i> [monitū], <i>to advise, in the advising</i>

rēctus,	{	erō	rēctī,	{	erimus
-a, -um		eris	-ae, -a		eritis
		erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, -re	regāmini
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus, { -a, -um { sit	rēctī, { -ae, -a { sint
rēxeris	rēxeritis		
rēxerit	rēxerint		

PLUPERFECT

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus, { -a, -um	essem	rēctī, { -ae, -a	essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis		essēs		essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

rege, <i>rule thou</i>	regere, <i>be thou ruled</i>
regite, <i>rule ye</i>	regimini, <i>be ye ruled</i>

FUTURE

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule</i>	
reguntō, <i>they shall rule</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres. regere, <i>to rule</i>	regī, <i>to be ruled</i>
Perf. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>	rēctus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been ruled</i>
Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to rule</i>	[rēctum irī], <i>to be about to be ruled</i>

PARTICIPLES

Pres. regēns, -entis, <i>ruling</i>	Pres. ———
Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule</i>	Ger. regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled</i>
Perf. ———	Perf. rēctus, -a, -um, <i>having been ruled, ruled</i>

GERUND

Nom. ———	
Gen. regendī, <i>of ruling</i>	
Dat. regendō, <i>for ruling</i>	
Acc. regendum, <i>ruling</i>	
Abl. regendō, <i>by ruling</i>	

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [rēctum], <i>to rule</i>
Abl. [rēctū], <i>to rule, in the ruling</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT

audīrem	audirēmus	audīrer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, -re	audirēmini
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus, {	audītī, {
audīveris	audīveritis	-a, -um {	-ae, -a {
audīverit	audīverint	sim	sīmus
		sīs	sītis
		sit	sint

PLUPERFECT

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus, {	audītī, {
audīvisēs	audīvissetis	-a, -um {	-ae, -a {
audīvisset	audīvissent	essem	essēmus
		essēs	essētis
		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, <i>hear thou</i>	audīre, <i>be thou heard</i>
audīte, <i>hear ye</i>	audīmini, <i>be ye heard</i>

FUTURE

audītō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>	audītor, <i>thou shalt be heard</i>
audītō, <i>he shall hear</i>	audītor, <i>he shall be heard</i>
audītōte, <i>ye shall hear</i>	
audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>	audiuntor, <i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres. audire, <i>to hear</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i>
Perf. audīvisse, <i>to have heard</i>	audītus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been heard</i>
Fut. audītūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	[audītum irī], <i>to be about to be heard</i>

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiēns, -entis, <i>hearing</i>	Pres. ———
Fut. audītūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to hear</i>	Ger. audiendus, -a, -um, <i>to be heard</i>
Perf. ———	Perf. audītus, -a, -um, <i>having been heard, heard</i>

GERUND

Nom. ———	
Gen. audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>	
Dat. audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>	
Acc. audiendum, <i>hearing</i>	
Abl. audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>	

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [audītum], <i>to hear</i>
Abl. [audītū], <i>to hear, in the hearing</i>

492. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. CAPIŌ

PRINCIPAL PARTS capiŏ, capere, cēpī, captus

PRES. STEM cape- PERF. STEM cēp- PART. STEM capt-

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

capiŏ	capimus	ca'pior	ca'pimur
capis	capitis	ca'peris, -re	capi'minī
capit	capiunt	ca'pitur	capiun'tur

IMPERFECT

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiē'bar	capiēbā'mur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbā'ris, -re	capiēbā'minī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbā'tur	capiēban'tur

FUTURE

capiam	capiemus	ca'piar	capiē'mur
capies	capietis	capiē'ris, -re	capiē'minī
capiet	capient	capiē'tur	capien'tur

PERFECT

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.	captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, etc.
----------------------------	------------------------------------

PLUPERFECT

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.	captus, -a, -um eram, erās, erat, etc.
---------------------------------	--

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.	captus, -a, -um erō, eris, erit, etc.
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.	capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

IMPERFECT

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.	caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.
---------------------------------	--------------------------------------

PERFECT

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc.	captus, -a, -um sim, sīs, sit, etc.
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------

PLUPERFECT

cēpissē, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.	captus, -a, -um essem, essēs, esset, etc.
-----------------------------------	---

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d Pers. cape	- capite	capere	capimini
---------------	----------	--------	----------

FUTURE

<i>2d Pers.</i> capitō	capitōte	capitor	-----
<i>3d Pers.</i> capiuntō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	captus, -a, -um esse
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus, -a, -um esse	[captum irī]

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns, -ientis	<i>Pres.</i> -----
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i> capiendus, -a, -um
<i>Perf.</i> -----	<i>Perf.</i> captus, -a, -um

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> capiendī
etc.

SUPINE (Active Voice)

<i>Acc.</i> [captum]
<i>Abl.</i> [captū]

493.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS	I.	hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, <i>urge</i>
	II.	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
	III.	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
	IV.	partior, partīrī, partītus sum, <i>share, divide</i>

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -iō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	hortor	vereor	sequor	partior
	hortārīs, -re	verērīs, -re	sequeris, -re	partīris, -re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	partītur
	hortāmur	vērēmur	sequimur	partīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	partīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
<i>Impf.</i>	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābor	verēbor	sequare	partiar
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram
<i>F. P.</i>	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	horter	verear	sequar	partiar
<i>Impf.</i>	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	partīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	sequere	partīre
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	*hortātūrus esse	*veritūrus esse	*secūtūrus esse	*partītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	*hortāns	*verēns	*sequēns	*partiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	*hortātūrus	*veritūrus	*secūtūrus	*partītūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
<i>Ger.</i>	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND

*hortandī, etc.	*verendī, etc.	*sequendī, etc.	*partiendī, etc.
-----------------	----------------	-----------------	------------------

SUPINE

*[hortātum, -tū]	*[veritum, -tū]	*[secūtum, -tū]	*[partītum, -tū]
------------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------

IRREGULAR VERBS

494.

sum, am, be

PRINCIPAL PARTS sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

PRES. STEM	es-	PERF. STEM	fu-	PART. STEM	fut-
------------	-----	------------	-----	------------	------

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

sum, *I am*
 es, *thou art*
 est, *he (she, it) is*

PLURAL

sumus, *we are*
 estis, *you are*
 sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*
 erās, *thou wast*
 erat, *he was*

erāmus, *we were*
 erātis, *you were*
 erant, *they were*

FUTURE

<i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>
<i>eris, thou wilt be</i>	<i>eritis, you will be</i>
<i>erit, he will be</i>	<i>erunt, they will be</i>

PERFECT

<i>fuī, I have been, was</i>	<i>fuius, we have been, were</i>
<i>fuisti, thou hast been, wast</i>	<i>fuistis, you have been, were</i>
<i>fuit, he has been, was</i>	<i>fuērunt, } they have been, were</i>
	<i>fuēre, }</i>

PLUPERFECT

<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>
<i>fuerās, thou hadst been</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been</i>
<i>fuerat, he had been</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>
<i>fueris, thou wilt have been</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have been</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>
<i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

PERFECT

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

PLUPERFECT

<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

<i>2d Pers. Sing. es, be thou</i>
<i>2d Pers. Plur. este, be ye</i>

FUTURE

<i>2d Pers. Sing. estō, thou shalt be</i>
<i>3d Pers. Sing. estō, he shall be</i>
<i>2d Pers. Plur. estōte, ye shall be</i>
<i>3d Pers. Plur. suntō, they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. esse, to be</i>
<i>Perf. fuisse, to have been</i>
<i>Fut. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore,</i> <i>to be about to be</i>

PARTICIPLE

<i>futūrus, -a, -um, about to be</i>

495.

*possum, be able, can*PRINCIPAL PARTS *possum, posse, potuī, —*

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	possum	pos'sumus	possim	possī'mus
	potes	potes'tis	possīs	possī'tis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
<i>Impf.</i>	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possē'mus
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	poterimus	————	————
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
<i>F. P.</i>	potuerō	potuerimus	————	————

INFINITIVE

Pres. *posse* *Perf.* *potuisse*

PARTICIPLE

Pres. *potēns, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful*

496.

*prōsum, benefit*PRINCIPAL PARTS *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus*PRES. STEM *prōdes-* PERF. STEM *prōfu-* PART. STEM *prōfut-*

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	prōsum	prō'sumus	prōsim	prōsī'mus
	prōdes	prōdes'tis	prōsīs	prōsī'tis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
<i>Impf.</i>	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prodessē'mus
<i>Fut.</i>	prōderō	prōderimus	————	————
<i>Perf.</i>	prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
<i>Plup.</i>	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
<i>F. P.</i>	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus	————	————

IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d Pers. *prōdes, prōdeste* *Fut. 2d Pers.* *prōdestō, prōdestōte*

INFINITIVE

Pres. *prōdesse* *Perf.* *prōfuisse* *Fut.* *prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse*

FUTURE PARTICIPLE *prōfutūrus, -a, -um*

497. PRINCIPAL PARTS { *volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, will, wish*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, will not
mālō, mälle, mālui, —, be more willing, prefer

Nōlō and *mālō* are compounds of *volō*. *Nōlō* is for *ne* (*not*) + *volō*, and *mālō* for *mā* (from *magis, more*) + *volō*. The second person *vis* is from a different root.

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>volō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
	<i>vīs</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>māvīs</i>
	<i>vult</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>māvult</i>

PLURAL

	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nōlumus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>mālunt</i>
<i>Impf.</i>	<i>volēbam</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>volam, volēs, etc.</i>	<i>nōlam, nōlēs, etc.</i>	<i>mālam, mālēs, etc.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>voluī</i>	<i>nōluī</i>	<i>mālui</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>volueram</i>	<i>nōlueram</i>	<i>mālueram</i>
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>voluerō</i>	<i>nōluerō</i>	<i>māluerō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

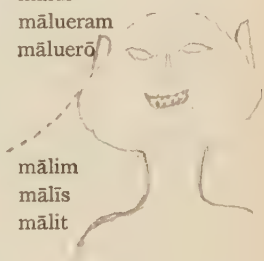
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>velim</i>	<i>nōlim</i>	<i>mālim</i>
	<i>velis</i>	<i>nōlis</i>	<i>mālis</i>
	<i>velit</i>	<i>nōlit</i>	<i>mālit</i>

PLURAL

	<i>velim'us</i>	<i>nōlim'us</i>	<i>mālim'us</i>
	<i>velitis</i>	<i>nōlit'is</i>	<i>mālit'is</i>
	<i>velint</i>	<i>nōlint</i>	<i>mālint</i>
<i>Impf.</i>	<i>vellem</i>	<i>nōllem</i>	<i>māllem</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>voluerim</i>	<i>nōluerim</i>	<i>māluerim</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>voluissem</i>	<i>nōluissem</i>	<i>māluissem</i>

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	—	<i>nōlī</i>	—
		<i>nōlite</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	—	<i>nōlitō, etc.</i>	—



INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse

PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i>	volēns, -entis
	nōlēns, -entis

498.

ferō, bear, carry, endure

PRINCIPAL PARTS ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

PRES. STEM fer- PERF. STEM tul- PART. STEM lāt-

		INDICATIVE	
		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror
	fers	fertis	ferimur
	fert	ferunt	ferimini
<i>Impf.</i>	ferēbam		feruntur
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferēbar
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		ferar, ferēris, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram		lātus, -a, -um sum
<i>F. P.</i>	tulerō		lātus, -a, -um eram
			lātus, -a, -um erō

		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	feram, ferās, etc.		ferar, ferāris, etc.
<i>Impf.</i>	ferrem		ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim		lātus, -a, -um sim
<i>Plup.</i>	tulissem		lātus, -a, -um essem

		IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres. 2d Pers.</i>	fer	ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut. 2d Pers.</i>	fertō	fertor	
<i>3d Pers.</i>	fertō	feruntō	feruntor

		INFINITIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre		ferrī
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse		lātus, -a, -um esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um esse		_____

		PARTICIPLES	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns, -entis	<i>Pres.</i>	_____
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i>	ferendus, -a, -um
<i>Perf.</i>	_____	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus, -a, -um

GERUND				SUPINE (Active Voice)	
<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī	<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum	<i>Acc.</i>	[lātum]
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō	<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō	<i>Abl.</i>	[lātū]

499.

 eō, *go*

PRINCIPAL PARTS eō, ire, īi (īvī), itum (n. perf. part.)

PRES. STEM ī- PERF. STEM ī- or īv- PART. STEM it-

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
				SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i>	eō	īmus	eam	<i>2d Pers.</i> ī	īte
	īs	ītis			
	it	eunt			
<i>Impf.</i>	ībam		īrem		
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō		—	<i>2d Pers.</i> itō	itōte
<i>Perf.</i>	īi (īvī)		ierim (īverim)	<i>3d Pers.</i> itō	euntō
<i>Plup.</i>	ieram (īveram)		īsem (īvissem)		
<i>F. P.</i>	ierō (īverō)				

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES	
<i>Pres.</i>	ire	<i>Pres.</i>	iēns, <i>gen.</i> euntis (§ 472)
<i>Perf.</i>	isse (īvisse)	<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus, -a, -um esse	<i>Ger.</i>	eundum

GERUND		SUPINE	
<i>Gen.</i>	eundī	<i>Acc.</i>	eundum
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō	<i>Abl.</i>	eundō

a. The verb eō is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as itur, itum est, etc.

b. In the perfect system the forms with v are very rare.

500.

 fiō, passive of faciō; *be made, become, happen*

PRINCIPAL PARTS fiō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	fiō	—	fiam	<i>2d Pers.</i> fī fite
	fis	—		
	fit	fīunt		
<i>Impf.</i>	fīēbam	fierem		
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam	—		

INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um	sum
<i>Plup.</i>	factus, -a, -um	eram
<i>F. P.</i>	factus, -a, -um	erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

factus, -a, -um	sim
factus, -a, -um	essem

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fieri
<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um esse
<i>Fut.</i>	[factum iri]

PARTICIPLES

<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um
<i>Ger.</i>	faciendus, -a, -um



CASTRÀ MURO FOSSAQVE MUNIUNTUR

APPENDIX II

501.

RULES OF SYNTAX

NOTE. The rules of syntax are here classified and numbered consecutively. The number of the text section in which the rule appears is given at the end of each.

Nominative Case

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative and answers the question Who? or What? § 36.

Agreement

2. A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject. § 28.

3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. § 76.

4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. § 81.

5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. § 65.

6. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb. § 215. *a*.

7. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause. § 224.

Prepositions

8. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the accusative or ablative case. § 52.

Genitive Case

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive and answers the question Whose? § 38.

10. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of *sum*, and is then called the *predicate genitive*. § 409.

11. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the *partitive genitive*. § 331.

12. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective. § 443.

Dative Case

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. § 45.

14. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs *crēdō*, *faveō*, *noceō*, *pāreō*, *persuādeō*, *resistō*, *studeō*, and others of like meaning. § 154.

15. Some verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *dē*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative. § 426.

16. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites. § 143.

17. The dative is used to denote the *purpose* or *end for which*; often with another dative denoting *the person or thing affected*. § 437.

Accusative Case

18. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative and answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* § 37.

19. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. § 214.

20. The *place to which* is expressed by *ad* or *in* with the accusative. Before names of towns, small islands, *domus*, and *rūs* the preposition is omitted. §§ 263, 266.

21. *Duration of time* and *extent of space* are expressed by the accusative. § 336.

22. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *showing*, and the like, may take a *predicate accusative* along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives. § 392.

Ablative Case

23. *Cause* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question *Because of what?* § 102.

24. *Means* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question *By means of what?* or *With what?* § 103.

25. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the ablative with *cum*. This answers the question *With whom?* § 104.

26. The ablative with *cum* is used to denote the manner of an action. *Cum* may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question *How?* or *In what manner?* § 105.

27. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference*. § 317.

28. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance. This is called the *ablative absolute*. § 381.

29. 1. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective. § 444:

2. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective. § 445.

30. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* something is true. § 398.

31. The *place from which* is expressed by *ā* or *ab*, *dē*, *ē* or *ex* with the separative ablative. This answers the question *Whence?* Before names of towns, small islands, *domus*, and *rūs* the preposition is omitted. §§ 264, 266.

32. Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning. This is called the *ablative of separation*. § 180.

33. The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *ab*. This is called the *ablative of the personal agent*. § 181.

34. The comparative degree, if *quam* is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative. § 309.

35. The *time when or within which* anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 275.

36. 1. The *place at or in which* is expressed by the ablative with *in*. This answers the question *Where?* Before names of towns, small islands, and *rūs* the preposition is omitted. §§ 265, 266.

2. Names of towns and small islands, if singular and of the first or second declension, and the word *domus* express the *place in which* by the locative. § 268.

Gerund and Gerundive

37. 1. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns. § 406. 1.

2. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual. § 406. 2.

38. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or the genitive with *causā*, is used to express purpose. § 407.

Moods and Tenses of Verbs

39. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, and secondary by secondary. § 358.

40. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the *purpose* of the action in the principal clause. § 349.

41. A *substantive clause of purpose* with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of *commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising*, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. § 366.

42. Verbs of *fearing* are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by *ut* (*that not*) or *nē* (*that or lest*). § 372.

43. *Consecutive clauses of result* are introduced by *ut* or *ut nōn*, and have the verb in the subjunctive. § 385.

44. *Object clauses of result* with *ut* or *ut nōn* are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about. § 386.

45. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the *subjunctive of characteristic or description*. § 390.

46. The conjunction *cum* means *when, since, or although*. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means *when* and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place. § 396.

47. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive, and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive. § 416.

48. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of *saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving*. § 419.

49. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive. § 418.

50. In an *indirect question* the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence. § 432.



DOMINA

APPENDIX III

REVIEWS¹

I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII

502. Give the English of the following words :²

NOUNS

agricola	dea	gallīna	pugna
ancilla	domina	iniūria	sagitta
aqua	fābula	īnsula	silva
casa	fera	lūna	terra
causa	filia	nauta	tuba
cēna	fortūna	pecūnia	via
corōna	fuga	puella	victōria

ADJECTIVES

alta	clāra	lāta	magna	nova	pulchra
bona	grāta	longa	mala	parva	sōla

VERBS

amat	est	labōrat	nārrat	nūntiat	portat	sunt
dat	habitat	laudat	necat	parat	pugnat	vocat

PREPOSITIONS

PRONOUNS

ADVERBS

CONJUNCTIONS

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLE

ā or ab	mea	cūr	et	-ne
ad	tua	deinde	quia	
cum	quis	nōn	quod	
dē	cuius	ubi		
ē or ex	cui			
in	quem			
	quid			

¹ It is suggested that each of these reviews be assigned for a written test.

² Proper nouns and proper adjectives are not repeated in the reviews. Words used in Cæsar's "Gallic War" are in heavy type.

503. Give the Latin of the following words :¹

Underline the words you do not remember. Do not look up a single word till you have gone through the entire list. Then drill on the words you have underlined.

<i>flight</i>	tells	<i>goddess</i>	<i>what</i>
story	<i>money</i>	<i>wild beast</i>	<i>way</i>
<i>new</i>	<i>calls</i>	<i>praises</i> (verb)	<i>bad</i>
lives (verb)	<i>with</i>	<i>alone</i>	loves
<i>away from</i>	<i>your</i>	<i>pleasing</i>	<i>pretty</i>
<i>who</i>	<i>then, in the</i>	<i>prepares</i>	<i>water</i>
<i>why</i>	<i>next place</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>great</i>
<i>forest</i>	<i>daughter</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>wreath</i>	<i>to whom</i>	<i>because</i>	<i>announces</i>
<i>deep, high</i>	<i>fortune</i>	<i>arrow</i>	<i>injury, wrong</i>
dinner	<i>famous</i>	<i>cottage</i>	<i>battle</i> (noun)
<i>out from</i>	<i>labors</i> (verb)	<i>gives</i>	<i>small</i>
<i>my</i>	<i>kills</i>	<i>girl</i>	<i>fight</i> s (verb)
<i>where</i>	<i>not</i>	<i>good</i>	maid
<i>trumpet</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>carries</i>	<i>down from</i>
lady, mistress	<i>and</i>	<i>chicken</i>	<i>long</i>
<i>whom</i>	<i>sailor</i>	<i>victory</i>	<i>cause</i>
<i>island</i>	farmer	<i>land</i>	<i>whose</i>
<i>wide</i>			

504. Review Questions. How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the antepenult? When is a syllable short? When is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What is the ending of the verb in the third person singular, and what in the plural? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the direct object? the possessor? What relation is expressed by the dative case? Give the rule for the indirect object. How are questions answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective? an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement? Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective. What are the three relations expressed by the ablative? What can you say of the position of the possessive pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective? What is the base? What is grammatical gender? What is the rule for gender in the first declension? What are the general principles of Latin word order?

¹ The translations of words used in Cæsar are in italics.

505. Fill out the following summary of the first declension :

THE FIRST OR Ā-DECLENSION	{	1. Ending in the nominative singular
		2. Rule for gender
		3. Case terminations { <i>a.</i> Singular
		4. Irregular nouns { <i>b.</i> Plural

II. REVIEW OF LESSONS IX-XVII

506. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

agrī cultūra	cōpia	fāma	galea	lacrima	patria
cōstantia	diligentia	fēmina	inopia	lōrica	praeda

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

ager	cibus	frūmentum	oppidānus	scūtum
amīcus	cōnsilium	gladius	oppidum	servus
arma (plural)	domicilium	lēgātus	pīlum	studium
auxilium	dominus	liberī	populus	tēlum
bellum	equus	magister	praemium	vīcus
carrus	filius	mūrus	proelium	vir
castrum	fluvius	numerus	puer	

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

aeger, aegra, aegrum	neuter, neutra, neutrum
alius, alia, aliud	noster, nostra, nostrum
alter, altera, alterum	nūllus, -a, -um
armātus, -a, -um	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum	sōlus, -a, -um
dūrus, -a, -um	suus, -a, -um
fīnitimus, -a, -um	tōtus, -a, -um
īnfirmus, -a, -um	tuus, -a, -um
legiōnārius, -a, -um	ūllus, -a, -um
liber, libera, liberum	ūnus, -a, -um
mātūrus, -a, -um	uter, utra, utrum
meus, -a, -um	validus, -a, -um
miser, misera, miserum	vester, vestra, vestrum
multus, -a, -um	

VERBS	DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN	ADVERBS
arat	is, ea, id	iam
cūrat		quō
dēsīderat	CONJUNCTIONS	saepe
mātūrat	an	
properat	-que	PREPOSITION
	sed	apud

507. Give the Latin of the following words :

<i>sword</i>	<i>war</i>	<i>shield</i> (noun)	<i>plan</i> (noun)
<i>corselet</i>	<i>number</i>	<i>whole</i>	<i>people</i>
<i>man</i>	<i>my</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>beautiful</i>
<i>your</i> (plural)	<i>free</i> (adj.)	<i>aid</i> (noun)	<i>no</i> (adj.)
<i>hasten</i>	<i>children</i>	<i>legionary</i>	<i>our</i>
<i>but</i>	<i>wall</i>	<i>weak</i>	<i>battle</i>
<i>among</i>	<i>grain</i>	<i>arms</i>	<i>spear</i>
<i>tear</i> (noun)	<i>weapon</i>	<i>master</i> (of school)	<i>food</i>
<i>village</i>	<i>one</i>	<i>friend</i>	<i>steadiness</i>
<i>strong</i>	<i>plow</i> (verb)	<i>neighboring</i>	<i>fatherland</i>
<i>long for</i>	<i>this or that</i>	<i>sick</i>	<i>town</i>
<i>and</i> (enclitic)	<i>already</i>	<i>lieutenant</i>	<i>fort</i>
<i>often</i>	<i>helmet</i>	<i>field</i>	<i>camp</i>
<i>want</i> (noun)	<i>river</i>	<i>report, rumor</i>	<i>neither</i> (of two)
<i>which</i> (of two)	<i>zeal</i>	<i>abode</i>	<i>much</i>
<i>care for</i>	<i>any</i>	<i>boy</i>	<i>agriculture</i>
<i>or</i> (in a ques- tion)	<i>he</i>	<i>his own</i>	<i>other</i>
<i>whither</i>	<i>son</i>	<i>alone</i>	<i>the other</i> (of two)
<i>wagon</i>	<i>slave</i>	<i>prize</i> (noun)	<i>hard</i>
<i>townsman</i>	<i>your</i> (singular)	<i>master</i> (owner)	<i>booty</i>
<i>wretched</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>carefulness</i>	<i>frequent</i>
<i>ripe</i>	<i>woman</i>	<i>plenty</i>	<i>armed</i>
	<i>horse</i>	<i>troops</i>	

508. Review Questions. How many declensions are there? What three things must be known about a noun before it can be declined? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what do they end in the plural? What two plural cases are always alike? When is the vocative singular not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun? With what does it agree? What is an appositive? Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive. How can we tell whether a noun in **-er** is declined like **puer** or like **ager**?

Decline **bonus, liber, pulcher**. How can we tell whether an adjective in **-er** is declined like **liber** or like **pulcher**? Why must we say **nauta bonus** and not **nauta bona**? Name the Latin possessive pronouns. How are they declined? With what does the possessive pronoun *aggr̃ee*? When do we use **tuus** and when **vester**? Why is **suus** called a *reflexive* possessive? What is the non-reflexive possessive of the third person? When are possessives omitted? What four uses of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed in English by *with*? Give an illustration in Latin of the *ablative of manner*; of the *ablative of cause*; of the *ablative of means*; of the *ablative of accompaniment*. What ablative regularly has **cum**? What ablative sometimes has **cum**? What uses of the ablative never have **cum**? Name the nine pronominal adjectives, with their meanings. Decline **alius, nullus**. Decline **is**. What does **is** mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun? What other important use has it?

509. Fill out the following summary of the second declension:

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION	{	1. Endings in the nominative
		2. Rule for gender
		3. Case terminations of nouns { <i>a.</i> Singular
		in -us { <i>b.</i> Plural
		<i>a.</i> The vocative singular of nouns in -us
		4. Case terminations of nouns { <i>a.</i> Singular
		in -um { <i>b.</i> Plural
		5. Peculiarities of nouns in -er and -ir
		6. Peculiarities of nouns in -ius and -ium

III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI

510. Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

disciplīna	poena	rēgīna	trīstitia
fōrma	potentia	superbia	

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

lūdus	ōrnāmentum	sacrum	socius	verbum
--------------	-------------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

amīcus	grātus	interfectus	molestus	septem
antīquus	idōneus	īrātus	perpetuus	superbus
finitimus	inimīcus	laetus	proximus	

ADVERBS		CONJUNCTIONS	PERSONAL PRONOUN
hodiē	mox	etiam	ego
ibi	nunc	nōn solum . . . sed etiam	
maximē	nūper		
VERBS			
CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
volō, -āre	dēleō, -ēre	agō, -ere	audiō, -īre
	doceō, -ēre	capīō, -ere	mūniō, -īre
	faveō, -ēre	crēdō, -ere	reperiō, -īre
	habeō, -ēre	dicō, -ere	veniō, -īre
	iubeō, -ēre	dūcō, -ere	
	moneō, -ēre	faciō, -ere	
IRREGULAR VERB	moveō, -ēre	fugiō, -ere	
sum, esse	noceō, -ēre	iaciō, -ere	
	pāreō, -ēre	mittō, -ere	
	persuādeō, -ēre	rapiō, -ere	
	sedeō, -ēre	regō, -ere	
	studeō, -ēre	resistō, -ere	
	videō, -ēre		

511. Give the Latin of the following words. In the case of verbs always give the first form and the present infinitive.

<i>ancient</i>	<i>not only . . .</i>	<i>nearest</i>	<i>move</i>	<i>training</i>
<i>come</i>	<i>but also</i>	<i>sacred rite</i>	<i>soon</i>	<i>take</i>
<i>resist</i>	<i>seven</i>	<i>queen</i>	<i>glad</i>	<i>have</i>
<i>see</i>	<i>ally, companion</i>	<i>flee</i>	<i>punishment</i>	<i>to-day</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>pride</i>	<i>obey</i>	<i>believe</i>	<i>unfriendly</i>
<i>fly</i>	<i>fortify</i>	<i>lately</i>	<i>advise</i>	<i>drive</i>
<i>I</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>constant</i>	<i>especially,</i>	<i>favor (verb)</i>
<i>proud</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>ornament</i>	<i>most of all</i>	<i>suitable</i>
<i>word</i>	<i>also</i>	<i>power</i>	<i>angry</i>	<i>pleasing</i>
<i>sadness</i>	<i>school</i>	<i>make, do</i>	<i>beauty</i>	<i>teach</i>
<i>find</i>	<i>hear</i>	<i>injure</i>	<i>say</i>	<i>neighboring</i>
<i>rule (verb)</i>	<i>hurl</i>	<i>now</i>	<i>command (verb)</i>	<i>destroy</i>
<i>be eager</i>	<i>persuade</i>	<i>annoying</i>	<i>there</i>	<i>friendly</i>
<i>for</i>	<i>only</i>	<i>lead</i>	<i>slain</i>	<i>seize</i>

512. Review Questions. What is conjugation? Name two important differences between conjugation in Latin and in English. What is tense?

What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses of the indicative. What are personal endings? Name those you have had. Inflect **sum** in the three tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? How is the present stem found? What tenses are formed from the present stem? What is the tense sign of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations? in the last two? Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem shortened? What are the three possible translations of a present, as of **pugnō**? Inflect **arō**, **sedēō**, **mittō**, **faciō**, and **veniō**, in the present, imperfect, and future active. What forms of **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation are like **audiō**? what like **regō**? Give the rule for the dative with adjectives. Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the dative. What does the imperative mood express? How is the present active imperative formed in the singular? in the plural? What three verbs have a shortened present active imperative? Give the present active imperative of **portō**, **dēlēō**, **agō**, **faciō**, **mūniō**.

IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII-XXXVI

513. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

āla **cūra** **mora** **porta** **prōvincia** **vīta**

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

animus **bracchium** **locus** **nāvigium** **periculum** **vīnum**
aurum **deus** **mōnstrum** **ōrāculum** **ventus**

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

adversus **commōtus** **dubius** **plēnus**
attentus **dēfessus** **maximus** **saevus**
cārus **dexter** **perfidus** **sinister**

ADVERBS

anteā **diū** **ita** **subitō**
celeriter **frūstrā** **longē** **tamen**
dēnique **graviter** **semper** **tum**

CONJUNCTIONS

autem **sī** **ubi**

PREPOSITIONS				
dē	per	prō	sine	
VERBS				
CONJ. I			CONJ. II	
adpropinquō	recūsō	superō	contineō	
nāvigō	reportō	temptō	egeō	
occupō	servō	vāstō	prohibeō	
postulō	stō	vulnerō	respondeō	
			teneō	
CONJ. III			IRREGULAR VERB	
discēdō	gerō	interficiō	absum	

514. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

<i>be away</i>	<i>moreover</i>	<i>boat, ship</i>	<i>without</i>	<i>before,</i>
<i>wind</i>	<i>greatest</i>	<i>sail (verb)</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>previously</i>
<i>through</i>	<i>oracle</i>	<i>life</i>	<i>suddenly</i>	<i>depart,</i>
<i>if</i>	<i>danger</i>	<i>save</i>	<i>dear</i>	<i>go away</i>
<i>savage</i>	<i>lay waste</i>	<i>full</i>	<i>always</i>	<i>province</i>
<i>wound (verb)</i>	<i>gate</i>	<i>refuse</i>	<i>god</i>	<i>care, trouble</i>
<i>wine</i>	<i>doubtful</i>	<i>heavily</i>	<i>hold in,</i>	<i>kill</i>
<i>delay</i>	<i>opposite,</i>	<i>monster</i>	<i>keep</i>	<i>reply</i>
<i>faithless</i>	<i>adverse</i>	<i>approach</i>	<i>afar</i>	<i>(verb)</i>
<i>right</i>	<i>demand</i>	<i>nevertheless</i>	<i>thus, so,</i>	<i>wing</i>
<i>seize</i>	<i>finally</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>as follows</i>	<i>mind,</i>
<i>quickly</i>	<i>attentive</i>	<i>be without,</i>	<i>arm (noun)</i>	<i>heart</i>
<i>before, in</i>	<i>then, at</i>	<i>lack</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>left (adj.)</i>
<i>behalf of</i>	<i>that time</i>	<i>moved</i>	<i>in vain</i>	<i>bear, carry on</i>
<i>battle</i>	<i>weary</i>	<i>gold</i>	<i>stand</i>	<i>try</i>
<i>down from or</i>	<i>overcome,</i>	<i>restrain,</i>	<i>bring back,</i>	<i>for a long</i>
<i>concerning</i>	<i>conquer</i>	<i>keep from</i>	<i>win</i>	<i>time</i>

515. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs :

sum	moveō	moneō	pāreō	veniō
dō	crēdō	capiō	dūcō	iaciō
teneō	rapiō	doceō	faciō	videō
iubeō	reperiō	regō	persuādeō	absum
agō	dēleō	faveō	sedeō	egeō
mittō	resistō	noceō	studeō	gerō
mūniō	audiō	dīcō	fugiō	stō

516. Review Questions. What are the personal endings in the passive voice? What is the letter -r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute the principal parts? What are the three different conjugation stems? How may they be found? What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive? What tense of the imperative have you learned? What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings of the perfect active indicative? What is the tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future perfect active? How is the present active infinitive formed? the present passive infinitive? How is the present active imperative formed? the present passive imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is the future active infinitive formed? What is a participle? How are participles in -us declined? Give the rule for the agreement of the participle. How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb **sum** in all moods and tenses as far as you have learned it (§ 494). What is meant by the separative ablative? How is the place *from which* expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation; for the ablative of the personal agent. How can we distinguish between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions that govern the ablative. What does the preposition **in** mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative? What are the three interrogatives used to introduce *yes*-and-*no* questions? Explain the force of each. What words are sometimes used for *yes* and *no*? What are the different meanings and uses of **ubi**?

V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV

517. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS					
FIRST DECLENSION		SECOND DECLENSION			
rīpa		‡	barbarī	castellum	
			captīvus	impedīmentum	
THIRD DECLENSION					
animal	calamitās	cliēns	dux	fōnŕ	ignis
arbor	calcar	collis	eques	frāter	imperātor
avis	caput	cōnsul	finis	homō	īnsigne
caedēs	cīvis	dēns	flūmen	hostis	iter

iūdex	māter	opus	pēs	sanguis	urbs
labor	mēnsis	ōrātor	pōns	soror	victor
lapis	mīles	ōrdō	prīnceps	tempus	virtūs
legiō	mōns	pater	rēx	terror	vīs
mare	nāvis	pedes	salūs	turris	

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

barbarus	dexter	sinister	summus
----------	--------	----------	--------

PREPOSITIONS

in with the abl.
in with the acc.
trāns

ADVERBS

cotidiē
numquam

CONJUNCTIONS

nec, neque
nec . . . nec, or neque . . . neque

VERBS

CONJ. I

cessō
cōnfirmō

oppugnō
vetō

CONJ. III

accipiō
incipiō

petō
pōnō

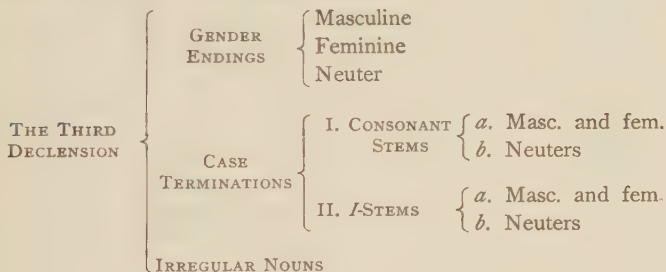
vincō
vīvō

518. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

<i>forbid</i>	<i>man-of-war</i>	<i>conquer</i>	<i>redoubt, fort</i>
<i>rank, row</i>	<i>judge</i>	<i>consul</i>	<i>sea</i>
<i>brother</i>	<i>defeat, disaster</i>	<i>mother</i>	<i>tower</i>
<i>force</i>	<i>fire</i>	<i>retainer</i>	<i>drill (verb)</i>
<i>across</i>	<i>tree</i>	<i>citizen</i>	<i>legion</i>
<i>savages</i>	<i>foot soldier</i>	<i>head</i>	<i>terror</i>
<i>horseman</i>	<i>receive</i>	<i>safety</i>	<i>into, to</i>
<i>never</i>	<i>general</i>	<i>assail,</i>	<i>right (adj.)</i>
<i>mountain</i>	<i>highest</i>	<i>storm</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>manliness,</i>	<i>fountain</i>	<i>begin</i>	<i>stone</i>
<i>courage</i>	<i>orator</i>	<i>march</i>	<i>blood</i>
<i>leader</i>	<i>neither . . . nor</i>	<i>decoration</i>	<i>labor (noun)</i>
<i>put, place</i>	<i>and not</i>	<i>bridge</i>	<i>king</i>
<i>time</i>	<i>left</i>	<i>bird</i>	<i>spur</i>
<i>savage, barba-</i>	<i>tooth</i>	<i>cease</i>	<i>chief</i>
<i>rous</i>	<i>soldier</i>	<i>man</i>	<i>slaughter</i>
<i>sister</i>	<i>month</i>	<i>river</i>	<i>strengthen</i>
<i>seek</i>	<i>city</i>	<i>work (noun)</i>	<i>foot</i>
<i>captive</i>	<i>victor</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>enemy</i>
<i>hindrance,</i>	<i>daily</i>	<i>skip</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>baggage</i>	<i>live (verb)</i>	<i>bank</i>	<i>father</i>

519. Review Questions. Give the conjugation of **possum**. What is an infinitive? What three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the English? What is the case of the subject of the infinitive? What is meant by a complementary infinitive? In the sentence *The bad boy cannot be happy*, what is the case of *happy*? Give the rule. Decline **quī**. Give the rule for the agreement of the relative. What are the two uses of the interrogative? Decline **quis**. What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed from the base? Are the stem and the base ever the same? How many declensions of nouns are there? Name them. What are the two chief divisions of the third declension? How are the consonant stems classified? Explain the formation of **lapis** from the stem **lapid-**, **mīles** from **milit-**, **rēx** from **rēg-**. What nouns have i-stems? What peculiarities of form do i-stems have, — masc., fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have **-ī** and **-e** in the abl. Decline **turris**. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Decline **mīles**, **lapis**, **rēx**, **virtūs**, **cōsul**, **legiō**, **homō**, **pater**, **flūmen**, **opus**, **tempus**, **caput**, **caedēs**, **urbs**, **hostis**, **mare**, **animal**, **vīs**, **iter**.

520. Fill out the following scheme :



VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV-LII

521. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

amīcītia
hōra
littera

annus
modus
nūntius
oculus

SECOND DECLENSION

rēgnum
signum
supplicium,
supplicium dare
supplicium sūmere dē
tergum,
tergum vertere
vestigium

THIRD DECLENSION

aestās	nox
corpus	pars
hiems	pāx
libertās	rūs
lūx,	sōl
prīma lūx	vōx
nōmen	vulnus

FOURTH DECLENSION

adventus	impetus
cornū	lacus
domus	manus
equitātus	metus
exercitus	portus
fluctus	

FIFTH DECLENSION

aciēs	rēs,	spēs
diēs	rēs gestae	
fidēs,	rēs adversae	
in fidem venīre	rēs secundae	
	rēs pūblica	

INDECLINABLE NOUN

nihil

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

dēnsus	prīstinus
invīsus	pūblicus
mīrus	secundus
paucī	tantus
prīmus	vērū

THIRD DECLENSION

ācer, ācris, ācre	gravis, grave
brevis, breve	incolumis, incolume
difficilis, difficile	omnis, omne
facilis, facile	pār, pār
fortis, forte	vēlōx, vēlōx

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL	DEMONSTRATIVE	INTENSIVE	INDEFINITE
ego	hic	ipse	aliquis, aliquī
nōs	īdem		quīdam
suī	ille		quis, quī
tū	iste		quisquam
vōs			quisque

ADVERBS

nē . . . quidem
ōlimpaene
quoquesatis
vērō

CONJUNCTIONS

itaque
nisi

PREPOSITIONS

ante
post
propterea

VERBS

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
conlocō	dēbeō	committō,	dēsiliō
convocō	exerceō	committere proelium	
cremō	maneō	dēcidō	
dēmōnstrō	placeō	ēripiō	
mandō	sustineō	sūmō,	
		sūmere supplicium dē	
		trādūcō	
		vertō	

522. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

<i>if not, unless</i>	<i>adversity</i>	<i>burn</i>	<i>peace</i>
<i>on account of</i>	<i>former, old-</i>	<i>that (of yours)</i>	<i>'back</i>
<i>unharmcd</i>	<i>time</i>	<i>before</i>	<i>turn the back,</i>
<i>public</i>	<i>all, every</i>	<i>you (plur.)</i>	<i>retreat</i>
<i>commonwealth</i>	<i>any one (at all)</i>	<i>light</i>	<i>night</i>
<i>leap down, dis-</i>	<i>this (of mine)</i>	<i>daybreak</i>	<i>hand, force</i>
<i>mount</i>	<i>heavy, serious</i>	<i>winter</i>	<i>lake</i>
<i>lead across</i>	<i>hateful, detested</i>	<i>attack</i>	<i>day</i>
<i>remain</i>	<i>true</i>	<i>line of battle</i>	<i>commit, intrust</i>
<i>call together</i>	<i>burn</i>	<i>army</i>	<i>a few only</i>
<i>friendship</i>	<i>snatch from</i>	<i>drill, train</i>	<i>sharp, eager</i>
<i>footprint, trace</i>	<i>letter</i>	<i>join battle</i>	<i>we</i>
<i>each</i>	<i>punishment</i>	<i>house, home</i>	<i>turn</i>
<i>fear (noun)</i>	<i>inflict punish-</i>	<i>midday</i>	<i>you (sing.)</i>
<i>hope</i>	<i>ment on</i>	<i>wonderful</i>	<i>I</i>
<i>therefore</i>	<i>suffer punish-</i>	<i>brave</i>	<i>signal</i>
<i>behind, after</i>	<i>ment</i>	<i>almost</i>	<i>summer</i>
<i>so great</i>	<i>liberty</i>	<i>the same</i>	<i>cavalry</i>
<i>equal</i>	<i>sun</i>	<i>some, any</i>	<i>wound</i>
<i>in truth, indeed</i>	<i>sustain</i>	<i>if any one</i>	<i>horn, wing</i>
<i>that (yonder)</i>	<i>take up, assume</i>	<i>self, very</i>	<i>country</i>
<i>a certain</i>	<i>hour</i>	<i>not even</i>	<i>second, favor-</i>
<i>fall down</i>	<i>reign, realm</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>able</i>
<i>owe, ought</i>	<i>messenger</i>	<i>dense</i>	<i>short</i>
<i>measure, mode</i>	<i>part, direction</i>	<i>point out, ex-</i>	<i>voice</i>
<i>eye</i>	<i>body</i>	<i>plain</i>	<i>formerly, once</i>
<i>name</i>	<i>harbor</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>arrival</i>
<i>wave, billow</i>	<i>faith, protection</i>	<i>first</i>	<i>come under the</i>
<i>thing, matter</i>	<i>of himself</i>	<i>arrange, station</i>	<i>protection of</i>
<i>exploits</i>	<i>also, too</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>swift</i>
<i>republic</i>	<i>sufficiently</i>	<i>year</i>	<i>nothing</i>
<i>prosperity</i>			

523. Review Questions. By what declensions are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say about the stem of adjectives of the third declension? Into what classes are these adjectives divided? How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective belongs? Decline *ācer*, *omnis*, *pār*. What are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of the fourth

or u-declension? What nouns are feminine by exception? Decline **adventus**, **lacus**, **cornū**, **domus**. Give the rules for the ordinary expression of the *place to which*, the *place from which*, the *place in which*. What special rules apply to names of towns, small islands, and **rūs**? What is the locative case? What words have a locative case? What is the form of the locative case? Translate *Galba lives at home*, *Galba lives at Rome*, *Galba lives at Pompeii*. What is the rule for gender in the fifth or ē-declension? Decline **diēs**, **rēs**. When is the long ē shortened? What can you say about the plural of the fifth declension? Decline **tuba**, **servus**, **pīlum**, **ager**, **puer**, **mīles**, **cōsul**, **flūmen**, **caedēs**, **animal**. How is the *time when* expressed? Name the classes of pronouns and define each class. Decline **ego**, **tū**, **is**. What are the reflexives of the first and second persons? What is the reflexive of the third person? Decline **it**. Translate *I see myself*, *he sees himself*, *he sees him*. Decline **ipse**. How is **ipse** used? Decline **īdem**. Decline **hic**, **iste**, **ille**. Explain the use of these words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite pronouns. Decline **aliquis**, **quisquam**, **quīdam**, **quisque**.

VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII-LX

524. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

aquila **fossa**

SECOND DECLENSION

aedificium **imperium** **spatium**
captīvus **negōtium** **vāllum**
concilium

THIRD DECLENSION

agmen	gēns	mors	regiō
celeritās	lātitudō	mulier	rūmor
cīvitās	longitudō	multitudō	scelus
clāmor	magnitudō	mūnitiō	servitūs
cohors	mēns	nēmō	timor
difficultās	mercātor	obses	vallēs
explōrātor	mille	opīniō	

FOURTH DECLENSION

aditus **passus**
commeātus

FIFTH DECLENSION

rēs frūmentāria

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

aequus	maximus	plūrimus	singulī
binī	medius	posterus	superus
ducentī	minimus	prīmus	tardus
duo	opportūnus	reliquus	ternī
exterus	optimus	secundus	ūnus
īferus	pessimus		

THIRD DECLENSION

alacer, alacris, alacre	humilis, humile	peior, peius
audāx, audāx	ingēns, ingēns	——, plūs
celer, celeris, celere	interior, interius	prior, prius
citerior, citerius	lēnis, lēne	recēns, recēns
difficilis, difficile	maior, maius	similis, simile
dissimilis, dissimile	melior, melius	trēs, tria
facilis, facile	minor, minus	ulterior, ulterius
gracilis, gracile	nōbilis, nōbile	

ADVERBS

ācritēr	magis	optimē	proximē
audācter	magnopere	parum	quam
bene	maximē	paulō	statim
facile	melius	plūrimum	tam
ferē	minimē	prope	undique
fortiter	multum	propius	

CONJUNCTIONS

atque, ac	quā dē causā
aut	quam ob rem
aut . . . aut	simul atque or
et . . . et	simul ac
nam	

PREPOSITIONS

circum
contrā
inter
ob
trāns

VERBS

CONJ. I

cōnor	moror
hortor	vexō

CONJ. II

obtineō	valeō
perterreō	vereor

CONJ. III

abdō	dēdō	patior	revertor
cadō	dēfendō	premō	sequor
cognōscō	ēgredior	proficīscor	statuō
cōnsequor	incendō	prōgredior	subsequor
contendō	incolō	quaerō	suscipiō
cupiō	īnsequor	recipiō	trādō
currō	occidō	relinquō	trahō

CONJ. IV

orior	pervenīō
-------	----------

525. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs :

<i>on account of</i>	<i>width</i>	<i>fear</i> (verb)	<i>leave</i>
<i>nearly</i>	<i>scout</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>abandon</i>
<i>keenly, sharply</i>	<i>cohort</i>	<i>greater, larger</i>	<i>be strong</i>
<i>thousand</i>	<i>tribe, nation</i>	<i>two by two</i>	<i>receive, recover</i>
<i>two</i>	<i>business</i>	<i>least</i> (adv.)	<i>terrify, frighten</i>
<i>opportune</i>	<i>by a little</i>	<i>opinion, expectation</i>	<i>dwell</i>
<i>remaining</i>	<i>somewhat</i>	<i>approach, entrance</i>	<i>state, citizen-</i>
<i>above</i> (adj.)	<i>crime</i>	<i>trader</i>	<i>ship</i>
<i>next</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>magnitude, size</i>	<i>valley</i>
<i>grain supply</i>	<i>equal</i>	<i>council, assembly</i>	<i>slavery</i>
<i>pace</i>	<i>move forward, advance</i>	<i>space, room</i>	<i>greatly</i>
<i>shout</i> (noun)	<i>multitude</i>	<i>either . . . or</i>	<i>best of all</i> (adv.)
<i>from all sides</i>	<i>woman</i>	<i>rise, arise</i>	<i>better</i> (adv.)
<i>against</i>	<i>desire</i> (verb)	<i>suffer, allow</i>	<i>well</i> (adv.)
<i>around</i>	<i>give over, surrender</i>	<i>press hard</i>	<i>very much</i>
<i>three</i>	<i>kill</i>	<i>fall</i>	<i>much</i>
<i>further</i>	<i>overtake</i>	<i>surrender</i>	<i>unlike</i>
<i>line of march</i>	<i>hasten, strive</i>	<i>set fire to</i>	<i>like</i> (adj.)
<i>rumor</i>	<i>hide</i>	<i>defend</i>	<i>slow</i>
<i>region</i>	<i>one</i>	<i>possess, hold</i>	<i>very greatly, exceedingly</i>
<i>fortification</i>	<i>first</i>	<i>delay</i> (verb)	<i>building</i>
<i>eagle</i>	<i>second, favorable</i>	<i>nearest</i> (adv.)	<i>mind</i> (noun)
<i>almost</i>	<i>two hundred</i>	<i>nearer</i> (adv.)	<i>easily</i>
<i>boldly</i>	<i>former</i>	<i>better</i> (adj.)	<i>easy</i>
<i>bravely</i>	<i>inner</i>	<i>well known, noble</i>	<i>recent</i>
<i>across</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>mild, gentle</i>	<i>huge, great</i>
<i>between, among</i>	<i>low</i>	<i>swift</i>	<i>bold</i>
<i>hither</i> (adj.)	<i>outward</i>	<i>eager</i>	<i>immediately</i>
<i>so</i>	<i>three by three</i>	<i>low</i> (adj.)	<i>as soon as</i>
<i>less</i>	<i>provisions</i>	<i>slender</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>more</i>	<i>speed</i>	<i>one by one</i>	<i>than</i>
<i>most</i>	<i>ditch</i>	<i>no one</i>	<i>best</i> (adj.)
<i>worst</i>	<i>wherefore or therefore</i>	<i>least</i> (adv.)	<i>greatest</i>
<i>difficulty</i>	<i>for this reason</i>	<i>little</i> (adv.)	<i>follow close</i>
<i>hostage</i>	<i>fear</i> (noun)	<i>learn, know</i>	<i>encourage</i>
<i>death</i>	<i>return</i>	<i>drag</i>	<i>annoy, ravage</i>
<i>command, power</i>	<i>inquire</i>	<i>undertake</i>	<i>hide</i>
<i>captive</i>	<i>set out</i>	<i>run</i>	<i>follow</i>
<i>or</i>	<i>move out, disembark</i>	<i>fix, decide</i>	<i>pursue</i>
<i>and</i>			<i>both . . . and</i>
<i>arrive</i>			<i>rampart</i>
<i>attempt, try</i>			
<i>length</i>			

526. Review Questions. What is meant by comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be compared? Compare **clārus**, **brevis**, **vēlōx**, and explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative. What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare **brevis** by adverbs. Decline the comparative of **vēlōx**. How are adjectives in **-er** compared? Compare **ācer**, **pulcher**, **liber**. What are possible translations for the comparative and superlative? Name the six adjectives that form the superlative in **-limus**. Translate in two ways *Nothing is brighter than the sun*. Give the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare **bonus**, **magnus**, **malus**, **multus**, **parvus**, **exterus**, **inferus**, **posterus**, **superus**. Decline **plūs**. Compare **citerior**, **interior**, **propior**, **ulterior**. Translate *That route to Italy is much shorter*. Give the rule for the expression of measure of difference. Name five words that are especially common in this construction. How are adverbs usually formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Compare the adverbs **cārē**, **līberē**, **fortiter**, **audācter**. What cases of adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from **facilis**? **multus**? **prīmus**? **plūrimus**? **bonus**? **magnus**? **parvus**? Compare **prope**, **saepe**, **magnopere**. How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty cardinals. Decline **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, **mille**. How are the hundreds declined? What is meant by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly used with this construction? What construction is used with **quīdam** and cardinal numbers excepting **mille**? Give the first twenty ordinals. How are they declined? How are the distributives declined? Give the rule for the expression of duration of time and extent of space. What is the difference between the ablative of time and the accusative of time? What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis of one. What form always has a passive meaning? Conjugate **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, in the active and passive.

VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI-LXIX

527. Review the vocabularies of the first seventeen lessons. See §§ 502, 503, 506, 507.

528. Review Questions. Name the tenses of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these tenses? What are the mood signs of the present subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative active differ in form? How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed? Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of **cūrō**, **dēlēō**, **vincō**, **rapiō**, **mūniō**. Inflect the

subjunctive tenses of *sum*; of *possum*. What are the tenses of the participles in the active? What in the passive? Give the active and passive participles of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *capiō*, *audiō*. Decline *regēns*. What participles do deponent verbs have? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles of *vereor*. How should participles usually be translated? Conjugate *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *fiō*.

What is the difference between the indicative and subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is purpose usually expressed in English? How is it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin purpose clause introduced? When should *quō* be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses? Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses of purpose? What construction follows *iubeō*? What construction follows verbs of *fearing*? How is consequence or result expressed in Latin? How is a result clause introduced? What words are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing the coming of a result clause? How may negative purpose be distinguished from negative result? What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic or description? How are such clauses introduced? Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin? Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs are two accusatives commonly found? What do these accusatives become when the verb is passive?



IMPERATOR MILITES HORTATUR

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The words in heavy type are used in Cæsar's "Gallic War."

LESSON IV, § 39

NOUNS

dea, *goddess* (deity)
 Diā'na, *Diana*
fera, *a wild beast* (ferce)
 Lātō'na, *Latona*
sagit'ta, *arrow*

VERBS

est, *he (she, it) is*; **sunt**, *they are*
necat, *he (she, it) kills, is killing,*
does kill

CONJUNCTION ¹

et, *and*

PRONOUNS

quis, interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., *who?* **cuius** (pronounced cōōi'yōōs, two syllables), interrog. pronoun, gen. sing., *whose?*

LESSON V, § 47

NOUNS

corō'na, *wreath, garland, crown*
 fā'bula, *story* (fable)
pecū'nia, *money* (pecuniary)
pugna, *battle* (pugnacious)
victō'ria, *victory*

VERBS

dat, *he (she, it) gives*
nārrat, *he (she, it) tells* (narrate)

CONJUNCTION ¹

quia or **quod**, *because*

cui (pronounced cōōi, one syllable), interrog. pronoun, dat. sing., *to whom?*
for whom?

LESSON VI, § 56

ADJECTIVES

bona, *good*
grāta, *pleasing*
magna, *large, great*
mala, *bad, wicked*

parva, *small, little*
pulchra, *beautiful, pretty*
sōla, *alone*

¹ A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.

NOUNS

ancil'la, *maidservant*
Iūlia, *Julia*

ADVERBS¹

cūr, *why*; nōn, *not*

PRONOUNS

mea, *my*; tua, *thy, your* (possessives)
quid, *interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc.*
sing., *what?*

-ne, the question sign, an enclitic (§ 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as *amat, he loves*, but *amat'ne? does he love? est, he is; estne? is he?* Of course -ne is not used when the sentence contains *quis, cūr*, or some other interrogative word.

LESSON VII, § 62

NOUNS

casa, -ae, f., *cottage*
cēna, -ae, f., *dinner*
gallī'na, -ae, f., *hen, chicken*
in'sula, -ae, f., *island* (pen-insula)

ADVERBS

dein'de, *then, in the next place*
ubi, *where*

PREPOSITION

ad, *to*, with acc. to express motion
toward

VERBS

ha'bitat, *he (she, it) lives, is living,*
does live (inhabit)
laudat, *he (she, it) praises, is prais-*
ing, does praise (laud)
parat, *he (she, it) prepares, is pre-*
paring, does prepare
vocat, *he (she, it) calls, is calling,*
does call; invites, is inviting,
does invite (vocation)

PRONOUN

quem, *interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., whom?*

LESSON VIII, § 69

NOUNS

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*
tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet* (tube)
via, -ae, f., *way, road, street*
(viaduct)

ADJECTIVES

alta, *high, deep* (altitude)
clāra, *clear, bright; famous*
lāta, *wide* (latitude)
longa, *long* (longitude)
nova, *new* (novelty)

¹ An *adverb* is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, *She sings sweetly; she is very talented; she began to sing very early.*

LESSON IX, § 77

NOUNS

bellum, -ī, n., *war* (re-bel)
cōstantia, -ae, f., *firmness, constancy, steadiness*
dominus, -ī, m., *master, lord* (dominate)
equus, -ī, m., *horse* (equine)
frumentum, -ī, n., *grain*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant, ambassador* (legate)
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus, Mark*

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall* (mural)
oppidānus, -ī, m., *townsman*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town*
pīlum, -ī, n., *spear* (pile driver)
servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant*
Sextus, -ī, m., *Sextus*

VERBS

cūrat, *he (she, it) cares for*, with acc.
properat, *he (she, it) hastens*

LESSON X, § 82

NOUNS

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend* (amicable)
Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*
patria, -ae, f., *fatherland*

populus, -ī, m., *people*
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village*

LESSON XI, § 86

NOUNS

arma, armōrum, n., plur., *arms, especially defensive weapons*
fāma, -ae, f., *rumor; reputation, fame*

galea, -ae, f., *helmet*
praeda, -ae, f., *booty, spoils* (predatory)
tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon of offense, spear*

ADJECTIVES

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, rough; unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome* (durable)

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*. As a noun, **Rōmānus**, -ī, m., *a Roman*

LESSON XII, § 90

NOUNS

filius, fili, m., *son* (filial)
fluvius, fluvī, m., *river* (fluent)
gladius, gladi, m., *sword* (gladiator)
praesidium, praesi'dī, n., *garrison, guard, protection*
proelium, proeli, n., *battle*

ADJECTIVES

finitimus, -a, -um, *bordering upon, neighboring, near to*. As a noun, **fīnitimī**, -ōrum, m., plur., *neighbors*
Germānus, -a, -um, *German*. As a noun, **Germānus**, -ī, m., *a German*
multus, -a, -um, *much; plur., many*

ADVERB

saepe, *often*

LESSON XIII, § 95

NOUNS

ager, agrī, m., *field* (acre)
cōpia, -ae, f., *plenty, abundance* (copious); plur., *troops, forces*
Cornēlius, Cornē'li, m., *Cornelius*
lōrī'ca, -ae, f., *coat of mail, corselet*

praemium, praemī, n., *reward, prize* (premium)
puer, puerī, m., *boy* (puerile)
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield* (escutcheon)
vir, virī, m., *man, hero* (virile)

ADJECTIVES

legiōnārius, -a, -um,¹ *legionary, belonging to the legion.* As a noun, **legiōnārii, -ōrum, m., plur.,** *legionary soldiers*
līber, libera, līberum, free (liberty). As a noun, **līberī, -ōrum, m., plur.,** *children* (lit. *the freeborn*)

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, pretty, beautiful

PREPOSITION

apud, among, with acc.

CONJUNCTION

sed, but

LESSON XIV, § 99

NOUNS

auxilium, auxili'li, n., *help, aid* (auxiliary)
castrum, -ī, n., *fort* (castle); plur., *camp* (lit. *forts*)
cibus, -ī, m., *food*

cōnsilium, cōnsi'li, n., *plan* (counsel)
diligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, industry*
magister, magistri, m., *master, teacher*²

ADJECTIVES

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, frequent

miser, misera, miserum, wretched, unfortunate (miser)

LESSON XV, § 107

NOUNS

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon*
inopia, -ae, f., *want, lack*; the opposite of *cōpia*
studium, studi, n., *zeal, eagerness* (study)

ADJECTIVES

armātus, -a, -um, armed
īnfirmus, -a, -um, weak, feeble (infirm)
validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy

¹ The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in *-ius* ends in *-iī* and the vocative in *-ie*; not in *-ī*, as in nouns. ² Observe that *dominus*, as distinguished from *magister*, means *master* in the sense of *owner*.

VERB

mātūrat, he (she, it) hastens. Cf. iam, already, now
properat

-que, conjunction, *and*; an enclitic (cf. § 16) and always added to the second of two words to be connected, as *arma tēla'que, arms and weapons*.

ADVERB

LESSON XVII, § 117

NOUNS

agrī cultūra, -ae, f., agriculture
domicilium, domicilī, n., abode,
dwelling place (domicile)
fēmina, -ae, f., woman (female)

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul
Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul
lacrima, -ae, f., tear
numerus, -ī, m., number (numeral)

ADJECTIVE

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature

ADVERB

quō, whither

VERBS

arat, he (she, it) plows (arable)
dēsīderat, he (she, it) misses, longs
for (desire), with acc.

CONJUNCTION

an, or, introducing the second half
of a double question, as Is he a
Roman or a Gaul, Estne Rōmānus
an Gallus?

LESSON XVIII, § 124

NOUNS

lūdus, -ī, m., school
socius, soci, m., companion, ally
(social)

ADJECTIVES

īrātus, -a, -um, angry, furious (irate)
laetus, -a, -um, happy, glad

ADVERBS

hodiē, to-day
ibi, there, in that place
mox, presently, soon, of the imme-
diate future

nunc, now, the present moment
nūper, lately, recently, of the imme-
diate past

LESSON XX, § 136

NOUNS

fōrma, -ae, f., form, beauty
poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty
potentia, -ae, f., power (potent)

rēgīna, -ae, f., queen (regal)
superbia, -ae, f., pride, haughtiness
trīstitia, -ae, f., sadness, sorrow

ADJECTIVES

septem, indeclinable, seven
superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty
(superb)

CONJUNCTIONS

nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only
. . . but also

LESSON XXI, § 140

NOUNS

sacrum, -ī, n., *sacrifice, offering, rite*
 verbum, -ī, n., *word* (verb)

VERBS

sedeō, -ēre, *sit* (sediment)
 volō, -āre, *fly* (volatīle)

ADJECTIVES

interfectus, -a, -um, *slain*
 molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome, annoy-
 ing* (molest)
 perpetuus, -a, -um, *perpetual, con-
 tinuous*

ego, personal pronoun, *I* (egotism). Always emphatic in the nominative.

LESSON XXII, § 146

NOUNS

disciplīna, -ae, f., *training, culture, discipline*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *ornament, jewel*

Gāius, Gāī, m., *Caius*, a Roman first name

Tiberius, Tibe'rī, m., *Tiberius*, a Roman first name

VERB

doceō, -ēre, *teach* (doctrine)

ADVERB

maximē, *most of all, especially*

ADJECTIVE

antīquus, -qua, -quum, *old, ancient* (antique)

LESSON XXVII, § 168

NOUNS

āla, -ae, f., *wing*

deus, -ī, m., *god* (deity)¹

mōnstrum, -ī, n., *omen, prodigy; monster*

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*

VERB

vāstō, -āre, *lay waste, devastate*

ADJECTIVES

commōtus, -a, -um, *moved, excited*
 maximus, -a, -um, *greatest* (maximum)

saevus, -a, -um, *fierce, savage*

ADVERBS

ita, *thus, in this way, as follows*
 tum, *then, at that time*

LESSON XXVIII, § 171

VERBS

respondeō, -ēre, *respond, reply*

servō, -āre, *save, preserve*

ADJECTIVE

cārus, -a, -um, *dear* (cherish)

CONJUNCTION

autem, *but, moreover, now*. Usually stands second, never first

NOUN

vīta, -ae, f., *life* (vital)

For the declension of deus, see § 468

LESSON XXIX, § 176

VERB

superō, -āre, conquer, overcome (insuperable)

NOUNS

cūra, -ae, f., care, trouble

locus, -ī, m., place, spot (location).

Locus is neuter in the plural and is declined **loca, -ōrum, etc.**

periculum, -ī, n., danger, peril

ADVERBS

semper, always

tamen, yet, nevertheless

PREPOSITIONS

dē, with abl., down from; concerning

per, with acc., through

CONJUNCTION

sī, if

LESSON XXX, § 182

VERBS

absum, abesse, irreg., be away, be absent, be distant, with separative abl.

adpropinquō, -āre, draw near, approach (propinquity), with dative¹

contineō, -ēre, hold together, hem in, keep (contain)

NOUNS

prōvincia, -ae, f., province

vīnum, -ī, n., wine

discēdō, -ere, depart, go away, leave, with separative abl.

egeō, -ēre, lack, need, be without, with separative abl.

interficiō, -ere, kill

prohibeō, ēre, restrain, keep' from (prohibit)

vulnerō, -āre, wound (vulnerable)

ADJECTIVE

dēfessus, -a, -um, weary, worn out

ADVERB

longē, far, by far, far away

LESSON XXXI, § 188

NOUNS

aurum, -ī, n., gold (oriole)

mora, -ae, f., delay

nāvigium, nāvi'gī, n., boat, ship

ventus, -ī, m., wind (ventilate)

VERB

nāvigō, -āre, sail (navigate)

ADJECTIVES

attentus, -a, -um, attentive, careful

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful (dubious)

perfidus, -a, -um, faithless, treacherous (perfidy)

ADVERB

anteā, before, previously

PREPOSITION

sine, with abl., without

¹ This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with *ad* and the accusative.

LESSON XXXII, § 193

NOUNS

animus, -ī, m., *mind, heart; spirit, feeling* (animate)
bracchium, **bracchi**, n., *forearm, arm*
porta, -ae, f., *gate* (portal)

ADJECTIVES

adversus, -a, -um, *opposite; adverse, contrary*
plēnus, -a, -um, *full* (plenty)

PREPOSITION

prō, with abl., *before; in behalf of; instead of*

ADVERB

diū, *for a long time, long*

LESSON XXXIV, § 200

ADVERBS

celeriter, *quickly* (celerity)
dēnique, *finally*

graviter, *heavily, severely* (gravity)
subitō, *suddenly*

VERB

reportō, -āre, -āvi, *bring back, restore; win, gain* (report)

LESSON XXXVI, § 211

dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum**, *right* (dextrous)

sinister, **sinistra**, **sinistrum**, *left*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain* (frustrate)

gerō, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus**, *bear, carry on; wear*; **bellum gerere**, *to wage war*
occupō, **occupāre**, **occupāvi**, **occupātus**, *seize, take possession of* (occupy)
postulō, **postulāre**, **postulāvi**, **postulātus**, *demand* (ex-postulate)
recūsō, **recūsāre**, **recūsāvi**, **recūsātus**, *refuse*
stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **status**, *stand*
temptō, **temptāre**, **temptāvi**, **temptātus**, *try, tempt, test; attempt*
teneō, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, —, *keep, hold* (tenacious)

The word **ubi**, which we have used so much in the sense of *where* in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. **ubi** = *when*, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as,
Ubi mōnstrum audivērunt, **fūgērunt**, *when they heard the monster, they fled*
2. **ubi** = *where*, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as,
Videō oppidum ubi Galba habitat, *I see the town where Galba lives*

Ubi is called a *relative conjunction* because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. *When* in the first sentence is equivalent to *at the time at which*; and in the second, *where* is equivalent to *the place in which*.

LESSON XXXVII, § 217

neque or nec, conj., *neither, nor*, castellum, -ī, n., *redoubt, fort* (castle);
and . . . not; neque . . . neque, cotidiē, adv., *daily*
neither . . . nor

cessō, cessāre, cessāvī, cessātus, *cease*, with the infin.
 incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, *begin* (incipient), with the infin.
 oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus, *storm, assail*
 petō, petere, petivī or petiī, petitus, *aim at, assail, storm, attack*; *seek, ask* (petition)
 pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *place, put* (position); castra pōnere, *to pitch camp*
 possum, posse, potuī, —, *be able, can* (potent), with the infin.
 vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *forbid* (veto), with the infin.; opposite of iubeō, *command*
 vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *conquer* (in-vincible)
 vivō, vivere, vixī, —, *live, be alive* (re-vive)

LESSON XXXIX, § 234

barbarus, -a, -um, *strange, foreign, barbarous*. As a noun, barbarī, -ōrum, m., plur., *savages, barbarians*
 dux, ducis, m., *leader* (duke). Cf. the verb dūcō
 eques, equitis, m., *horseman, cavalryman* (equestrian)
 iūdex, iūdicis, m., *judge*
 lapis, lapidis, m., *stone* (lapidary)
 miles, militis, m., *soldier* (militia)
 pedes, peditis, m., *foot soldier* (pedestrian)
 pēs, pedis,¹ m., *foot* (pedal)
 princeps, principis, m., *chief* (principal)
 rēx, rēgis, m., *king* (regal)
 summus, -a, -um, *highest, greatest* (summit)
 virtūs, virtūtis, f., *manliness, courage* (virtue)

LESSON XL, § 237

Caesar, -aris, m., *Cæsar*
 captivus, -ī, m., *captive, prisoner*
 cōsul, -is, m., *consul*
 frāter, frātris, m., *brother* (fraternity)
 hemō, hominis, m., *man, human being*
 impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance* (impediment); plur. impedimenta, -ōrum, *baggage*
 imperātor, imperātōris, m., *commander in chief, general* (emperor)

¹ Observe that e is *long* in the nom. sing. and *short* in the other cases.

legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*
 māter, mātris, f., *mother* (maternal)
 ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *row, rank* (order)

pater, patris, m., *father* (paternal)
 salūs, salūtis, f., *safety* (salutary)
 soror, sorōris, f., *sister* (sorority)

LESSON XLI, § 239

calamitās, calamitātis, f., *loss, disaster, defeat* (calamity)
 caput, capitis, n., *head* (capital)
 flūmen, flūminis, n., *river* (flume)
 labor, labōris, m., *labor, toil*
 opus, operis, n., *work, task*

ōrātor, ōrātōris, m., *orator*
 rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a stream)
 tempus, temporis, n., *time* (temporal)
 terror, terrōris, m., *terror, fear*
 victor, victōris, m., *victor*

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, *receive, accept*

cōnfirmō, cōnfirmāre, cōnfirmāvi, cōnfirmātus, *strengthen, establish, encourage* (confirm)

LESSON XLIII, § 245

animal, animālis (-ium¹), n., *animal*
 avis, avis (-ium), f., *bird* (aviation)
 caedēs, caedis (-ium), f., *slaughter*
 calcar, calcāris (-ium), n., *spur*
 cīvis, cīvis (-ium), m. and f., *citizen* (civic)
 cliēns, clientis (-ium), m., *retainer, dependent* (client)
 finis, finis (-ium), m., *end, limit* (final); plur., *country, territory*
 hostis, hostis (-ium), m. and f., *enemy* in war (hostile). Distinguish from

inimīcus, which means a *personal* enemy
 ignis, ignis (-ium), m., *fire* (ignite)
 īnsigne, īnsignis (-ium), n., *decoration, badge* (ensign)
 mare, maris (-ium²), n., *sea* (marine)
 nāvis, nāvis (-ium), f., *ship* (naval);
 nāvis longa, *man-of-war*
 turris, turris (-ium), f., *tower* (turret)
 urbs, urbis (-ium), f., *city* (suburb).
 An urbs is larger than an oppidum

LESSON XLIV, § 249

arbor, arboris, f., *tree* (arbor)
 collis, collis (-ium), m., *hill*
 dēns, dentis (-ium), m., *tooth* (dentist)
 fōns, fontis (-ium), m., *fountain, spring; source*
 iter, itineris, n., *march, journey, route* (itinerary)

mēnsis, mēnsis (-ium), m., *month*
 moenia, -ium, n., plur., *walls, fortifications*. Cf. mūrus
 mōns, montis (-ium), m., *mountain*;
 summus mōns, *top of the mountain*
 numquam, adv., *never*
 pōns, pontis, m., *bridge* (ponton)

¹ The genitive plural ending -ium is written to mark the i-stems. ² The genitive plural of mare is not in use.

sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood (sanguinary)

summus, -a, -um, *highest, greatest* (summit)

trāns, prep. with acc., *across* (transatlantic)

vīs (vīs), gen. plur. vīrium, f., *strength, force, violence* (vim)

LESSON XLV, § 258

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, eager* (acrid)

brevis, breve, *short, brief*

difficilis, difficile, *difficult*

facilis, facile, *facile, easy*

fortis, forte, *brave* (fortitude)

gravis, grave, *heavy, severe, serious* (grave)

omnis, omne, *every, all* (omnibus)

pār, gen. paris, *equal* (par)

paucī, -ae, -a, *few, only a few* (paucity)

secundus, -a, -um, *second; favorable*, opposite of *adversus*

signum, -ī, n., *signal, sign, standard*

vēlōx, gen. vēlōcis, *swift* (velocity)

conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, *arrange, station, place* (collocation)

dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus, *point out, explain* (demonstrate)

mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus, *commit, intrust* (mandate)

LESSON XLVI, § 261

adventus, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival* (advent)

ante, prep. with acc., *before* (ante-date)

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing of an army* (cornucopia); ā dextrō cornū, *on the right wing*; ā sinistrō cornū, *on the left wing*

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry*

exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack* (impetus);

impetum facere in, with acc., *to make an attack on*

lacus, -ūs, dat. and abl. plur. lacubus, m., *lake*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; band, force* (manual)

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor* (port)

post, prep. with acc., *behind, after* (post-mortem)

cremō, cremāre, cremāvī, cremātus, *burn* (cremate)

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus, *practice, drill, train* (exercise)

LESSON XLVII, § 270

Athēnae, -ārum, f., plur., *Athens*

Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth*

domus, -ūs, locative domī, f., *house, home* (dome). Cf. domicilium

Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva*

Pompēiī, -ōrum, m., plur., *Pompeii*, a city in Campania. See map

- propter**, prep. with acc., *on account of, because of*
rūs, rūris, in the plur. only nom. and acc. **rūra**, n., *country* (rustic)
committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *intrust, commit*; **proelium committere**, *join battle*
convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, *call together, summon* (convoke)
timeō, timēre, timuī, —, *fear*; *be afraid* (timid)
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *turn, change* (convert); **terga vertere**, *to turn the backs, hence to retreat*

LESSON XLVIII, § 276

- aciēs, -ēī**, f., *line of battle*
aestās, aestātis, f., *summer*
annus, -ī, m., *year* (annual)
diēs, diēī, m., *day* (diary)
fidēs, fideī, no plur., f., *faith, trust*; *promise, word*; *protection*; in **fidem venīre**, *to come under the protection*
fluctus, -ūs, m., *wave, billow* (fluctuate)
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*
hōra, -ae, f., *hour*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light* (lucid); **prīma lūx**, *daybreak*
merīdiēs, acc. **-em**, abl. **-ē**, no plur., m., *midday* (meridian)
nox, noctis (-ium), f., *night* (nocturnal)
prīmus, -a, -um, *first* (prime)
rēs, rei, f., *thing, matter* (real); **rēs gestae**, *deeds, exploits* (lit. *things performed*); **rēs adversae**, *adversity*; **rēs secundae**, *prosperity*
spēs, speī, f., *hope*

LESSON XLIX, § 283

- amīcītia, -ae**, f., *friendship* (amicable)
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore, accordingly*
littera, -ae, f., *a letter* of the alphabet; plur., *a letter, an epistle*
metus, metūs, m., *fear*
nihil, indeclinable, n., *nothing* (nihilist)
nūntius, nūntī, m., *messenger*. Cf. **nūntiō**
pāx, pācis, f., *peace* (pacify)
rēgnum, -ī, n., *reign, sovereignty, kingdom*
supplicium, suppli'ciī, n., *punishment*; **supplicium sūmere dē**, with abl., *inflict punishment on*; **supplicium dare**, *suffer punishment*. Cf. **poena**
placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus, *be pleasing to, please*, with dative. Cf. § 154
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take up, assume*
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *sustain*

LESSON L, § 288

corpus, corporis, n., *body* (corporal)
dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense*
idem, e'adem, idem, demonstrative
 pronoun, *the same* (identity)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pronoun,
self; even, very
mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful, marvel-*
ous (miracle)

ōlim, adv., *formerly, once upon a*
time
pars, partis (-ium), f., *part, region,*
direction
quoque, adv., *also.* Stands *after* the
 word which it emphasizes
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun* (solar)
vērus, -a, -um, *true, real* (verity)

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought* (debt)
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *snatch from*

LESSON LI, § 294

hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative pro-
 noun, *this* (of mine); *he, she, it*
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative pro-
 noun, *that* (yonder); *he, she, it*
invīsus, -a, -um, *hateful, detested,*
 with dative. Cf. § 143
iste, ista, istud, demonstrative pro-
 noun, *that* (of yours); *he, she, it*
libertās, -ātis, f., *liberty*
modus, -ī, m., *measure; manner,*
way, mode

nōmen, nōminis, n., *name* (nomi-
 nate)
oculus, -ī, m., *eye* (oculist)
prīstinus, -a, -um, *former, old-time*
(pristine)
pūblicus, -a, -um, *public, belonging*
to the state; rēs pūblica, rei pū-
blicae, f., the commonwealth, the
state, the republic
vestigium, vesti'gī, n., *footprint,*
track; trace, vestige
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice*

LESSON LII, § 298

incolumis, -e, *unharmed*
nē . . . quidem, adv., *not even.* The
 emphatic word stands between **nē**
 and **quidem**
nisi, conj., *unless, if . . . not*
paene, adv., *almost* (pen-insula)

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently* (satis-
 faction)
tantus, -a, -um, *so great*
vērō, adv., *truly, indeed, in fact.*
 As a conj. *but, however,* usually
 stands second, never first.

dēcīdō, dēcīdere; dēcīdī, —, *fall down* (deciduous)
dēsiliō, dēsīlire, dēsīluī, dēsultus, *leap down, dismount*
manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain*
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trādūctus, *lead across*

LESSON LIII, § 306

- aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle* (aquiline)
audāx, gen. **audācis**, adj., *bold, audacious*
celer, **celeris**, **celere**, *swift, quick* (celerity). Cf. **vēlōx**
explōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout, spy* (explorer)
ingēns, gen. **ingentis**, adj., *huge, vast*
medius, -a, -um, *middle, middle part of* (medium)
quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, *ask, inquire, seek* (question). Cf. **petō**
mēns, **mentis** (-ium), f., *mind* (mental). Cf. **animus**
opportūnus, -a, -um, *opportune*
quam, adv., *than*. With the superlative **quam** gives the force of *as possible*, as **quam audācissimī virī**, *men as bold as possible*
recēns, gen. **recentis**, adj., *recent*
tam, adv., *so*. Always with an adjective or adverb, while **ita** is generally used with a verb

LESSON LIV, § 310

- alacer**, **alacris**, **alacre**, *eager, spirited, excited* (alacrity)
celeritās, -ātis, f., *speed* (celerity)
clāmōr, **clāmōris**, m., *shout, clamor*
lēnis, **lēne**, *mild, gentle* (lenient)
mulier, **mulieris**, f., *woman*
multitūdō, **multitūdinis**, f., *multitude*
nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem** (gen. **nūllīus**, abl. **nūllō**, from **nūllus**), no plur., m. and f., *no one*
nōbilis, **nōbile**, *well known, noble*
noctū, adv. (an old abl.), *by night* (nocturnal)
statim, adv., *immediately, at once*
subitō, adv., *suddenly*
tardus, -a, -um, *slow* (tardy)
cupiō, **cupere**, **cupivī**, **cupitus**, *desire, wish* (cupidity)

LESSON LV, § 314

- aedificium**, **aedifi'ci**, n., *building, dwelling* (edifice)
imperium, **impe'ri**, n., *command, chief power; empire*
mors, **mortis** (-ium), f., *death* (mortal)
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of*. As a noun, m. and n. plur., *the rest* (relic)
scelus, **sceleris**, n., *crime*
servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery* (servitude)
vallēs, **vallis** (-ium), f., *valley*
abdō, **abdere**, **abdidī**, **abditus**, *hide*
contendō, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentus**, *strain, struggle; hasten* (contend)
occidō, **occidere**, **occidī**, **occisus**, *cut down, kill*. Cf. **necō**, **interficiō**
perterreō, **perterrēre**, **perterrui**, **perterritus**, *terrify, frighten*
recipiō, **recipere**, **recēpī**, **receptus**, *receive, recover; sē recipere*, *betake one's self, withdraw, retreat*
trādō, **trādere**, **trādidī**, **trāditus**, *give over, surrender, deliver* (traitor)

LESSON LVI, § 318

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, access; entrance*

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *citizenship; body of citizens, state (city)*

inter, prep. with acc., *between; among* (interstate commerce)

incolō, incolere, incoluī, —, transitive, *inhabit*; intransitive, *dwell*. Cf. habitō, vivō

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, *leave, abandon* (relinquish)

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *fix, decide* (statute), usually with infin.

nam, conj., *for*

obses, obsidis, m. and f., *hostage*

paulō, adv. (abl. n. of paulus), *by a little, somewhat*

LESSON LVII, § 326

aequus, -a, -um, *even, level; equal*

cohors, cohortis (-ium), f., *cohort, a tenth part of a legion, about 360 men*

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, *run* (course)

difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty*

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch* (fosse)

gēns, gentis (-ium), f., *race, tribe, nation* (Gentile)

negōtium, negōtī, n., *business, affair, matter* (negotiate)

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, district*

rūmor, rūmōris, m., *rumor, report*.

Cf. fāma

simul atque, conj., *as soon as*

suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, *undertake*

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, *drag, draw* (ex-tract)

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, *be strong; plurimum valēre, to be most powerful, have great influence* (value). Cf. validus

LESSON LVIII, § 332

commeātus, -ūs, m., *provisions*

lātitudō, -inis, f., *width* (latitude)

longitudō, -inis, f., *length* (longitude)

magnitūdō, -inis, f., *size, magnitude*

mercātor, mercātōris, m., *trader, merchant*

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification* (munition)

spatium, spatī, n., *room, space, distance; time*

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *learn*; in the perfect tenses, *know* (re-cognize)

cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōactus, *collect; compel* (cogent)

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *defend*

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsus, *set fire to, burn* (incendiary). Cf. cremō
 obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus, *possess, occupy, hold* (obtain)
 perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus, *come through, arrive*

LESSON LIX, § 337

agmen, agminis, n., *line of march, column*; primum agmen, *the van*;
 novissimum agmen, *the rear*

atque, ac, conj., *and*; atque is used
 before vowels and consonants, ac
 before consonants only. Cf. et and
 -que

concilium, concilii, n., *council, as-
 sembly*

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetii, a
 Gallic tribe*

passus, passus, m., *a pace, five
 Roman feet*; mille passuum, *a
 thousand (of) paces, a Roman
 mile*

quā dē causā, *for this reason, for
 what reason*

vallum, -i, n., *earthworks, rampart*

cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrus, *fall* (decadence)

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus, *surrender, give up*; with a reflexive pronoun,
surrender one's self, submit, with the dative of the indirect object

premō, premere, pressi, pressus, *press hard, harass*

vexō, vexāre, vexāvi, vexātus, *annoy, ravage* (vex)

LESSON LX, § 341

aut, conj., *or*; aut . . . aut, *either
 . . . or*

causā, abl. of causa, *for the sake of,
 because of*. Always stands after
 the gen. which modifies it

ferē, adv., *nearly, almost*

opiniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, supposi-
 tion, expectation*

rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, f.
 (lit. *the grain affair*), *grain supply*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear*. Cf. timeō

undique, adv., *from all sides*

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *attempt, try*

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, *move out, disembark*; prōgredior, *move
 forward, advance* (egress, progress)

moror, morārī, morātus sum, *delay*

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *arise, spring*; *begin*; *be born (from)* (origin)

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, *set out*

revertor, reverti, reversus sum, *return* (revert). The forms of this verb are
 usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., reverti

sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *follow* (sequence). Note the following com-
 pounds of sequor and the force of the different prefixes: cōsequor (*follow
 with*), overtake; insequor (*follow against*), pursue; subsequor (*follow
 under*), follow close after

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological meanings.

A

ā or **ab**, prep. with abl. *from, by, off*.

Translated *on* in *ā dextrō cornū*, *on the right wing*; *ā fronte*, *on the front* or *in front*; *ā dextrā*, *on the right*; *ā latere*, *on the side*; etc.

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hide, conceal*
ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead off, lead away*

abs-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus [ab(s), *off*, + caedō, *cut*], *cut off*

ab-sum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, *be away, be absent, be distant, be off*; with *ā* or *ab* and abl., § 501.32

ac, conj., see *atque*

ac-cipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [ad, *to*, + capio, *take*], *receive, accept*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp*; figuratively, *keen, active, eager* (§ 471)

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. *bitter, sour*

aciēs, -ēi, f. [ācer, *sharp*], *edge*; *line of battle*

ācriter, adv. [ācer, *sharp*], compared *ācrius*, *ācerrimē*, *sharply, fiercely*

ad, prep. with acc. *to, towards, near*.

With the gerund or gerundive, *to, for*

ad-aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make equal, make level with*

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to; move, induce*

ad-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go to, approach, draw near, visit*, with acc. (§ 413)

ad-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tulī, ad-lātus, *bring, convey; report, announce; render, give* (§ 426)

ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad, *to*, + faciō, *do*], *affect, visit*

adflīctātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of adflīctō, *shatter*], *shattered*

ad-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *dash upon, strike upon; harass, distress*

ad-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad, *to*, + habeō, *hold*], *apply, employ, use*

ad-hūc, adv. *hitherto, as yet, thus far*

aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, *approach*], *approach, access; entrance*. Cf. *adventus*

ad-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind to, fasten*

ad-loquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, dep. verb [ad, *to*, + loquor, *speak*], *speak to, address*, with acc.

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *manage, direct*

admīrātiō, -ōnis, f. [admīror, *wonder at*], *admiration, astonishment*

ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move to; apply, employ*

ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *come near, approach*, with dat.

ad-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be present; assist*; with dat., § 426

adolēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [part. of adolēscō, *grow*], *a youth, young man, young person*

adventus

adventus, -ūs, m. [ad, *to*, + veniō, *come*], *approach, arrival* (§ 466)

adversus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of advertō, *turn to*], *turned towards, facing; contrary, adverse*. rēs adversae, *adversity*

aedificium, aedifi'ci, n. [aedificō, *build*], *building, edifice*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedēs, *house*, + faciō, *make*], *build*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, feeble*
aequālis, -e, adj. *equal, like*. As a noun, aequālis, -is, m. or f. *one of the same age*

aequus, -a, -um, adj. *even, level; equal*
Aesōpus, -ī, m. *Aesop*, a writer of fables

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer*. initā aestāte, *at the beginning of summer*

aetās, -ātis, f. *age*

Aethiopia, -ae, f. *Ethiopia*, a country in Africa

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Africa*

Āfricānus, -a, -um, adj. *of Africa*.

A name given to Scipio for his victories in Africa

ager, agrī, m. *field, farm, land* (§ 462. c)

agger, -eris, m. *mound*

agmen, -inis, n. [agō, *drive*], *an army on the march, column*. primum agmen, *the van*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead; do, perform*. vitam agere, *pass life*

agricola, -ae, m. [ager, *field*, + colō, *cultivate*], *farmer*

agrī cultūrā, -ae, f. *agriculture*

āla, -ae, f. *wing*

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj. *active, eager*.

Cf. ācer

alacritās, -ātis, f. [alacer, *active*], *eagerness, alacrity*

ancilla

alacriter, adv. [alacer, *active*], comp. alacrius, alacerrimē, *actively, eagerly*

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*

alcēs, -is, f. *elk*

Alcmēna, -ae, f. *Alcmēna*, the mother of Hercules

aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. *some one, some* (§ 487)

alius, -a, -ud (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), adj. *another, other*. alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*. alii . . . alii, *some . . . others* (§ 110)

Alpēs, -ium, f. plur. *the Alps*

alter, -era, -erum (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), adj. *the one, the other* (of two). alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other* (§ 110)

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus, *high*], *height*

altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, tall, deep*

Amāzonēs, -um, f. plur. *Amazons*, a fabled tribe of warlike women

ambō, -ae, -ō, adj. (decl. like duo), *both*
amicē, adv. [amicus, *friendly*], superl. amicissimē, *in a friendly manner*

amiciō, -īre, —, -ictus [am-, *about*, + iaciō, *throw*], *throw around, wrap about, clothe*

amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, *friend*], *friendship*

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, *love*], *friendly*. As a noun, amicus, -ī, m. *friend*

ā-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send away; lose*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, like, be fond of* (§ 488)

amphitheātrum, -ī, n. *amphitheater*

amplus, -a, -um, adj. *large, ample; honorable, noble*

an, conj. *or*, introducing the second part of a double question

ancilla, -ae, f. *maidservant*

ancora

ancora, -ae, f. *anchor*
Andromēda, -ae, f. *Androm'eda*,
 daughter of Cepheus and wife of
 Perseus
angulus, -ī, m. *angle, corner*
anim-advertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [animus,
mind, + advertō, turn to], turn the
mind to, notice
animal, -ālis, n. [anima, *breath*], animal
 (§ 465. b)
animōsus, -a, -um, adj. *spirited*
animus, -ī, m. [anima, *breath*], *mind*,
heart; *spirit, courage, feeling*, in this
 sense often plural
annus, -ī, m. *year*
ante, prep. with acc. *before*
anteā, adv. [ante], *before, formerly*
antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, *before*],
former, ancient, old
aper, apri, m. *wild boar*
Apollō, -inīs, m. *Apollo*, son of Jupiter
 and Latona, brother of Diana
ap-pāreō, -ēre, -uī, — [ad + pāreō,
appear], *appear*
ap-pellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call by name,
name. Cf. nōminō, vocō
Appius, -a, -um, adj. *Appian*
ap-plicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, apply, direct,
turn
apud, prep. with acc. *among; at, at*
the house of
aqua, -ae, f. *water*
aquila, -ae, f. *eagle*
āra, -ae, f. *altar*
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, *sup-*
pose (§ 420. c). Cf. exīstimō, putō
arbor, -oris, f. *tree* (§ 247. 1. a)
Arcadia, -ae, f. *Arcadia*, a district in
 southern Greece
ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, be on fire,
blaze, burn

aurātus

arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep*
Arīcia, -ae, f. *Arīcia*, a town on the
 Appian Way, near Rome [rami
 ariēs, -etis, m. *battering-ram* (p. 221),
 arma, -ōrum, n. plur. *arms, armor*,
weapons. Cf. tēlum
 armātus, -a, -um, adj. [armō, *arm*],
armed, equipped
 arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, plow, till
 ars, artis, f. *art, skill*
 articulū, -ī, m. *joint*
 ascribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus [ad, in
addition, + scribō, write], enroll,
enlist
Āsia, -ae, f. *Asia*, i.e. Asia Minor
at, conj. *but*. Cf. autem, sed
Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur. *Athens*
Atlās, -antis, m. *Atlas*, a Titan who
 was said to hold up the sky
at-que, ac, conj. *and, and also, and*
what is more. atque may be used
 before either vowels or consonants,
 ac before consonants only
attentus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of at-
 tendō, direct (the mind) toward],
attentive, intent on, careful
at-tonitus, -a, -um, adj. *thunderstruck*,
astounded
audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness,
audacity
audācter, adv. [audāx, bold], compared
 audācius, audācissimē, boldly
 audāx, -ācis, adj. bold, daring
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare
 audiō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītus, hear, listen
 to (§§ 420. d, 491)
Augeās, -ae, m. *Auge'as*, a king whose
 stables Hercules cleaned
aura, -ae, f. *air, breeze*
aurātus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold],
adorned with gold

aureus

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, *gold*],
golden

aurum, -ī, n. *gold*

aut, conj. *or*. **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*

autem, conj., usually second, never
first, in the clause, *but, moreover,*
however, now. Cf. **at**, **sed**

auxilium, auxi'lī, n. *help, aid, assist-*
ance; plur. *auxiliaries*

ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn away, turn*
aside

avis, -is, f. *bird* (§ 243. 1)

B

ballista, -ae, f. *ballista*, an engine for
hurling missiles (p. 220)

balteus, -ī, m. *belt, sword belt*

barbarus, -ī, m. *barbarian, savage*

bellum, -ī, n. *war*. **bellum inferre**, with
dat. *make war upon*

bene, adv. [for *bonē*, from *bonus*], com-
pared *melius*, *optimē*, *well*

benignē, adv. [*benignus*, *kind*], com-
pared *benignius*, *benignissimē*, *kindly*

benignus, -a, -um, adj. *good-natured,*
kind, often used with dat.

binī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj.
two each, two at a time (§ 334)

bis, adv. *twice*

bonus, -a, -um, adj. compared *melior*,
optimus, *good, kind* (§ 469. a)

bōs, *bovis* (gen. plur. *boum* or *bovum*,
dat. and abl. plur. *bōbus* or *būbus*),
m. and f. *ox, cow*

bracchium, *bracchī*, n. *arm*

brevis, -e, adj. *short*

Brundisium, -ī, n. *Brundisium*, a sea-
port in southern Italy. See map

bullā, -ae, f. *bullā*, a locket made of
small concave plates of metal fas-
tened by a spring (p. 212)

casa

C

C. abbreviation for *Gāius*, Eng. *Caius*

cadō, -ere, *ce'cidī*, *cāsūrus*, *fall*

caedēs, -is, f. [*caedō*, *cut*], (*a cutting*
down), *slaughter, carnage* (§ 465. a)

caelum, -ī, n. *sky, heavens*

Caesar, -aris, m. *Cæsar*, the famous
general, statesman, and writer

calamitās, -ātis, f. *loss, calamity, defeat,*
disaster

calcar, -āris, n. *spur* (§ 465. b)

Campānia, -ae, f. *Campania*, a dis-
trict of central Italy. See map

Campānus, -a, -um, adj. *of Campania*

campus, -ī, m. *plain, field*, esp. the
Campus Martius, along the Tiber
just outside the walls of Rome

canis, -is, m. and f. *dog*

canō, -ere, *ce'cinī*, —, *sing*

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*canō*, *sing*],
sing

Capēnus, -a, -um, adj. *of Capēna*, esp.
the *Porta Capē'na*, the gate at Rome
leading to the Appian Way

capīō, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*, *take, seize,*
capture (§ 492)

Capitōlinus, -a, -um, adj. *belonging*
to the Capitol, Capitoline

Capitōlium, *Capitō'lī*, n. [*caput*,
head], the *Capitol*, the hill at Rome
on which stood the temple of

Jupiter Capitoline and the citadel

capsa, -ae, f. *box* for books

captīvus, -ī, m. [*capīō*, *take*], *captive*

Capua, -ae, f. *Capua*, a large city of
Campania. See map

caput, -itis, n. *head* (§ 464. 2. b)

carcer, -eris, m. *prison, jail*

carrus, -ī, m. *cart, wagon*

cārus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, precious*

casa, -ae, f. *hut, cottage*

castellum

castellum, -ī, n. [dim. of *castrum*, *fort*], *redoubt, fort*
castrum, -ī, n. *fort*. Usually in the plural, *castra*, -ōrum, a *military camp*. *castra pōnere*, to *pitch camp*
cāsus, -ūs, m. [*cadō*, *fall*], *chance; misfortune, loss*
catapulta, -ae, f. *catapult*, an engine for hurling stones
catēna, -ae, f. *chain*
caupōna, -ae, f. *inn*
causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason*. *quā dē causā*, for *this reason*
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *give way, retire*
celer, -eris, -ere, adj. *swift, fleet*
celeritās, -ātis, f. [*celer*, *swift*], *swiftness, speed*
celeriter, adv. [*celer*, *swift*], compared *celerius*, *celerrimē*, *swiftly*
cēna, -ae, f. *dinner*
centum, indecl. numeral adj. *hundred*
centuriō, -ōnis, m. *centurion, captain*
Cēpheus (dissyl.), -eī (acc. *Cēphea*), m. *Cepheus*, a king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda
Cerberus, -ī, m. *Cerberus*, the fabled three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to Hades
certāmen, -inis, n. [*certō*, *struggle*], *struggle, contest, rivalry*
certē, adv. [*certus*, *sure*], compared *certius*, *certissimē*, *surely, certainly*
certus, -a, -um, adj. *fixed, certain, sure*. *aliquem certiōrem facere* (to *make some one more certain*), to *inform some one*
cervus, -ī, m. *stag, deer*
cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delay, cease*
cibāria, -ōrum, n. plur. *food, provisions*
cibus, -ī, m. *food, victuals*

collum

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Cimbri*
Cimbricus, -a, -um, adj. *Cimbrian*
cīnctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of *cingō*, *surround*], *girt, surrounded*
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *gird, surround*
circiter, adv. *about*
circum, prep. with acc. *around*
circum'-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *place around, surround, inclose*
circum'-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go around*
circum-sistō, -ere, circum'-stetī, —, *stand around, surround*
circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (come around), *surround*
citerior, -ius, adj. in comp., superl. *citimus*, *hither, nearer* (§ 475)
cīvīlis, -e, adj. [*civis*], *civil*
cīvis, -is, m. and f. *citizen* (§ 243. 1)
cīvītās, -ātis, f. [*civis*, *citizen*], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship*
clāmor, -ōris, m. *shout, cry*
clārus, -a, -um, adj. *clear; famous, renowned; bright, shining*
classis, -is, f. *fleet*
claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut, close*
clāvus, -ī, m. *stripe*
cliēns, -entis, m. *dependent, retainer, client* (§ 465. a)
Cocles, -itis, m. (*blind in one eye*), *Cocles*, the surname of Horatius
co-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, *learn, know, understand*. Cf. *sciō* (§ 420. b)
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus [*co(m)-, together, + agō, drive*], (*drive together*), *collect; compel, drive*
cohors, cohortis, f. *cohort*, the tenth part of a legion, about 360 men
collis, -is, m. *hill*. in *summō colle*, on *top of the hill* (§ 247. 2. a)
collum, -ī, n. *neck*

colō

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *cultivate, till; honor, worship; devote one's self to*

columna, -ae, f. *column, pillar*

com- (col-, con-, cor-, co-), a prefix, *together, with*, or intensifying the meaning of the root word

coma, -ae, f. *hair*

comes, -itis, m. and f. [com-, *together*, + eō, *go*], *companion, comrade*

comitātus, -ūs, m. [comitor, *accompany*], *escort, company*

comitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb [comes, *companion*], *accompany*

com-meātus, -ūs, m. *supplies*

com-minus, adv. [com-, *together*, + manus, *hand*], *hand to hand*

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *join together; commit, intrust. proelium*

committere, *join battle. sē committere* with dat., *trust one's self to*

commodē, adv. [commodus, *fit*], compared commodius, commodissimē, *conveniently, fitly*

commodus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit*

com-mōtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of com-moveō, *move*], *aroused, moved*

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + parō, *prepare*], *prepare; provide, get*

com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus [com-, intensive, + pleō, *fill*], *fill up*

complexus, -ūs, m. *embrace*

com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [com-, *together*, + premō, *press*], *press together, grasp, seize*

con-cidō, -ere, -cidi, — [com-, intensive, + cadō, *fall*], *fall down*

concilium, concīlī, n. *meeting, council*

con-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus [com-, intensive, + claudō, *close*], *shut up, close; end, finish*

cōn-scendō

con-currō, -ere, -curri, -cursus [com-, *together*, + currō, *run*], *run together; rally, gather*

condiciō, -ōnis, f. [com-, *together*, + dicō, *talk*], *agreement, condition, terms*

con-dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pardon*

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *hire*

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *bring together. sē cōnferre*, *betake one's self*

cōn-fertus, -a, -um, adj. *crowded, thick*

cōn-festim, adv. *immediately*

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [com-, *completely*, + faciō, *do*], *make, complete, accomplish, finish*

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make firm, establish, strengthen, affirm, assert*

cōn-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, *flow together*

cōn-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *flee for refuge, flee*

con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [com-, intensive, + iaciō, *throw*], *hurl*

con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus [com-, *together*, + iungō, *join*], *join together, unite*

con-iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, *together*, + iūrō, *swear*], *unite by oath, conspire*

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, *together*, + locō, *place*], *arrange, place, station*

conloquium, conlo'quī, n. [com-, *together*, + loquor, *speak*], *conversation, conference*

cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, *endeavor, attempt, try*

cōn-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus [com-, intensive, + scandō, *climb*], *climb up, ascend. nāvem cōnscendere*, *embark, go on board*

cōn-scribō

cōn-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [com-, together, + scribō, write], (write together), enroll, enlist

cōn-secrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, intensive, + sacrō, consecrate], consecrate, devote

cōn-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [com-, intensive, + sequor, follow], pursue; overtake; win

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, intensive, + servō, save], preserve, save

cōnsilium, cōnsiliū, n. plan, purpose, design; wisdom

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitus [com-, intensive, + sistō, cause to stand], stand firmly, halt, take one's stand

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus [com-, intensive, + spiciō, spy], look at attentively, perceive, see

cōnstantia, -ae, f. firmness, steadiness, perseverance

cōn-stituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [com-, intensive, + statuō, set], establish, determine, resolve

cōn-stō, -āre, -stiti, -stāturus [com-, together, + stō, stand], agree; be certain; consist of

cōnsul, -ulis, m. consul (§ 464. 2. a)

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus [com-, intensive, + sūmō, take], consume, use up

con-tendō, -ere, -di, -tus, strain; hasten; fight, contend, struggle

con-tineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus [com-, together, + teneō, hold], hold together, hem in, contain; restrain

contrā, prep. with acc. against, contrary to

con-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctus [com-, together, + trahō, draw], draw together; of sails, shorten, furl

crēscō

contrōversia, -ae, f. dispute, quarrel

con-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus [com-, together, + veniō, come], come together, meet, assemble

con-vertō, -ere, -verti, -versus [com-, intensive, + vertō, turn], turn

cōn-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, together, + vocō, call], call together

co-orior, -iri, -ortus sum, dep. verb [com-, intensive, + orior, rise], rise, break forth

cōpia, -ae, f. [com-, intensive, + ops, wealth], abundance, wealth, plenty.

Plur. cōpiae, -ārum, troops

coquō, -ere, coxi, coctus, cook

Corinthus, -i, f. Corinth, the famous city on the Isthmus of Corinth

Cornēlia, -ae, f. Cornelia, daughter of Scipio and mother of the Gracchi

Cornēlius, Cornēli, m. Cornelius, a Roman name

cornū, -ūs, n. horn; wing of an army. ā + dextrō cornū, on the right wing (§ 466)

corōna, -ae, f. garland, wreath; crown

corōnātus, -a, -um, adj. crowned

corpus, -oris, n. body

cor-ripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptus [com-, intensive, + rapiō, seize], seize, grasp

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. daily

cotīdiē, adv. daily

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj. thick, crowded, numerous, frequent

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, trust, believe, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, burn

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make; elect, appoint

Creōn, -ontis, m. Creon, a king of Corinth

crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētus, rise, grow, increase

Crēta

Crēta, -ae, f. *Crete*, a large island in the Mediterranean

Crētaeus, -a, -um, adj. *Cretan*

crūs, crūris, n. *leg*

crūstulum, -ī, n. *pastry, cake*

cubīle, -is, n. *bed*

cultūra, -ae, f. *culture, cultivation*

cum, conj. with the indic. or subjv. *when; since; although* (§ 501. 46)

cum, prep. with abl. *with* (§ 209)

cupidē, adv. [*cupidus, desirous*], compared *cupidius, cupidissimē, eagerly*

cupiditās, -ātis, f. [*cupidus, desirous*], *desire, longing*

cupiō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -ītus, *desire, wish*. Cf. volō

cūr, adv. *why, wherefore*

cūra, -ae, f. *care, pains; anxiety*

cūria, -ae, f. *senate house*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*cūra, care*], *care for, attend to, look after*

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *run*

currus, -ūs, m. *chariot*

cursus, -ūs, m. *course*

custōdiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus [*custōs, guard*], *guard, watch*

D

Daedalus, -ī, m. *Dæd'alus*, the supposed inventor of the first flying machine

Dāvus, -ī, m. *Davus*, name of a slave

dē, prep. with abl. *down from, from; concerning, about, for* (§ 209). quā

dē causā, *for this reason, wherefore*

dea, -ae, f. *goddess* (§ 461. a)

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus [*dē, from, + habeō, hold*], *owe, ought, should*

decem, indecl. numeral adj. *ten*

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus [*dē, from, + cernō, separate*], *decide, decree*

dēnsus

dē-cidō, -ere, -cidī, — [dē, down, + cadō, fall], *fall down*

decimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. *tenth*

dēclivis, -e, adj. *sloping downward*

dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, surrender*. sē dēdere, *surrender one's self*

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [*dē, down, + dūcō, lead*], *lead down, escort*

dē-fendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus, *ward off, repel, defend*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [*dē, down, + ferō, bring*], *bring down; report, announce* (§ 426)

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary*

dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [*dē, from, + faciō, make*], *fail, be wanting; revolt from*

dē-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus [*dē, down, + figō, fasten*], *fasten, fix*

dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [*dē, down, + iaciō, hurl*], *hurl down; bring down; kill*

de-inde, adv. (*from thence*), *then, in the next place*

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delight*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *blot out, destroy*

dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *weigh, deliberate, ponder*

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*dē, from, + legō, gather*], *choose, select*

Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. *Delphic*

dēmīssus, -a, -um [part. of dēmīttō, *send down*], *downcast, humble*

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*dē, out, + mōnstrō, point*], *point out, show*

dēmum, adv. *at last, not till then*. tum dēmum, *then at last*

dēnique, adv. *at last, finally*. Cf. postrēmō

dēns, dentis, m. *tooth* (§ 247. 2. a)

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj. *dense, thick*

dē-pendeō

dē-pendeō, -ēre, —, — [dē, down, + pendeō, hang], hang from, hang down

dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dē, intensive, + plōrō, wail], bewail, deplore

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [dē, down, + pōnō, put], put down

dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -scēnsus [dē, down, + scandō, climb], climb down, descend

dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [dē, down, + scribō, write], write down

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, long for

dē-siliō, -īre, -uī, -sultus [dē, down, + salio, leap], leap down

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dē, away from, + spērō, hope], despair

dē-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus [dē, down], look down upon, despise

dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [dē, away from, + sum, be], be wanting, lack, with dat. (§ 426)

deus, -ī, m. god (§ 468)

dē-volvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus [dē, down, + volvō, roll], roll down

dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dē, down, + vorō, swallow], devour

dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum), adj. to the right, right. ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing

Diāna, -ae, f. Diana, goddess of the moon and twin sister of Apollo

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus (imv. dīc), say, speak, tell. Usually introduces indirect discourse (§ 420. a)

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dictate], dictator, a chief magistrate with unlimited power

diēs, -ēī or diē, m., sometimes f. in sing., day (§ 467)

dif-ferō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus [dis-, apart, + ferō, carry], carry apart;

dis-tribuō

differ. differre inter sē, differ from each other

dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [dis-, not, + facilis, easy], hard, difficult (§ 307)

difficultās, -ātis, f. [difficilis, hard], difficulty

dīligenter, adv. [dīligēns, careful], compared dīligentius, dīligentissimē, industriously, diligently

dīligentia, -ae, f. [dīligēns, careful], industry, diligence

dī-micō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fight, struggle

dī-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [dī-, off, + mittō, send], send away, dismiss, disband. dimittere animum in, direct one's mind to, apply one's self to

Diomēdēs, -is, m. Dī-o-mēdēs, a name

dis-, dī-, a prefix expressing separation, off, apart, in different directions. Often negatives the meaning

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [dis-, apart, + cēdō, go], depart from, leave, withdraw, go away

dis-cernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus [dis-, apart, + cernō, sift], separate; distinguish

disciplīna, -ae, f. instruction, training, discipline

discipulus, -ī, m. [discō, learn], pupil, disciple

discō, -ere, didici, —, learn

dis-cutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussus [dis-, apart, + quatiō, shake], shatter, dash to pieces

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [dis-, apart, + pōnō, put], put here and there, arrange, station

dis-similis, -e, adj. [dis-, apart, + similis, like], unlike, dissimilar (§ 307)

dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, divide, distribute

diū

diū, adv., compared diūtius, diūtissimē, *for a long time, long* (§ 477)

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give*. in fugam dare, *put to flight*. alicui negōtium dare, *employ some one*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show*

doctrīna, -ae, f. [doctor, teacher], *teaching, learning, wisdom*

dolor, -ōris, m. *pain, sorrow*

domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], *of the house, domestic*

domicilium, domici'lī, n. *dwelling, house, abode*. Cf. domus

domina, -ae, f. *mistress (of the house), lady* (§ 461)

dominus, -ī, m. *master (of the house), owner, ruler* (§ 462)

domus, -ūs, f. *house, home*. domī, locative, *at home* (§ 468)

dormiō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, *sleep*

dracō, -ōnis, m. *serpent, dragon*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hesitate*

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo, two], (*moving two ways*), *doubtful, dubious*

du-centī, -ae, -a, numeral adj. *two hundred*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus (imv. dūc), *lead, conduct*

dum, conj. *while, as long as*

duo, duae, duo, numeral adj. *two* (§ 479)

duo-decim, indecl. numeral adj. *twelve*

dūrus, -a, -um, adj. *hard, tough; harsh, pitiless, bitter*

dux, ducis, m. and f. [cf. dūcō, lead], *leader, commander*

E

ē or ex, prep. with abl. *out of, from, off, of* (§ 209)

eburneus, -a, -um, adj. *of ivory*

ēruptiō

ecce, adv. *see! behold! there! here!*

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [ē, out, + dūcō, lead], *lead out, draw out*

ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex, thoroughly, + faciō, do], *work out; make, cause*

ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex, from, + fugiō, flee], *escape*

egeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be in need of, lack, with abl.* (§ 501. 32)

ego, pers. pron. *I; plur. nōs, we* (§ 480)

ē-gredior, -ī, ēgressus sum, dep. verb [ē, out of, + gradior, go], *go out, go forth*. ē nāvī ēgredi, *disembark*

ē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [ē, forth, + iaciō, hurl], *hurl forth, expel*

elementum, -ī, n., in plur. *first principles, rudiments*

elephantus, -ī, m. *elephant*

Ēlis, Ēlidis, f. *E'lis*, a district of southern Greece

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy, purchase*

enim, conj., *never standing first, for, in fact, indeed*. Cf. nam

Ennius, Ennī, m. *Ennius*, the father of Roman poetry, born 239 B.C.

eō, ire, iī (ivī), itūrus, *go* (§ 499)

eō, adv. *to that place, thither*

Ēpirus, -ī, f. *Epi'rus*, a district in the north of Greece

eques, -itis, m. [equus, horse], *horseman, cavalryman*

equitātus, -ūs, m. [equitō, ride], *cavalry*

equus, -ī, m. *horse*

ē-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus [ē, out, + regō, make straight], *raise up*

ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [ē, out of, + rapiō, seize], *seize; rescue*

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ē, forth, + rumpō, break], *burst forth*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. *sally*

Erymanthius

Erymanthius, -a, -um, adj. *Erymanthian*, of *Erymanthus*, a district in southern Greece

et, conj. *and, also*. *et . . . et*, both . . .

and. Cf. *atque*, *ac*, -*que*

etiam, adv. (rarely conj.) [*et, also, + iam, now*], *yet, still*; *also, besides*. Cf. *quoque*. *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, *not only . . . but also*

Etruscī, -ōrum, m. *the Etruscans*, the people of Etruria. See map of Italy

Eurōpa, -ae, f. *Europe*

Eurystheus, -ī, m. *Eurys'theus*, a king of Tiryns, a city in southern Greece

ē-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus [*ē, out, + vādō, go*], *go forth, escape*

ex, see *ē*

exanimātus, -a, -um [part. of *exanimō*, *put out of breath (anima)*], adj. *out of breath, tired*; *lifeless*

ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*ex, out, + capiō, take*], *welcome, receive*

exemplum, -ī, n. *example, model*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [*ex, out, + eō, go*], *go out, go forth* (§ 413)

ex-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [*ex, out, + arceō, shut*], (*shut out*), *employ, train, exercise, use*

exercitus, -ūs, m. [*exerceō, train*], *army*

ex-īstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex, out, + aestimō, reckon*], *estimate; think, judge* (§ 420. c). Cf. *arbitror*, *putō*

ex-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, dep. verb. [*ex, forth, + orior, rise*], *come forth, rise*

expeditus, -a, -um, adj. *without baggage*

ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [*ex, out, + pellō, drive*], *drive out*

ex-piō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex, intensive, + piō, atone for*], *make amends for, atone for*

fāma

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [*explōrō, investigate*], *spy, scout*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *examine, explore*

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex, out, + pugnō, fight*], *take by storm, capture*

exsilium, *exsiliū*, n. [*exsul, exile*], *banishment, exile*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex, out, + spectō, look*], *expect, wait*

ex-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [*ex, out, + struō, build*], *build up, erect*

exterus, -a, -um, adj., compared *exterior*, *extrēmus* or *extimus*, *outside, outer* (§ 312)

extrā, prep. with acc. *beyond, outside of*

ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus [*ex, out, + trahō, drag*], *drag out, pull forth*

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of *exterus*, *utmost, farthest* (§ 312)

F

fābula, -ae, f. *story, tale, fable*

facile, adv. [*facilis, easy*], compared *facilius*, *facillimē*, *easily* (§ 322)

facilis, -e, adj. [cf. *faciō, make*], *easy, without difficulty* (§ 307)

faciō, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus* (imv. *fac*), *make, do; cause, bring about*. *impetum facere in*, *make an attack upon*. *proelium facere*, *fight a battle*. *iter facere*, *make a march or journey*. *aliquem certiōrem facere*, *inform some one*. *facere verba prō*, *speak in behalf of*. Passive *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*, *be done, happen*. *certior fieri*, *be informed*

fallō, -ere, *fefellī*, *falsus*, *trip, betray, deceive*

fāma, -ae, f. *report, rumor; renown, fame, reputation*

famēs

- famēs, -is (abl. famē), f. *hunger*
 familia, -ae, f. *servants, slaves; household, family*
 fascēs, -ium (plur. of fascis), f. *fascies* (p. 225)
 fastigium, fasti'gī, n. *top; slope, descent*
 fātum, -ī, n. *fate, destiny*
 faucēs, -ium, f. plur. *jaws, throat*
 faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fautūrus, *be favorable to, favor, with dat.* (§ 501. 14)
 fēlix, -icis, adj. *happy, lucky*
 fēmina, -ae, f. *woman*. Cf. mulier
 fera, -ae, f. [ferus, *wild*], *wild beast*
 ferāx, -ācis, adj. *fertile*
 ferē, adv. *about, nearly, almost*
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear. *graviter* or *molestē ferre, be annoyed* (§ 498)
 ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum, *iron*], *made of iron*
 fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs, *trust*], *faithful, true*
 fidēs, fidei or fidē, *trust, faith; promise, word; protection. in fidem venire, come under the protection. in fidē manēre, remain loyal*
 filia, -ae (dat. and abl. plur. filiābus), f. *daughter* (§ 461. a)
 filius, fili (voc. sing. fili), m. *son*
 finis, -is, m. *boundary, limit, end; in plur. territory, country* (§ 243. 1)
 finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis, *boundary*], *adjoining, neighboring*. Plur. finitimī, -ōrum, m. *neighbors*
 fiō, fieri, factus sum, used as passive of faciō. See faciō (§ 500)
 flamma, -ae, f. *fire, flame*
 flōs, flōris, m. *flower*
 fluctus, -ūs, m. [cf. fluō, *flow*], *flood, wave, billow*

fuga

- flūmen, -inis, n. [cf. fluō, *flow*], *river* (§ 464. 2. b)
 fluō, -ere, flūxi, fluxus, *flow*
 fluvius, fluvi, m. [cf. fluō, *flow*], *river*
 fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, *dig*
 fōns, fontis, m. *fountain* (§ 247. 2. a)
 fōrma, -ae, f. *form, shape, appearance; beauty*
 Formiae, -ārum, f. *Formiae*, a town of Latium on the Appian Way. See map
 forte, adv. [abl. of fors, *chance*], *by chance*
 fortis, -e, adj. *strong; fearless, brave*
 fortiter, adv. [fortis, *strong*], *compared fortius, fortissimē, strongly; bravely*
 fortuna, -ae, f. [fors, *chance*], *chance, fate, fortune*
 forum, -ī, n. *market place*, esp. the Forum Rōmānum, where the life of Rome centered
 Forum Appī, *Forum of Appius*, a town in Latium on the Appian Way
 fossa, -ae, f. [cf. fodiō, *dig*], *ditch*
 fragor, -ōris, m. [cf. frangō, *break*], *crash, noise*
 frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctus, *break*
 frāter, -tris, m. *brother*
 fremitus, -ūs, m. *loud noise*
 frequentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *attend*
 frētus, -a, -um, adj. *supported, trusting*. Usually with abl. of means
 frōns, frontis, f. *front*. ā fronte, *in front*
 frūctus, -ūs, m. *fruit*
 frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. *pertaining to grain*. rēs frūmentāria, *grain supplies*
 frūmentum, -ī, n. *grain*
 frūstrā, adv. *in vain, vainly*
 fuga, -ae, f. [cf. fugiō, *flee*], *flight*. in fugam dare, *put to flight*

fugiō

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, run; avoid, shun*
 fūmō, -āre, —, —, *smoke*
 fūnis, -is, m. *rope*
 furor, -ōris, m. [furō, *rage*], *madness*.
 in furōrem incidere, *go mad*

G

Gāius, Gāī, m. *Gaius*, a Roman name, abbreviated **C.**, English form *Caius*
 Galba, -ae, m. *Galba*, a Roman name
 galea, -ae, f. *helmet*
 Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul*, the country comprising what is now Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, and France
 Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. *Gallic*
 gallina, -ae, f. *hen, chicken*
 Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul*
 gaudium, gaudī, n. *joy*
 Genāva, -ae, f. *Geneva*, a city in Switzerland
 gēns, gentis, f. [cf. gignō, *beget*], *race, family; people, nation, tribe*
 genus, -eris, n. *kind, variety*
 Germānia, -ae, f. *Germany*
 Germānus, -ī, m. *a German*
 gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, *carry, wear; wage. bellum gerere, wage war. rēs gestae, exploits. bene gerere, carry on successfully*
 gladiātōrius, -a, -um, adj. *gladiatorial*
 gladius, gladi, m. *sword*
 glōria, -ae, f. *glory, fame*
 Gracchus, -ī, m. *Gracchus*, name of a famous Roman family
 gracilis, -e, adj. *slender* (§ 307)
 Graeca, -ōrum, n. plur. *Greek writings, Greek literature*
 Graecō, adv. *in Greek*
 Graecia, -ae, f. *Greece*
 grammaticus, -ī, m. *grammarian*

honestus

grātia, -ae, f. *thanks, gratitude*
 grātus, -a, -um, adj. *acceptable, pleasing*. Often with dat. (§ 501. 16)
 gravis, -ē, adj. *heavy; disagreeable; serious, dangerous; earnest, weighty*
 graviter, adv. [gravis, *heavy*], compared gravius, gravissimē, *heavily; greatly, seriously. graviter ferre, bear ill, take to heart*
 gubernātor, -ōris, m. [gubernō, *pilot*], *pilot*

H

habēna, -ae, f. *halter, rein*
 habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold; regard, consider, deem*
 habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. habeō, *have*], *dwelt, abide, inhabit*. Cf. incolō, vivō
 hāc-tenus, adv. *thus far*
 Helvētīī, -ōrum, m. *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe
 Herculēs, -is, m. *Hercules*, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength
 Hesperidēs, -um, f. *the Hesperides*, daughters of Hesperus, who kept the garden of the golden apples
 hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative adj. and pron. *this* (of mine); as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (§ 481)
 hīc, adv. *here*
 hiems, -emis, f. *winter*
 hinc, adv. [hīc, *here*], *from here, hence*
 Hippolytē, -ēs, f. *Hippolyte*, queen of the Amazons
 hō-diē, adv. [modified form of hōc diē, *on this day*], *to-day*
 homō, -īnis, m. and f. (*human being*), *man, person*
 honestus, -a, -um, adv. [*honor, honor*], *respected, honorable*

honor

honor, -ōris, m. *honor*hōra, -ae, f. *hour*Horātius, Horā'ti, m. *Horatius*, a Roman namehorribilis, -e, adj. *terrible, horrible*hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb. *urge, incite, exhort, encourage* (§ 493)hortus, -ī, m. *garden*hospitium, hespi'ti, n. [*hospes, host*], *hospitality*hostis, -is, m. and f. *enemy, foe* (§ 465. a)humilis, -e, adj. *low, humble* (§ 307)Hydra, -ae, f. *the Hydra*, a mythical water snake slain by Hercules

I

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl*iam, adv. *now, already. nec iam, and no longer*Iāniculum, -ī, n. *the Janiculum*, one of the hills of Romeiānua, -ae, f. *door*ibi, adv. *there, in that place*Icarus, -ī, m. *Ic'arus*, the son of Dædalus• ictus, -ūs, m. [cf. icō, *strike*], *blow*īdem, e'adem, idem, demonstrative pron. [*is + dem*], *same* (§ 481)idōneus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit*igitur, conj., seldom the first word, *therefore, then. Cf. itaque*ignis, -is, m. *fire* (§§ 243. 1; 247. 2. a; 465. 1)ignōtus, -a, -um, adj. [*in-, not, + (g)nōtus, known*], *unknown, strange*ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and pron. *that* (yonder); as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (§ 481)illīc, adv. [cf. ille], *yonder, there*

in-cautus

im-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [*in, against, + mittō, send*], *send against; let in*immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*in, upon, + mola, meal*], *sprinkle with sacrificial meal; offer, sacrifice*im-mortālis, -c, adj. [*in-, not, + mortālis, mortal*], *immortal*im-mortālītās, -ātis, f. [*immortālis, immortal*], *immortality*im-parātus, -a, -um, adj. [*in-, not, + parātus, prepared*], *unprepared*impedīmentum, -ī, n. [*impediō, hinder*], *hindrance; in plur. baggage*impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [*part. of impediō, hinder*], *hindered, burdened*im-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [*in, against, + pellō, strike*], *strike against; impel, drive, propel*imperātor, -ōris, m. [*imperō, command*], *general*imperium, impe'rī, n. [*imperō, command*], *command, order; realm, empire; power, authority*imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command, order. Usually with dat. and an object clause of purpose (§ 501. 41).**With acc. object, levy, impose*impetus, -ūs, m. *attack. impetum facere in, make an attack upon*im-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus [*in, upon, + pōnō, place*], *place upon; impose, assign*in, prep. with acc. *into, to, against, at, upon, towards; with abl. in, on. in reliquum tempus, for the future*in-, inseparable prefix. With nouns and adjectives often with a negative force, like English *un-, in-*in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [*in-, not, + cautus, careful*], *off one's guard*

incendium

Incendium, incendi, n. *flame, fire*. Cf.

ignis, flamma

in-cendō, -erc, -dī, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn*

in-cidō, -ere, -cidī, — [in, in, on, + cadō, fall], *fall in, fall on; happen.*

in furōrem incidere, *go mad*

in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in, on, + capiō, take], *begin*

in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + cognitus, known], *unknown*

in-colō, -ere, -uī, — [in, in, + colō, dwell], *inhabit; live*

incolumis, -e, adj. *sound, safe, uninjured, unharmed*

in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. [in-, not, + crēdibilis, to be believed], *incredible*

inde, *from that place, thence*

induō, -erc, -uī, -ūtus, *put on*

indūtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of induō, put on], *clothed*

in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [in, into, + eō, go], *go into; enter upon, begin*, with acc.

(§ 413)

in-fāns, -fantis, adj. [in-, not, + *fāns, speaking], *not speaking*. As a noun, m. and f. *infant*

in-fēlix, -icis, adj. [in-, not, + fēlix, happy], *unhappy, unlucky*

in-fēnsus, -a, -um, adj. *hostile*

in'-ferō, infer're, in'tulī, inlā'tus [in, against, + ferō, bear], *bring against or upon, inflict*, with acc. and dat.

(§ 501. 15). bellum inferre, with dat., *make war upon*

inferus, -a, -um, adj. *low, below* (§ 312)

in-finītus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + finītus, bounded], *boundless, endless*

in-firmus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + firmus, strong], *weak, infirm*

in-struō

ingenium, inge'nī, n. *talent, ability*

ingēns, -entis, adj. *vast, huge, enormous, large*. Cf. magnus

in-gredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [in, in, + gradior, walk], *advance, enter*

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + amicus, friendly], *hostile*. As a noun,

inimīcus, -ī, m. *enemy, foe*. Cf. hostis

initium, ini'tī, *entrance, beginning*

initus, -a, -um, part. of ineō. *initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer*

iniūria, -ae, f. [in, against, + iūs, law], *injustice, wrong, injury*. alicui iniūriās inferre, *inflict wrongs upon*

some one

inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy], *want, need, lack*

in-opināns, -antis, adj. [in-, not, + opināns, thinking], *not expecting, taken by surprise*

inquit, *said he, said she*. Regularly inserted in a direct quotation

in-rigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *irrigate, water*

in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in, into, + rumpō, break], *burst in, break in*

in-ruō, -ere, -ruī, — [in, in, + ruō, rush], *rush in*

in-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [in, on, + sequor, follow], *follow on, pursue*

in-signe, -is, n. *badge, decoration* (§ 465. b)

insignis, -e, adj. *remarkable, noted*

instāns, -antis, adj. [part. of insto, be at hand], *present, immediate*

in-stō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus [in, upon, + stō, stand], *stand upon; be at hand; pursue, press on*

instrūmentum, -ī, n. *instrument*

in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [in, on, + struō, build], *draw up*

insula

- insula**, -ae, f. *island*
integer, -gra, -grum, *untouched, whole; fresh, new*
intelligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [*inter, between, + legō, choose*], *perceive, understand* (§ 420. d)
intentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *aim; threaten*
inter, prep. with acc. *between, among; during, while* (§ 340)
interfectus, -a, -um, adj. [*part. of interficiō, kill*], *slain, dead*
inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [*inter, between, + faciō, make*], *put out of the way, kill*. Cf. *necō, occidō, trucidō*
interim, adv. *meanwhile*
interior, -ius, adj. *interior, inner* (§ 315)
inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *leave off, suspend*
interpres, -etis, m. and f. *interpreter*
inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *question*
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [*inter, between, + sum, be*], *be present, take part in*, with dat. (§ 501. 15)
inter-vāllum, -ī, n. *interval, distance*
intrā, adv. and prep. with acc. *within, in*
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *go into, enter*
in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [*in, upon, + veniō, come*], *find*
invisus, -a, -um, adj. [*part. of invidēō, envy*], *hated, detested*
Iolāus, -ī, m. *I-o-lā'us*, a friend of Hercules
ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron. *that very, this very; self, himself, herself, itself*, (§ 481)
īra, -ae, f. *wrath, anger*
īrātus, -a, -um, adj. [*part. of īrāscor, be angry*], *angered, enraged*
is, ea, id, demonstrative adj. and pron. *this, that; he, she, it* (§ 481)

lacus

- iste**, -a, -ud, demonstrative adj. and pron. *that* (of yours), *he, she, it* (§ 481)
ita, adv. *so, thus*. Cf. *sic* and *tam*
Italia, -ae, f. *Italy*
ita-que, conj. *and so, therefore*
item, adv. *also*
iter, *itineris*, n. *journey, march, route; way, passage* (§§ 247. 1. a; 468). *iter dare, give a right of way, allow to pass*. *iter facere, march* (see p. 159)
iubeō, -ēre, *iussi, iussus, order, command*. Usually with the infin. and subj. acc. (§ 213)
iūdex, -icis, m. and f. *judge* (§ 464. 1)
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*iūdex, judge*], *judge, decide* (§ 420. c)
Iūlia, -ae, *Julia*, a Roman name
Iūlius, Iūli, m. *Julius*, a Roman name
iungō, -ēre, *iūnxī, iūctus, join; yoke, harness*
Iūnō, -ōnis, f. *Juno*, the queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter
Iuppiter, *Iovis*, m. *Jupiter*, the supreme god
iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *swear, take an oath*
iussus, -a, -um, part. of *iubeō*, *ordered*

L

- L.**, abbreviation for *Lūcius*
labefactus, -a, -um, adj. [*part. of labefaciō, cause to shake*], *shaken, weakened, ready to fall*
Labiēnus, -ī, m. *La-bi-e'nus*, one of Cæsar's lieutenants
labor, -ōris, m. *labor, toil*
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*labor, labor*], *labor; suffer, be hard pressed*
lacrima, -ae, f. *tear*
lacus, -ūs (dat. and abl. plur. *lacubus*), m. *lake*

laetē

- laetē, adv. [laetus, *glad*], compared
 laetius, laetissimē, *gladly*
 laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus, *glad*], *joy*
 laetus, -a, -um, adj. *glad, joyful*
 lapis, -idis, m. *stone* (§§ 247. 2. a; 464. 1)
 Lār, Laris, m.; plur. Larēs, -um (rarely
 -ium), *the Lares or household gods*
 lātē, adv. [lātus, *wide*], compared
 lātius, lātissimē, *widely*
 Latīnē, adv. *in Latin*. Latīnē loquī,
to speak Latin
 lātitūdō, -inis, f. [lātus, *wide*], *width*
 Lātōna, -ae, f. *Latona*, mother of
 Apollo and Diana
 lātus, -a, -um, adj. *wide*
 latus, -eris, n. *side, flank*. ab utrōque
 latere, *on each side*
 laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laus, *praise*],
praise
 laurea, -ae, f. *laurel*
 laureātus, -a, -um, adj. *crowned with*
laurel
 laus, laudis, f. *praise*
 lectulus, -ī, m. *couch, bed*
 lēgātus, -ī, m. *ambassador; lieutenant*
 legiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. legō, *gather*], (*body*
of soldiers), *legion*, about 3600 men
 (§ 464. 2. a)
 legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. *legionary*.
 Plur. legiōnārii, -ōrum, m. *the soldiers*
of the legion
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *read*
 lēnis, -e, adj. *gentle, smooth, mild*
 lēniter, adv. [lēnis, *gentle*], compared
 lēnius, lēnissimē, *gently*
 Lentulus, -ī, m. *Lentulus*, a Roman
 family name
 leō, -ōnis, m. *lion*
 Lernaëus, -a, -um, adj. *Lernaean*, of
 Lerna, in southern Greece
 Lesbia, -ae, f. *Lesbia*, a girl's name

magis

- levis, -e, adj. *light*
 lēx, lēgis, f. *measure, law*
 libenter, adv. [libēns, *willing*], com-
 pared libentius, libentissimē, *will-*
ingly, gladly
 līber, -era, -erum, adj. *free* (§ 469. b)
 līberī, -ōrum, m. [līber, *free*], *children*
 līberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [līber, *free*], *set*
free, release, liberate
 lībertās, -ātis, f. [līber, *free*], *freedom,*
liberty
 līctor, -ōris, m. *lictor* (p. 225)
 līmus, -ī, m. *mud*
 littera, -ae, f. *a letter of the alphabet;*
in plur. a letter, epistle
 lītus, -oris, n. *seashore, beach*
 locus, -ī, m. (plur. locī and loca, m.
 and n.), *place, spot*
 longē, adv. [longus, *long*], comp. longi-
 us, longissimē, *a long way off; by far*
 longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, *long*],
distant, remote
 longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, *long*], *length*
 longus, -a, -um, adj. *long*
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, dep. verb,
talk, speak
 lōrica, -ae, f. [lōrum, *thong*], *coat of*
mail, corselet
 lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, *play*
 lūdus, -ī, m. *play; school*, the elemen-
 tary grades. Cf. schola
 lūna, -ae, f. *moon*
 lūx, lūcis, f. (no gen. plur.), *light*.
 prima lūx, *daybreak*
 Lȳdia, -ae, f. *Lydia*, a girl's name

M

- M., abbreviation for Mārcus
 magicus, -a, -um, adj. *magic*
 magis, adv. in comp. degree [magnus,
great], *more, in a higher degree* (§ 323)

magister

magister, -trī, m. *master, commander; teacher*

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister, *master*], *magistracy; magistrate*

magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, *great*], *greatness, size*

magnopere, adv. [abl. of magnum opus], compared magis, maximē, *greatly, exceedingly* (§ 323)

magnus, -a, -um, adj., compared maior, maximus, *great, large; strong, loud* (§ 311)

maior, maius, -ōris, adj., comp. of magnus, *greater, larger* (§ 311)

maiorēs, -um, m. plur. of maior, *ancestors*

mālō, mälle, mālui, — [magis, *more*, + volō, *wish*], *wish more, prefer* (§ 497)

malus, -a, -um, adj., compared peior, pessimus, *bad, evil, wicked* (§ 311)

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [manus, *hand*, + dō, *put*], (*put in hand*), *intrust; order, command*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *stay, remain, abide*

Mānlius, Mānlī, m. *Manlius*, a Roman name

mānsuētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of mānsuēscō, *tame*], *tamed*

manus, -ūs, f. *hand; force, band*

Mārcus, -ī, m. *Marcus, Mark*, a Roman first name

mare, -is, n. (no gen. plur.), *sea*. mare tenēre, *be out to sea*

margō, -inis, m. *edge, border*

marītus, -ī, m. *husband*

Marius, Marī, m. *Marius*, a Roman name, esp. *C. Marius*, the general

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. *of Mars*, esp. the *Campus Martius*

māter, -tris, f. *mother*

minimē

mātrimōnium, mātrimō'nī, n. *marriage*. in mātrimōnium dūcere, *marry*
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten*. Cf. contendō, properō

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. *ripe, mature*
maximē, adv. in superl. degree [maximus, *greatest*], compared magnopere, magis, maximē, *especially, very much* (§ 323)

maximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of magnus, *greatest, extreme* (§ 311)

medius, -a, -um, adj. *middle part; middle, intervening*

melior, -ius, -ōris, adj., comp. of bonus, *better* (§ 311)

melius, adv. in comp. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē, *better* (§ 323)

memoria, -ae, f. [memor, *mindful*], *memory*. memoriā tenēre, *remember*

mēns, mentis, f. *mind*. Cf. animus

mēnsis, -is, m. *month* (§ 247. 2. a)

mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercor, *trade*], *trader, merchant*

meridiānus, -a, -um, adj. [meridiēs, *noon*], *of midday*

meridiēs, — (acc. -em, abl. -ē), m. [medius, *mid*, + diēs, *day*], *noon*

metus, -ūs, m. *fear, dread*

meus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. *my, mine* (§ 98)

mīles, -itis, m. *soldier* (§ 464. 1)

militāris, -e, adj. [mīles, *soldier*], *military*. rēs militāris, *science of war*
militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [mīles, *soldier*], *serve as a soldier*

mille, plur. milia, -ium, numeral adj. and subst. *thousand* (§ 479)

minimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared parum, minus, minimē, *least, very little; by no means* (§ 323)

minimus

minimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared parvus, minor, minimus, *least, smallest* (§ 311)

minor, minus, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, compared parvus, minor, minimus, *smaller, less* (§ 311)

Mīnōs, -ōis, m. *Minos*, a king of Crete
minus, adv. in comp. degree, compared parum, minus, minimē, *less* (§ 323)

Minyae, -ārum, m. *the Minyae*, a people of Greece

mīrābilis, -e, adj. [*mīror, wonder at*], *wonderful, marvelous*

mīror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb [*mīrus, wonderful*], *wonder, marvel, admire*

mīrus, -a, -um, adj. *wonderful*

Misēnum, -ī, *Misēnum*, a promontory and harbor on the coast of Campania. See map

miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable*

missus, -a, -um, part. of mittō, *sent*

mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, *send*

modicus, -a, -um [*modus, measure*], *modest, ordinary*

modo, adv. [abl. of *modus, measure*, with shortened o], *only, merely, just now. modo . . . modo, now . . . now, sometimes . . . sometimes*

modus, -ī, m. *measure; manner, way; kind*

moenia, -ium, n. plur. [cf. mūniō, *fortify*], *walls, ramparts*

molestē, adv. [*molestus, troublesome*], compared molestius, molestissimē, *annoyingly. molestē ferre, to be annoyed*

molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome; annoying, unpleasant* (§ 501. 16)

nauta

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind, advise, warn* (§ 489)

mōns, montis, m. *mountain* (§ 247. 2. a)

mōnstrum, -ī, n. *monsieur*

mora, -ae, f. *delay*

moror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb [*mora, delay*], *delay, linger; impede*

mors, mortis, f. [cf. morior, *die*], *death*

mōs, mōris, m. *custom, habit*

mōtus, -ūs, m. [cf. moveō, *move*], *motion, movement. terrae mōtus, earthquake*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move*

mox, adv. *soon, presently*

mulier, -eris, f. *woman*

multitūdō, -inis, f. [*multus, much*], *multitude*

multum (*multō*), adv. [*multus, much*], compared plūs, plūrimum, *much* (§ 477)

multus, -a, -um, adj., compared plūs, plūrimus, *much; plur. many* (§ 311)
mūniō, -īre, -īvī or -īi, -itus, *fortify, defend*

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. [*mūniō, fortify*], *defense, fortification*

mūrus, -ī, m. *wall. Cf. moenia*

mūsica, -ae, f. *music*

N

nam, conj. *for. Cf. enim*

nam-que, conj., a strengthened nam, introducing a reason or explanation, *for, and in fact; seeing that*

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell, relate*

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, dep. verb, *be born, spring from*

nātūra, -ae, f. *nature*

nātus, part. of nāscor

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita, from nāvis, *ship*], *sailor*

nāvālis

nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis, *ship*], *naval*
 nāvigium, nāvi'gī, n. *ship, boat*
 nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nāvis, *ship*,
 + agō, *drive*], *sail, cruise*
 nāvis, -is (abl. -ī or -e), f. *ship*
 (§ 243. 1). nāvem cōnscendere, *em-
 bark, go on board*. nāvem solvere,
set sail. nāvis longa, *man-of-war*
 nē, conj. and adv. *in order that not,
 that* (with verbs of fearing), *lest;
 not*. nē . . . quidem, *not even*
 -ne, interrog. adv., enclitic (see §§ 16,
 210). Cf. nōnne and num
 nec or neque, conj. [nē, *not*, + que,
and], *and not, nor*. nec . . . nec or
 neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*
 necessārius, -a, -um, adj. *needful,
 necessary*
 necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. nex, *death*],
kill. Cf. interficiō, occidō, trucidō
 negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *deny, say not*
 (§ 420. a)
 negōtium, negō'tī, n. [nec, *not*, + ōtium,
ease], *business, affair, matter*. alicui
 negōtium dare, *to employ some one*
 Nemaëus, -a, -um, adj. *Nemé'an, of*
Nemé'a, in southern Greece
 nēmō, dat. nēminī (gen. nūllius, abl.
 nūllō, supplied from nūllus), m. and
 f. [nē, *not*, + homō, *man*], (*not a*
man), *no one, nobody*
 Neptūnus, -ī, m. *Neptune*, god of the
 sea, brother of Jupiter
 neque, see nec
 neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. -trīus, dat.
 -trī), adj. *neither* (of two) (§ 108)
 nē-ve, conj. adv. *and not, and that not,
 and lest*
 nihil, n. indecl. [nē, *not*, + hīlum, *a*
whit], *nothing*. nihil posse, *to have*
no power

num

nihilum, -ī, n., see nihil
 Niobē, -ēs, f. *Ni'obe*, the queen of
 Thebes whose children were de-
 stroyed by Apollo and Diana
 nisi, conj. [nē, *not*, + sī, *if*], *if not,
 unless, except*
 nōbilis, -e, adj. *well known; noble*
 noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus [cf. necō, *kill*],
hurt, injure, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
 noctū, abl. used as adv. [cf. nox, *night*],
at night, by night
 Nōla, -ae, f. *Nola*, a town in central
 Campania. See map
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [ne, *not*, + volō,
wish], *not to wish, be unwilling* (§ 497)
 nōmen, -inis, n. [cf. nōscō, *know*],
(means of knowing), name
 nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nōmen, *name*],
name, call. Cf. appellō, vocō
 nōn, adv. [nē, *not*, + ūnum, *one*], *not*.
 nōn solum . . . sed etiam, *not only*
 . . . but also
 nōn-dum, adv. *not yet*
 nōn-ne, interrog. adv. suggesting an
 affirmative answer, *not?* (§ 210). Cf.
 -ne and num
 nōs, pers. pron. *we* (see ego) (§ 480)
 noster, -tra, -trum, possessive adj.
 and pron. *our, ours*. Plur. nostrī,
 -ōrum, m. *our men* (§ 98)
 novem, indecl. numeral adj. *nine*
 novus, -a, -um, adj. *new*. novae rēs, *a*
revolution
 nox, noctis, f. *night*. multā nocte, *late*
at night
 nūllus, -a, -um (gen. -īus, dat. -ī) adj.
 [nē, *not*, + ūllus, *any*], *not any, none,*
no (§ 108)
 num, interrog. adv. suggesting a neg-
 ative answer (§ 210). Cf. -ne and
 nōnne. In indir. questions, *whether*

numerus

numerus, -ī, m. *number*

numquam, adv. [nē, *not*, + *umquam*, *ever*], *never*

nunc, adv. *now*. Cf. *iam*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius, *messenger*], *report, announce* (§ 420. a)

nūntius, nūntī, m. *messenger*

nūper, adv. *recently, lately, just now*

nympha, -ae, f. *nymph*

O

ob, prep. with acc. *on account of*. In compounds it often means *in front of, against*, or is intensive. *quam ob rem, for this reason* (§ 340)

obses, -idis, m. and f. *hostage*

ob-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus [ob, *against*, + *sedeō, sit*], *besiege*

obtimeō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [ob, *against*, + *teneō, hold*], *possess, occupy, hold*

occāsīō, -ōnis, f. *favorable opportunity, favorable moment*

occāsus, -ūs, m. *going down, setting*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob, *down*, + *caedō, strike*], *strike down; cut down, kill*. Cf. *interficiō, necō*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, *completely*, + *capiō, take*], *seize, take possession of, occupy*. Cf. *rapīō*

oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [ob, *against*, + *currō, run*], *run towards; meet, with dat.* (§ 426)

ōceanus, -ī, m. *the ocean*

octō, indecl. numeral adj. *eight*

oculus, -ī, m. *eye*

officium, offi'ci, n. *duty*

ōlim, adv. *formerly, once upon a time*

ōmen, -inis, n. *sign, token, omen*

o-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [ob, *over*, *past*, + *mittō, send*], *let go, omit*.

cōnsilium omittere, *give up a plan*

orior

omnīnō, adv. [omnis, *all*], *altogether, wholly, entirely*

omnis, -e, adj. *all, every*. Cf. *tōtus*

onerāria, -ae, f. [onus, *load*], with *nāvis* expressed or understood, *merchant vessel, transport*

onus, -eris, n. *load, burden*

opiniō, -ōnis, f. [opīnor, *suppose*], *opinion, supposition, expectation*

oppidānus, -ī, m. [oppidum, *town*], *townsman*

oppidum, -ī, n. *town, stronghold*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, opportune, favorable*

op-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [ob, *against*, + *premō, press*], (*press against*), *crush; surprise*

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. *storming, assault*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, *against*, + *pugnō, fight*], *fight against, assault, storm, assail*

optimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared bene, *melius, optimē, very well, best of all* (§ 323)

optimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared bonus, *melior, optimus, best, most excellent* (§ 311)

opus, -eris, n. *work, labor, task* (§ 464. 2. b)

ōrāculum, -ī, n. [ōrō, *speak*], *oracle*

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, *speak*], *orator*

orbis, -is, m. *ring, circle*. orbis terrārum, *the earth, world*

orbita, -ae, f. [orbis, *wheel*], *rut*

Orcus, -ī, m. *Orcus, the lower world*

ōrdō, -inis, m. *row, order, rank* (§ 247. 2. a)

origō, -inis, f. [orior, *rise*], *source, origin*

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, dep. verb. *arise, rise; begin; spring, be born*

ōrnāmentum

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [ōrnō, *fit out*],
ornament, jewel
 ōrnātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of ōrnō,
fit out], *fitted out; adorned*
 ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit out, adorn*

P

P., abbreviation for Pūblius
 paene, adv. *nearly, almost*
 palūdāmentum, -ī, n. *military cloak*
 palūs, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh*
 pānis, -is, m. *bread*
 pār, paris, adj. *equal* (§ 471. III)
 parātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of parō,
prepare], *prepared, ready*
 parcō, -ere, peper'cī (parsī), parsūrus,
spare, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
 pārēō, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey*, with dat.
 (§ 501. 14)
 parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare for, pre-
 pare; provide, procure*
 pars, partis, f. *part, share; side,
 direction*
 parum, adv., compared minus, minimē,
too little, not enough (§ 323)
 parvus, -a, -um, adj., compared minor,
 minimus, *small, little* (§ 311)
 passus, -ūs, m. *step, pace. mille pas-
 suum, thousand paces, mile* (§ 331. b)
 pateō, -ēre, patuī, —, *lie open, be
 open; stretch, extend*
 pater, -tris, m. *father* (§ 464. 2. a)
 patior, -ī, passus sum, dep. verb. *bear,
 suffer, allow, permit*
 patria, -ae, f. [cf. pater, *father*], *father-
 land, (one's) country*
 paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.),
few, only a few
 paulisper, adv. *for a little while*
 paulō, adv. *by a little, little*
 paulum, adv. *a little, somewhat*

per-suādeō

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace*
 pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecus, *cattle*], *money*
 pedes, -itis, m. [pēs, *foot*], *foot soldier*
 pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, *foot*], *on
 foot; by land*
 peior, peius, -ōris, adj. in comp. de-
 gree, compared malus, *peior, pessi-
 mus, worse* (§ 311)
 pellis, -is, f. *skin, hide*
 penna, -ae, f. *feather*
 per, prep. with acc. *through, by
 means of, on account of*. In com-
 position it often has the force of
thoroughly, completely, very (§ 340)
 percussus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of per-
 cutiō, *strike through*], *pierced*
 per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [per,
through, + dūcō, lead], *lead through.*
fossam perducere, to construct a ditch
 per-exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [per, *very, +*
exiguus, small], *very small, very short*
 perfidus, -a, -um, adj. *faithless, treach-
 erous, false*
 per-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractus [per,
through, + frangō, break], *shatter*
 pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus [per,
through, + regō, conduct], *go on,
 proceed, hasten*
 periculum, -ī, n. *trial, test; danger*
 peristylum, -ī, n. *peristyle, an open
 court with columns around it*
 perītus, -a, -um, adj. *skillful*
 perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. *perpetual*
 Perseus, -eī, *Perseus*, a Greek hero,
 son of Jupiter and Danaë
 persōna, -ae, f. *part, character, person*
 per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [per,
thoroughly, + suādeō, persuade], *per-
 suade, advise*, with dat. (§ 501. 14),
 often with an object clause of pur-
 pose (§ 501. 41)

per-terreō

per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [per, *thoroughly*, + terreō, *frighten*], *thoroughly terrify, alarm*

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [per, *through*, + veniō, *come*], *arrive, reach, come to*

pēs, pedis, m. *foot*. pedem referre, *re-treat* (§ 247. 2. a)

pessimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus, *worst* (§ 311)

petō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -itus, *strive for, seek, beg, ask; make for, travel to*. Cf. postulō, quaerō, rogō

Pharsālus, -ī, f. *Pharsalus* or *Pharsalia*, a town in Thessaly, near which Cæsar defeated Pompey, 48 B.C.

philosophia, -ae, f. *philosophy*

philosophus, -ī, m. *philosopher*

pictus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of pingō, *paint*], *colored, variegated*

pīlum, -ī, n. *spear, javelin* (§ 462. b)

piscīna, -ae, f. [piscis, *fish*], *fish pond*

piscis, -is, m. *fish*

pīstor, -ōris, m. *baker*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *please, be pleasing*, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

plānitēs, -ēī, f. [plānus, *level*], *plain*

plānus, -a, -um, adj. *level, flat*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. *full*

plūrimum, adv. in superl. degree, compared multum, plūs, plūrimum, *very much*. plūrimum valēre, *be most influential* (§ 322)

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrimus, *most, very many* (§ 311)

plūs, plūris, adj. in comp. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrimus; sing. n. as substantive, *more*; plur. *more, several* (§ 311)

potentia

plūteus, -ī, m. *shield, parapet*

poena, -ae, f. *punishment, penalty*

poēta, -ae, m. *poet*

pompa, -ae, f. *procession*

Pompēiī, -ōrum, m. *Pompeii*, a city of Campania. See map

Pompēius, Pompēī, m. *Pompey*, a Roman name

pōmum, -ī, n. *apple*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place*. castra pōnere, *pitch camp*

pōns, pontis, m. *bridge* (§ 247. 2. a)

popīna, -ae, f. *restaurant*

populus, -ī, m. *people*

Porsena, -ae, m. *Porsena*, king of Etruria, a district of Italy. See map

porta, -ae, f. *gate, door*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, carry*

portus, -ūs, m. [cf. porta, *gate*], *harbor*

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *have, own, possess*

possum, posse, potuī, —, irreg. verb [potis, *able*, + sum, *I am*], *be able, can* (§ 495). nihil posse, *have no power*

post, prep. with acc. *after, behind* (§ 340)

postea, adv. [post, *after*, + eā, *this*], *afterwards*

(posterus), -a, -um, adj., compared posterior, postrēmus or postumus, *following, next* (§ 312)

postquam, conj. *after, as soon as*

postrēmō, adv. [abl. of postrēmus, *last*], *at last, finally*. Cf. dēmum, dēnique (§ 322)

postrīdiē, adv. [posterō, *next*, + diē, *day*], *on the next day*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, demand, require*. Cf. petō, quaerō, rogō

potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, *able*], *might, power, force*

prae-beō

prae-beō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prae, *forth*, + habeō, *hold*], *offer, give*

praeda, -ae, f. *booty, spoil, plunder*

prae-dicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus [prae, *before*, + dicō, *tell*], *foretell, predict*

prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [prae, *before*, + faciō, *make*], *place in command*, with acc. and dat. (§ 501. 15)

prae-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [prae, *forward*, + mittō, *send*], *send forward*

praemium, praemī, n. *reward, prize*

prae-ruptus, -a, -um [part. of prae-rumpō, *break off*], *broken off, steep*

praesēns, -entis, adj. *present, immediate*

praesertim, adv. *especially, chiefly*

praesidium, praesidī, n. *guard, gar-
rison, protection*

prae-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus [prae, *before*, + stō, *stand*], (*stand before*), *excel, surpass*, with dat. (§ 501. 15); *show, exhibit*

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [prae, *before*, + sum, *be*], *be over, be in command of*, with dat. (§ 501. 15)

praeter, prep. with acc. *beyond, con-
trary to* (§ 340)

praetereā, adv. [praeter, *besides*, + eā, *this*], *in addition, besides, moreover*

praetextus, -a, -um, adj. *bordered, edged*

praetōrium, praetō'ri, n. *praetorium*

prandium, prandī, n. *luncheon*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press
hard, compress; crowd, drive, harass*

(prex, precis), f. *prayer*

primō, adv. [primus, *first*], *at first, in
the beginning* (§ 322)

primum, adv. [primus, *first*], *first.
quam primum, as soon as possible*

primus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree,
compared prior, primus, first (§ 315)

prō-pellō

prīnceps, -cipis; m. [primus, *first*, +
capiō, *take*], (*taking the first place*),
chief, leader (§ 464. 1)

prior, prius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree,
superl. primus, *former* (§ 315)

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj. *former, previ-
ous*

prō, prep. with abl. *before; for, for
the sake of, in behalf of; instead of,
as* (§ 209). In composition, *forth,
forward*

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus [prō,
forward, + cēdō, *go*], *go forward,
proceed*

procul, adv. *far, afar off*

prō-currō, -ere, -curri (-cucurri), -cur-
sus [prō, *forward*, + currō, *run*], *run
forward*

proelium, proeli, n. *battle, combat.*

proelium committere, *join battle.*

proelium facere, *fight a battle*

profectiō, -ōnis, f. *departure*

proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, dep. verb,
set out, march. Cf. ēgredior, exeō

prō-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum, dep. verb
[prō, *forth*, + gradior, *go*], *go forth,
proceed, advance*. Cf. pergō, prōcēdō

prōgressus, see prōgredior

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prō, *forth*,
away from, + habeō, *hold*], *keep away
from, hinder, prevent*

prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [prō,
forward, + moveō, *move*], *move for-
ward, advance*

prō-nūtiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, *forth*,
+ nūtiō, *announce*], *proclaim, declare*

prope, adv., *compared propius, prox-
imē, nearly*. Prep. with acc. *near*

prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [prō,
forth, + pellō, *drive*], *drive forth;
move, impel*

properō

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [properus, *quick*], *go quickly, hasten*. Cf. contendō, mātūrō

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, *near*], *near, neighboring*

propior, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. proximus, *nearer* (§ 315)

propius, adv. in comp. degree, compared prope, propius, proximē, *nearer* (§ 323)

propter, prep. with acc. *on account of, because of* (§ 340)

prō-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus [prō, *forth*, + scribō, *write*], *proclaim, publish*. Cf. prōnūntiō

prō-sequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, dep. verb [prō, *forth*, + sequor, *follow*], *escort, attend*

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfuturus [prō, *for*, + sum, *be*], *be useful, benefit*, with dat. (§§ 496; 501. 15)

prō-tegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus [prō, *in front*, + tegō, *cover*], *cover in front, protect*

prōvincia, -ae, f. *territory, province*

proximē, adv. in superl. degree, compared prope, propius, proximē, *nearest, next; last, most recently* (§ 323)

proximus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared propior, proximus, *nearest, next* (§ 315)

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus, *people*], *of the people, public.* rēs pūblica, *the commonwealth*

puella, -ae, f. [diminutive of puer, *boy*], *girl, maiden*

puer, -erī, m. *boy; slave* (§ 462. c)

pugna, -ae, f. *fight, battle*. Cf. proelium

pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pugna, *battle*], *fight*. Cf. contendō, dīmicō

quī

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, pretty* (§§ 469. b; 304)

Pullō, -ōnis, m. *Pullo*, a centurion

pulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *strike, beat*

puppis, -is (acc. -im, abl. -ī), f. *stern of a ship, deck*

pūrē, adv. [pūrus, *pure*], comp. pūrius, *purely*

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *cleanse, clean*

purpureus, -a, -um, adj. *purple, dark red*

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *reckon, think* (§ 420. c). Cf. arbitror, existimō

Pŷthia, -ae, f. *Pythia*, the inspired priestess of Apollo at Delphi

Q

quā dē causā, *for this reason, wherefore*

quā rē, *therefore, for this reason*

quaerō, -ere, -sivi, -situs, *seek, ask, inquire*. Cf. petō, postulō, rogō

quālis, -e, interrog. pronom. adj. *of what sort, what kind of*. tālis . . . quālis, *such . . . as*

quam, adv. *how; after a comparative, than; with a superlative, translated as . . . as possible*. quam primum, *as soon as possible*

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam, *how*], *how great, how much*. tantus . . . quantus, *as great as*

quārtus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [quattuor, *four*], *fourth*

quattuor, indecl. numeral adj. *four*

quattuor-decim, indecl. numeral adj. *fourteen*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and* (§ 16). Cf. ac, atque, et

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. and adj. *who, which, what, that* (§ 482)

quia

- quia**, conj. *because*. Cf. **quod**
quīdam, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (**quoddam**),
 indef. pron. and adj. *a certain one, a certain, a* (§ 485)
quidem, adv. *to be sure, certainly, indeed*. **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*
quiēs, -ētis, f. *rest, repose*
quiētus, -a, -um, adj. *quiet, restful*
quīndecim, indecl. numeral adj. *fifteen*
quīngentī, -ae, -a, numeral adj. *five hundred*
quīnque, indecl. numeral adj. *five*
quīntus, -a, -um, numeral adj. *fifth*
quis (**quī**), **quae**, **quid** (**quod**), interrog. pron. and adj. *who? what? which?* (§ 483)
quis (**quī**), **qua** (**quae**), **quid** (**quod**), indef. pron. and adj., used after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**, *any one, anything, some one, something, any, some* (§ 484)
quisquam, **quicquam** or **quidquam** (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. *any one (at all), anything (at all)* (§ 486)
quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque** (**quodque**), indef. pron. and adj. *each, each one, every* (§ 484)
quō, interrog. and rel. adv. *whither, where*
quō, conj. *in order to, that*, with comp. degree (§ 350)
quod, conj. *because, in that*. Cf. **quia**
quoque, conj., following an emphatic word, *also, too*. Cf. **etiam**
quot-annīs, adv. [**quot**, *how many* + **annus**, *year*], *every year, yearly*
quotiēns, interrog. and rel. adv. *how often? as often as*

R

- rādīx**, -īcis, f. *root; foot*
rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *seize, snatch*

re-linguō

- rārō**, adv. [**rārus**, *rare*], *rarely*
rārus, -a, -um, adj. *rare*
re- or **red-**, an inseparable prefix, *again, back, anew, in return*
rebelliō, -ōnis, f. *renewal of war, rebellion*
recēns, -entis, adj. *recent*
re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [**re-**, *back*, + **capiō**, *take*], *take back, receive*. **sē recipere**, *withdraw, retreat*
re-clīnātus, -a, -um, part. of **reclīnō**, *leaning back*
re-creātus, -a, -um, part. of **recreō**, *refreshed*
rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **regō**, *keep straight*], *straight, direct*
re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse*
red-āctus, -a, -um, part. of **redigō**, *reduced, subdued*
red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [**red-**, *back*, + **eō**, *go*], *go back, return* (§ 413). Cf. **revertō**
reditus, -ūs, m. [cf. **redeō**, *return*], *return, going back*
re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [**re-**, *back*, + **dūcō**, *lead*], *lead back*
re-ferō, -ferre, **rettulī**, -lātus [**re-**, *back*, + **ferō**, *bear*], *bear back; report*. **pedem referre**, *withdraw, retreat*
re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**re-**, *again*, + **faciō**, *make*], *make again, repair*. **sē reficere**, *refresh one's self*
rēgīna, -ae, f. [**rēx**, *king*], *queen*
regiō, -ōnis, f. *region, district*
rēgnum, -ī, n. *sovereignty; kingdom*
regō, -ere, **rēxī**, **rēctus** [cf. **rēx**, *king*], *govern, rule* (§ 490)
re-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [**re-**, *back*, + **iaciō**, *hurl*], *hurl back; throw away*
re-linguō, -ere, -liqūī, -lictus [**re-**, *behind*, + **linguō**, *leave*], *leave behind, leave, abandon*

reliquus

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. relinquo, *leave*], *left over, remaining*. As a noun, plur. *the rest*

remotus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of removeo, *remove*], *remote, distant*

re-moveo, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtus [re-, *back*, + moveo, *move*], *remove*

rēmus, -ī, m. *oar*

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *find*

re-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-, *back*, + portō, *carry*], *carry back, bring back, win, gain*

rēs, rei, f. *thing, business, matter, deed, event, circumstance* (§ 467). *quam ob rem, for this reason*. *rēs adversae, adversity*. *rēs frumentaria, grain supplies*. *rēs gestae, exploits*. *rēs militaris, science of war*. *rēs publica, the commonwealth*. *rēs secundae, prosperity*

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus [re-, *back*, + scindō, *cut*], *cut off, cut down*

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, — [re-, *back*, + sistō, *cause to stand*], *oppose, resist, with dat.* (§ 501. 14)

re-spondeo, -ere, -spondī, -spōnsus [re-, *in return*, + spondeo, *promise*], *answer, reply* (§ 420. a)

re-vertō, -ere, -ī, —, or dep. verb re-vertor, -ī, -sus sum [re-, *back*, + vertō, *turn*], *turn back, return*. Usually active in the perf. system

re-vinciō, -īre, -vīnxī, -vinctus [re-, *back*, + vinciō, *bind*], *fasten*

rēx, rēgis, m. [cf. regō, *rule*], *king*

Rhēnus, -ī, m. *the Rhine*, a river of Germany

rīpa, -ae, f. *bank*

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *ask*. Cf. petō, postulō, quaerō

sapiēns

Rōma, -ae, f. *Rome*. See map

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, *Rome*], *Roman*, follows its noun. As a noun, m. and f. *a Roman*

rosa, -ae, f. *rose*

rōstrum, -ī, n. *beak* of a ship. In plur., *the rostra*, the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum

rota, -ae, f. *wheel*

Rubicō, -ōnis, m. *the Rubicon*, a river in northern Italy. See map

rūmor, -ōris, m. *report, rumor*

rūrsus, adv. [for reversus, *turned back*], *again, in turn*

rūs, rūris (locative abl. rūrī, no gen., dat., or abl. plur.), n. *the country* (§ 501. 36. 1). Cf. ager, patria, terra

S

Sabīnus, -a, -um, adj. *Sabine*. As a noun, m. and f. *a Sabine*. The Sabines were an ancient people of central Italy. See map

sacrum, -ī, n. [sacer, *consecrated*], *something consecrated, sacrifice*; usually in plur., *religious rites*

saepe, adv., compared saepius, saepissimē, *often, frequently*

saevus, -a, -um, adj. *cruel, savage*

sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow*

saliō, -īre, -uī, saltus, *jump*

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety; health*. salūtem dicere, *send greetings*

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [salūs, *health*], *greet, salute*

salvē, inv. of salveo, *hail, greetings*

sanguis, -inis, m. *blood* (§ 247. 2. a)

sānitās, -ātis, f. [sānus, *sound*], *health, sanity*

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [part. of sapiō, *be wise*], *wise, sensible*

satis

satis, adv. and indecl. noun, *enough, sufficient, sufficiently*

saxum, -ī, n. *rock, stone*

scelus, -eris, n. *crime, sin*

scēptrum, -ī, n. *scepter*

schola, -ae, f. *school, the higher grades. Cf. lūdus*

scientia, -ae, f. [sciēns, *knowing*], *skill, knowledge, science*

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, *cut, tear*

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *know* (§ 420. b).

Cf. cognōscō

scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, *write*

scūtum, -ī, n. *shield, buckler*

sē, see suī

sēcum = sē + cum

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, *follow*], *following, next, second; favorable, successful. rēs secundae, prosperity*

sed, conj. *but, on the contrary. nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also*

sēdecim, indecl. numeral adj. *sixteen*

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, *sit*

semper, adv. *always, forever*

senātus, -ūs, m. [cf. senex, *old*], *council of elders, senate*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, know, perceive* (§ 420. d). Cf. intellegō, videō

septem, indecl. numeral adj. *seven*

septimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. *seventh*

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, dep. verb, *follow* (§ 493)

serpēs, -entis, f. [serpō, *crawl*], *serpent, snake*

sertae, -ārum, f. plur. *wreaths, garlands*

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, *slave*], *slavery, servitude*

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, rescue, keep*

solvō

servus, -ī, m. *slave*

sēsē, emphatic for sē

sex, indecl. numeral adj. *six*

Sextus, -ī, m. *Sextus*, a Roman first name

sī, conj. *if*

sīc, adv. *thus, in this way. Cf. ita, tam*

Sicilia, -ae, f. *Sicily. See map*

sīc-ut, *just as, as if*

signifer, -erī, m. [signum, *standard*, + ferō, *bear*], *standard bearer* (p. 224)

signum, -ī, n. *ensign, standard; signal*

silva, -ae, f. *wood, forest*

similis, -e, adj., compared similior, simillimus, *like, similar* (§ 307)

simul, adv. *at the same time*

simul ac or simul atque, conj. *as soon as*

sine, prep. with abl. *without* (§ 209)

singulī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *one at a time, single* (§ 334)

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left*

Sinuessa, -ae, f. *Sinues'sa*, a town in Campania. See map

sitis, -is (acc. -im, abl. -ī, no plur.), f. *thirst*

situs, -a, -um, adj. [part. of sinō, *set*], *situated, placed, lying*

socius, soci, m. *comrade, ally*

sōl, sōlis (no gen. plur.), m. *sun*

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, semi-dep. verb, *be wont, be accustomed*

sollicitus, -a, -um, adj. *disturbed, anxious*

solum, adv. [sōlus, *alone*], *alone, only. nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also*

sōlus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), adj. *alone, only* (§ 108)

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen, unbind. nāvem solvere, set sail*

somnus

somnus, -ī, m. *sleep*
 soror, -ōris, f. *sister*
 spatium, spatī, n. *space, distance; time; opportunity*
 spectāculum, -ī, n. [spectō, *look at*], *show, spectacle*
 spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at, witness*
 spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs, *hope*], *hope, expect* (§ 420. c)
 spēs, spei, f. *hope* (§ 273. 2)
 splendidē, adv. [splendidus], *compared splendidus, splendidissimē, splendidly, handsomely*
 splendidus, -a, -um, adj. *brilliant, gorgeous, splendid*
 Stabiānus, -a, -um, *Stabian*
 stabulum, -ī, n. [cf. stō, *stand*], *standing place, stable, stall*
 statim, adv. [cf. stō, *stand*], *on the spot, at once, instantly*
 statua, -ae, f. [sistō, *place, set*], *statue*
 statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [status, *station*], *decide, determine*
 stilus, -ī, m. *iron pencil, style* (p. 210)
 stō, -āre, steti, status, *stand*
 strātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of sternō, *spread*], *paved* (of streets)
 strepitus, -ūs, m. [strepō, *make a noise*], *noise, din*
 stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus, *bind tight; draw, unsheathe*
 studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *give attention to, be eager, with dat.* (§ 501. 14)
 studium, studi, n. [cf. studeō, *be eager for*], *eagerness, desire, zeal, devotion*
 stultus, -a, -um, adj. *foolish, stupid*
 Stymp̄hālis, -idis, adj. f. *Stymphalian, of Stymp̄hālus, a lake in southern Greece*

super-sum

Stymp̄hālus, -ī, m. *Stymp̄hālus, a district of southern Greece with a town, mountain, and lake, all of the same name*
 suādeō, -ēre, -sī, -sus, *advise, recommend, with subjv. of purpose* (§ 501. 41)
 sub, prep. with acc. and abl. *under, below, up to; at or to the foot of*
 sub-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [sub, *under, + agō, drive*], *subdue, reduce*
 subitō, adv. [subitus, *sudden*], *suddenly*
 sub-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [sub, *below, + sequor, follow*], *follow close after, follow up*
 suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [sub, *below, + cēdō, go*], *follow, succeed*
 suī, reflexive pron. *of himself (herself, itself, themselves)* (§ 480). sēcum = sē + cum. sēsē, emphatic form of sē
 sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, irreg. verb, *be; exist* (§ 494)
 summus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, *compared superus, superior, suprēmus or summus* (§ 312), *supreme, highest; best; greatest. in summō colle, on the top of the hill*
 sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take up; assume, put on. sūmere supplicium dē, inflict punishment on*
 super, prep. with acc. and abl. *over, above*
 superbia, -ae, f. [superbus, *proud*], *pride, arrogance*
 superbus, -a, -um, adj. *proud, haughty*
 superior, comp. of superus
 superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [superus, *above*], *go over; subdue, overcome; surpass, excel*
 super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be over, survive, with dat.* (§ 501. 15)

superus

superus, -a, -um, adj., compared superior, *suprēmus* or *summus*, *above*, *upper* (§ 312)

supplicium, *suppli'cī*, n. [*supplex*, *kneeling in entreaty*], *punishment*, *torture*. *supplicium sūmere dē*, *inflict punishment on*. *supplicium dare*, *suffer punishment*

surgō, -ere, *surrēxī*, — [sub, *from below*, + *regō*, *straighten*], *rise*

sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [sub, *under*, + *capiō*, *take*], *undertake*, *assume*, *begin*

suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, *suspect*, *surmise*, *suppose*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [sub, *under*, + *teneō*, *hold*], *hold up*, *bear*, *sustain*, *withstand*

suus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. and pron., *his*, *her*, *hers*, *its*, *their*, *theirs* (§ 98)

T

T., abbreviation of *Titus*

taberna, -ae, f. *shop*, *stall*

tabula, -ae, f. *tablet* for writing

tālis, -e, adj. *such*. *tālis . . . quālis*, *such . . . as*

tam, adv. *so*, *such*. Cf. *ita*, *sic*

tamen, adv. *yet*, *however*, *nevertheless*

tandem, adv. *at length*, *finally*

tangō, -ere, *tetigī*, *tāctus*, *touch*

tantum, adv. [*tantus*], *only*

tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great*, *such*. *tantus . . . quantus*, *as large as*

tardus, -a, -um, adj. *slow*, *late*; *lazy*

Tarpēia, -ae, f. *Tarpeia* (pronounced *Tar-pē'ya*), the maiden who opened the citadel to the Sabines

Tarquinius, *Tarqui'nī*, *Tarquin*, a Roman king. With the surname *Superbus*, *Tarquin the Proud*

timeō

Tarracīna, -ae, f. *Tarraci'na*, a town in Latium. See map

taurus, -ī, m. *bull*

tēctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of *tegō*, *cover*], *covered*, *protected*

tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon*

temerē, adv. *rashly*, *heedlessly*

tempestās, -ātis, f. [*tempus*, *time*]. *storm*, *tempest*

templum, -ī, n. *temple*, *shrine*

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *try*, *test*; *make trial of*, *attempt*

tempus, -oris, n. *time* (§ 464. 2. b). in *reliquum tempus*, *for the future*

teneō, -ēre, *tenuī*, —, *hold*, *keep*

tergum, -ī, n. *back*. *ā tergō*, *on the rear*. *tergum vertere*, *retreat*, *flee*

ternī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *three each*, *by threes* (§ 334)

terra, -ae, f. *earth*, *ground*, *land*. *orbis terrārum*, *the whole world*

terror, -ōris, m. [cf. *terreō*, *frighten*], *dread*, *alarm*, *terror*

tertius, -a, -um, numeral adj. *third*

Teutonēs, -um, m. *the Teutons*

theātrum, -ī, n. *theater*

Thēbae, -ārum, f. *Thebes*, a city of Greece

Thēbānī, -ōrum, m. *Thebans*, the people of Thebes

thermae, -ārum, f. plur. *baths*

Thessalia, -ae, f. *Thessaly*, a district of northern Greece

Thrācia, -ae, f. *Thrace*, a district north of Greece

Tiberius, *Tibe'ri*, m. *Tiberius*, a Roman first name

tībīcen, -inis, m. [cf. *tibia*, *pipe*], *pipe*, *flute player*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear*, *be afraid of*. Cf. *vereor*

timor

timor, -ōris, m. [cf. *timeō*, *fear*], *fear, dread, alarm*. Cf. *metus*

Tīryns, Tīrynthīs, f. *Tīryns*, an ancient town in southern Greece, where Hercules served Eurystheus

toga, -ae, f. [cf. *tegō*, *cover*], *toga*

tormentum, -ī, n. *engine of war*

totiēns, adv. *so often, so many times*

tōtus, -a, -um (gen. -iūs, dat. -ī), adj. *all, the whole, entire* (§ 108)

trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [trāns, *across*, + *dō*, *deliver*], *give up, hand over, surrender, betray*

trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [trāns, *across*, + *dūcō*, *lead*], *lead across*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, pull, drag*. **multum trahere**, *protract, prolong much*

trā-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [trāns, *across*, + *iaciō*, *hurl*], *throw across; transfix*

trā-nō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [trāns, *across*, + *nō*, *swim*], *swim across*

trāns, prep. with acc. *across, over* (§ 340)

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [trāns, *across*, + *eō*, *go*], *go across, cross* (§ 413)

trāns-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus [trāns, *through*, + *figō*, *drive*], *transfix*

trānsitus, — (acc. -um, abl. -ū), m. [cf. *trānseō*, *cross over*], *passage across*

trēs, tria, numeral adj. *three* (§ 479)

trīduum, trīduī, n. [trēs, *three*, + *diēs*, *days*], *three days' time, three days*

trīgintā, indecl. numeral adj. *thirty*

triplex, -icis, adj. *threefold, triple*

trīstis, -e, adj. *sad; severe, terrible*

trīstitia, -ae, f. [trīstis, *sad*], *sadness, sorrow*

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [triumphus, *triumph*], *celebrate a triumph*

ūsus

triumphus, -ī, m. *triumphal procession, triumph*. **triumphum agere**, *celebrate a triumph*

trucidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cut to pieces, slaughter*. Cf. *interficiō*, *necō*, *occidō*

tū, tuī (plur. vōs), pers. pron. *thou, you* (§ 480)

tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet*

Tullia, -ae, f. *Tullia*, a Roman name

tum, adv. *then, at that time*

turris, -is, f. *tower* (§ 465. 2)

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. *safe*

tuus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. *your, yours* (§ 98)

U

ubi, rel. and interrog. adv. *where, when*

ubique, adv. *everywhere*

ūllus, -a, -um (gen. -iūs, dat. -ī), adj. *any* (§ 108)

ulterior, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp., superl. *ultimus*, *farther, more remote* (§ 315)

ultimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree (see *ulterior*), *farthest* (§ 315)

umbra, -ae, f. *shade*

umerus, -ī, m. *shoulder*

umquam, adv. *ever, at any time*

ūnā, adv. [ūnus, *one*], *in the same place, at the same time*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [ūnus, *one*, + *decimus*, *tenth*], *eleventh*

undique, adv. *from every quarter, on all sides, everywhere*

ūnus, -a, -um (gen. -iūs, dat. -ī), numeral adj. *one; alone* (§ 108)

urbs, -is, f. *city* (§ 465. a)

urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, *press upon, crowd, hem in*

ūrus, -ī, m. *wild ox, urus*

ūsque, adv. *all the way, even*

ūsus, -ūs, m. *use, advantage*

ut

ut, conj. with the subjv. *that, in order that, that not* (with verbs of fearing), *so that, to* (§ 350. 1)

uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), interrog. pron. *which of two? which?* (§ 108)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each of two, each, both*. ab *utrāque parte, on both sides*

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor, *use*], *useful*

utrimque, adv. [uterque, *each of two*], *on each side, on either hand*

ūva, -ae, f. *grape, bunch of grapes*

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife*

V

vāgīna, -ae, *sheath, scabbard*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, *wander*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be powerful, be well*; in the imperative as a greeting, *farewell*. plurimum *valēre, have the most power*

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō, *be well*], *health*

validus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. valeō, *be strong*], *strong, able, well*

vallēs, -is, f. *valley*

vāllum, -ī, n. *rampart, earthworks*

varius, -a, -um, adj. *bright-colored*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vāstus, *empty*], *(make empty), devastate, lay waste*

vectigal, -ālis, n. *tax, tribute*

vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, *eager*], compared *vehementius, vehementissimē, eagerly, vehemently*

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, 'convey, carry'. In the passive often in the sense of *ride, sail*

vel, conj. *or*. *vel . . . vel, either . . . or*. Cf. *aut*

via

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. [vēlōx, *swift*], *swiftness*

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj. *swift, fleet*

vēlum, -ī, n. *sail*

vēndō, -ere, vëndidī, vënditus, *sell*

veniō, -īre, vënī, ventus, *come, go*

ventus, -ī, m. *wind*

verbum, -ī, n. *word*. *verba facere prō, speak in behalf of*

vereor, -ērī, -ītus sum, dep. verb, *fear; reverence, respect* (§ 493). Cf. *timeō*

Vergilius, Vergi'li, m. *Vergil, the poet*

vergō, -ere, —, —, —, *turn, lie*

vērō, adv. [vērus, *true*], *in truth, surely*; conj. *but, however*. *tum vērō, then you may be sure*, introducing the climax of a story

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn, change*. *tergum vertere, retreat, flee*

vērus, -a, -um, *true, actual*

vesper, -erī, m. *evening*

vester, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. *your, yours* (§ 98)

vestigium, vesti'gī, n. [cf. *vestigō, track*], *footstep, track, trace*

vestīmentum, -ī, n. [vestis, *clothing*], *garment*

vestiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [vestis, *clothing*], *clothe, dress*

vestis, -is, f. *clothing, attire, garment, robe*

vestītus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of *vestiō, clothe*], *clothed*

Vesuvius, Vesu'vi, m. *Vesuvius, the volcano near Pompeii*. See map

veterānus, -a, -um, adj. *old, veteran*

vetō, -āre, -uī, -ītus, *forbid, prohibit*

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trouble, annoy*

via, -ae, f. *way, road, street; way, manner*. Cf. *iter*

viātor

viātor, -ōris, m. [via], *traveler*

victor, -ōris, m. [vincō, *conquer*], *conqueror, victor*. In apposition, with adj. force, *victorious*

victōria, -ae, f. [victor, *victor*], *victory*

vīcus, -ī, m. *village*

videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus, *see, perceive*.

Pass. *be seen; seem* (§ 420. d)

vigilia, -ae, f. [vigil, *awake*], *watch*. dē

tertiā vigiliā, *about the third watch*

vīginti, indecl. numeral adj. *twenty*

vīlicus, -ī, m. [villa, *farm*], *steward, overseer of a farm*

vīlla, -ae, f. *farm, villa*

vinciō, -ire, vīxī, vīctus, *bind, tie, fetter*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat, overcome*. Cf. subigō, superō

vīnea, -ae, f. *shed* (p. 219)

vīnum, -ī, n. *wine*

violenter, adv. [violentus, *violent*], compared violentius, violentissimē, *violently, furiously*

vir, virī, m. *man, husband; hero* (§ 462. c)

virīlis, -e, adj. [vir, *man*], *manly*

virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir, *man*], *manliness; courage, valor; virtue* (§ 464. 1)

vulpēs

vīs, (vīs), f. *strength, power, might, violence* (§ 468)

vīta, -ae, f. [cf. vīvō, *live*], *life*. vītam agere, *spend or pass life*

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *shun, avoid*

vīvō, -ere, vixī, —, *live*. Cf. habitō, incolō

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. vīvō, *live*], *alive, living*

vix, adv. *scarcely, hardly*

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call, summon, invite*. Cf. appellō, nōminō

volō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, *fly*

volō, velle, volui, —, irreg. verb. *will, be willing, wish* (§ 497). Cf. cupiō

volūmen, -inis, n. *roll, book*

Vorēnus, -ī, m. *Vorénus*, a centurion

vōs, pers. pron. *you* (see tū) (§ 480)

vōtum, -ī, n. [neut. part. of voveō, *vow*], *vow, pledge, prayer*

vōx, vōcis, f. [cf. vocō, *call*], *voice, cry; word*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vulnus, *wound*], *wound, hurt*

vulnus, -eris, n. *wound, injury*

vulpēs, -is, f. *fox*



EQUES ROMANUS

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains only the words used in the English-Latin exercises. For details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation.

A

a, an, *commonly not translated*

able (be), possum, posse, potuī, —

(§ 495)

abode, domicilium, domici'lī, *n.*

about (*adv.*), circiter

about (*prep.*), dē, *with abl.*

about to, *expressed by fut. act. part.*

abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

across, trāns, *with acc.*

active, ācer, ācris, ācre

advance, prōgredior, 3

advantage, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*

advise, moneō, 2

after (*conj.*), postquam; *often expressed by the perf. part.*

after (*prep.*), post, *with acc.*

against, in, contrā, *with acc.*

aid, auxilium, auxi'lī, *n.*

all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)

allow, patior, 3

ally, socius, soci, *m.*

almost, paene; ferē

alone, ūnus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um (§ 108)

already, iam

also, quoque

always, semper

ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

among, apud, *with acc.*

ancient, antīquus, -a, -um

and, et; atque (ac); -que

and so, itaque

Andromeda, Andromeda, -ae, *f.*

angry, irātus, -a, -um

animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*

announce, nūntiō, 1

annoying, molestus, -a, -um

another, alius, -a, -ud (§ 109)

any, ūllus, -a, -um (§ 108)

any one, anything, quisquam, quicquam or quidquam (§ 486)

appearance, fōma, -ae, *f.*

appoint, creō, 1

approach, adpropinquō, 1, *with dat.*

are, *used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula*, sum (§ 494)

arise, orior, 4

arm, braccium, bracchī, *n.*

armed, armātus, -a, -um

arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*

around, circū, *with acc.*

arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*

arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*

art of war, rēs militāris

as possible, *expressed by quam and superl.*

ask, petō, 3; quaerō, 3; rogō, 1

assail, oppugnō, 1

at, in, *with acc. or abl.; with names of towns, locative case or abl. without a preposition* (§ 268); *time when*, abl.

at once

at once, statim

at the beginning of summer, initā
aestāte

Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f.*

attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*

attempt, cōnor, 1; temptō, 1

away from, ā or ab, *with abl.*

B

bad, malus, -a, -um

baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*

barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

battle, proelium, proelī, *n.*; pugna, -ae, *f.*

be, sum (§ 494)

be absent, be far, absum (§ 494)

be afraid, timeō, 2; vereor, 2

be away, absum (§ 494)

be in command of, praesum, *with dat.*
(§§ 494, 426)

be informed, certior fiō

be off, be distant, absum (§ 494)

be without, egeō, *with abl.* (§ 180)

beast (wild), fera, -ae, *f.*

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum

because, quia; quod

because of, propter, *with acc.*; or *abl.*
of cause

before, heretofore (*adv.*), antea

before (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*; prō,
with abl.

begin, incipiō, 3

believe, crēdō, 3, *with dat.* (§ 153)

belong to, predicate genitive (§ 409)

best, optimus, *superl. of bonus*

betray, trādō, 3

better, melior, *comp. of bonus*

between, inter, *with acc.*

billow, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*

bird, avis, -is, *f.* (§ 243. 1)

blood, sanguis, -inis, *m.*

carry

boat, nāvigium, nāvīgī, *n.*

body, corpus, -oris, *n.*

bold, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e

boldly, audācter; fortiter

boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*

booty, praeda, -ae, *f.* [utrumque

both, each (*of two*), uterque, utraque,

both . . . and, et . . . et

boy, puer, -erī, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e

bravely, fortiter

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*

bright, clārus, -a, -um

bring back, reportō, 1

bring upon, inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,
with acc. and dat. (§ 426)

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

building, aedificium, aedifi'ci, *n.*

burn, cremō, 1; incendō, 3

business, negōtium, negō'tī, *n.*

but, however, autem, sed

by, ā, ab, *with abl.*; *denoting means,*
abl. alone; sometimes implied in a
participle

by night, noctū

C

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*

calamity, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*

call, vocō, 1; appellō, 1; nōminō, 1

call together, convocō, 1

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

can, could, possum, posse, potuī,
— (§ 495)

capture, capiō, 3; occupō, 1

care, cūra, -ae, *f.*

care for, cūrō, 1

careful, attentus, -a, -um

carefulness, diligentia, -ae, *f.*

carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (§ 498);
portō, 1

carry on

carry on, gerō, 3
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
cease, cessō, 1
Cepheus, Cēpheus, -ī, *m.*
certain (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
 (quiddam) (§ 485)
chicken, gallīna, -ae, *f.*
chief, princeps, -cipis, *m.*
children, liberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, 3
choose, elect, creō, 1
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m. and f.* (§ 243. 1)
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
clear, clārus, -a, -um
cohort, cohors, -rtis, *f.*
come, veniō, 4
command, imperō, 1, *with dat.*
 (§ 45); iubeō, 2; praesum, *with*
 dat. (§ 426)
commit, committō, 3
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, rei pūbli-
 cae
concerning, dē, *with abl.*
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3
construct (*a ditch*), perdūcō, 3
consul, cōsul, -ulis, *m.*
contrary to, contrā, *with acc.*
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*
Cornelius, Cornēlius, Cornē'li, *m.*
corselet, lōrica, -ae, *f.*
cottage, casa, -ae, *f.*
country, *as distinguished from the city*,
 rūs, rūris, *n.*; *as territory*, finēs, -ium,
 m., plur. of finis
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
crime, scelus, -eris, *n.*
cross, trānseō, 4 (§ 499)
crown, corōna, -ae, *f.*

dwelling

D

daily, cotīdiē
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
daughter, filia, -ae, *f.* (§ 67)
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
daybreak, prīma lūx
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
deed, rēs, rei, *f.*
deep, altus, -a, -um
defeat, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
defend, dēfendō, 3
delay (*noun*), mora, -ae, *f.*
delay (*verb*), moror, 1
demand, postulō, 1
dense, dēnsus, -a, -um
depart, discēdō, 3; exeō, 4; profi-
 ciscor, 3
dependent, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
design, cōnsilium, consi'li, *n.*
desire, cupiō, 3
destroy, dēleō, 2
Diana, Diāna, -ae, *f.*
differ, differō, differre, distulī, dilātus
 (§ 498)
different, dissimilis, -e
difficult, difficilis, -e
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f.*
dinner, cēna, -ae, *f.*
disaster, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
distant (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfu-
 tūrus (§ 494)
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
do, agō, 3; faciō, 3; *when used as an*
 iliary, not translated
down from, dē, *with abl.*
drag, trahō, 3
drive, agō, 3
dwell, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vīvō, 3
dwelling, aedificium, aedifi'ci, *n.*

each

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (§ 484)
each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque
each other, inter *with acc. of a reflexive*
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; alacer, alacris, alacre
eager (be), studeō, 2
eagerness, studium, studi, *n.*
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
easily, facile
easy, facilis, -e
either . . . or, aut . . . aut
empire, imperium, impe'ri, *n.*
employ, negōtium dō
encourage, hortor, 1
enemy, hostis, -is, *m. and f.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
enough, satis
entire, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)
expectation, opiniō, -ōnis, *f.*
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

F

faithless, perfidus, -a, -um
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far, longē
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farther, ulterior, -ius
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fatherland, patria, -ae, *f.*
favor, faveō, 2
favorable, idōneus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um
fear, metus, -ūs, *m.*; timor, -ōris, *m.*
fear, be afraid, timeō, 2
few, paucī, -ae, -a
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fifteen, quīndecim
fight, contendō, 3; pugnō, 1

full

find, reperiō, 4
finish, cōficiō, 3
fire, ignis, -is, *m.* (§ 243.1)
firmness, cōstantia, -ae, *f.*
first, prīmus, -a, -um
flee, fugiō, 3
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
fly, volō, 1
foe, see **enemy**
follow close after, subsequor, 3
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
for (conj.), enim, nam
for (prep.), *sign of dat.*; dē, prō, *with abl.*; *to express purpose*, ad, *with gerundive*; *implied in acc. of time and of extent of space*
for a long time, diū
forbid, vetō, 1
forces, cōpia, -ārum, *f., plur. of cōpia*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
fort, castellum, -ī, *n.*; castrum, -ī, *n.*
fortification, mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortify, mūniō, 4
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um
free, liber, -era, -erum
free, liberate, liberō, 1
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly (adj.), amīcus, -a, -um
friendly (adv.), amīcē
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, perterreō, 2
from, ā or ab, dē, ē, ex, *with abl. Often expressed by the separative ablative without a prep.*
from each other, inter, *with acc. of a reflexive pron.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um

Galba

G

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*
 garland, corōna, -ae, *f.*
 garrison, praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*
 gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
 Gaul (a), Gallus, -ī, *m.*
 general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
 Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
 gentle, lēnis, -e
 German, Germānus, -a, -um
 Germans (the), Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*
plur.
 Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f.*
 get (*dinner*), parō, *i*
 girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
 give, dō, dare, dedī, datus
 give over, surrender, dēdō, 3; trādō, 3
 give up, omittō, 3
 go, eō, 4 (§ 499)
 go forth, prōgredior, 3
 god, deus, -ī, *m.* (§ 468)
 goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (§ 67)
 gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
 good, bonus, -a, -um
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
 grain supply, rēs frūmentāria
 great, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um
 greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um
 guard, praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*

H

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
 happy, laetus, -a, -um
 harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
 hasten, contendō, 3; mātūrō, *i*; pro-
 perō, *i*
 hateful, invīsus, -a, -um
 haughty, superbus, -a, -um
 have, habēō, 2

in

have no power, nihil possum
 he, is; hic; iste; ille; *or not expressed*
 head, caput, -itis, *n.*
 hear, audiō, 4
 heart, animus, -ī, *m.*
 heavy, gravis, -e
 Helvetii (the), Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 hem in, contineō, 2
 hen, gallīna, -ae, *f.*
 her, eius; huius; istius; illius; *reflex-*
ive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
 hide, abdō, 3
 high, altus, -a, -um
 highest, summus, -a, -um
 hill, collis, -is, *m.*
 himself, suī. See self
 hindrance, impedimentum, -ī, *n.*
 his, eius; huius; istius; illius; *reflexive*,
 suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
 hither, citerior, -ius (§ 315)
 hold, teneō, 2
 home, domus, -ūs, *f.* (§ 468). at home,
 domī (§ 267)
 hope (*noun*), spēs, speī, *f.*
 hope (*verb*), spērō, *i*
 horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
 horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
 hostage, obses, -idis, *m. and f.*
 hostile, inimīcus, -a, -um
 hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
 house, domicilium, domici'li, *n.*;
 domus, -ūs, *f.* (§ 468)
 hurl, iaciō, 3

I

I, ego (§ 280); *or not expressed*
 if, sī. if not, nisi
 ill, aeger, -gra, -grum
 immediately, statim
 in (*of place*), in, *with abl.*; (*of time or*
of specification) *abl. without prep.*

in order that

in order that, ut, *with subjv.*; in order that not, lest, nē, *with subjv.*

in vain, frūstrā

industry, diligentia, -ae, *f.*

inflict injuries upon, iniūriās inferō *with dat.* (§ 426)

inflict punishment on, supplicium sūmō de

inform some one, aliquem certiorem faciō

injure, noceō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 153)

injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

into, in, *with acc.*

intrust, committō, 3; mandō, 1

invite, vocō, 1

is, *used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula*, sum (§ 494)

island, insula, -ae, *f.*

it, is; hic; iste; ille; *or not expressed*

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

its, eius; huius; istius; illius; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)

itself, suī. See self

J

join battle, proelium committō

journey, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 468)

judge (*noun*), iūdex, -icis, *m.*

judge (*verb*), iūdicō, 1

Julia, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*

just now, nūper

K

keep, contineō, 2; prohibeō, 2; teneō, 2

keep on doing something, *expressed by the impf. indic.*

kill, interficiō, 3; necō, 1; occidō, 3

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*

kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

know, cognōscō, 3, *in perf.*; sciō, 4

love

L

labor (*noun*), labor, -ōris, *m.*

labor (*verb*), labōrō, 1

lack (*noun*), inopia, -ae, *f.*

lack (*verb*), egeō, 2, *with abl.* (§ 180)

lady, domina, -ae, *f.*

lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.* (§ 260. 2)

land, terra, -ae, *f.*

language, lingua, -ae, *f.*

large, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um

larger, maior, maius

lately, nūper

Latona, Lātōna, -ae, *f.*

law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*

lay waste, vāstō, 1

lead, dūcō, 3

leader, dux, ducis, *m. and f.*

learn, know, cognōscō, 3

leave, depart from, discēdō, 3

leave behind, abandon, relinqūō, 3

left, sinister, -tra, -trum

legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

legionaries, legiōnārii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

length, longitūdō, -inis, *f.*

lest, nē, *with subjv.*

letter (*of the alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f.*; (*an epistle*) litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

like (*adj.*), similis, -e

like, love, amō, 1

line of battle, aciēs, aciēi, *f.*

little, parvus, -a, -um

live, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vivō, 3

long, longus, -a, -um

long, for a long time, diū

long for, dēsiderō, 1

look after, cūrō, 1

love, amō, 1

maid

M

maid, maid servant, ancilla, -ae, *f.*

make, faciō, 3

make war upon, bellum inferō *with dat.* (§ 426)

man, homō, -inis, *m. and f.*; vir, viri, *m.*

man-of-war, nāvis longa

many, multī, -ae, -a, *plur. of* multus

march, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 468)

Mark, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*

marriage, mātrimonium, mātirimōnī, *n.*

master, dominus, -ī, *m.*; magister, -trī, *m.*

matter, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*; rēs, reī, *f.*

means, by means of, *the abl.*

messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*

midnight, media nox

mile, mille passuum (§ 331. b)

miles, milia passuum

mind, animus, -ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*

mine, meus, -a, -um

mistress, domina, -ae, *f.*

money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*

monster, mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*

month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*

moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*

more (*adj.*), plūs, plūris (§ 313); *or a comparative. Adverb, magis*

most (*adj.*), plūrimus, -a, -um; *superl. degree. Adverb, maximē; plūrimum*

mother, māter, mātis, *f.*

mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*

move, moveō, 2

moved, commōtus, -a, -um

much (*by*), multō

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*

my, meus, -a, -um

myself, mē, *reflexive. See self*

once

N

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*

nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*

near, propinquus, -a, -um

nearest, proximus, -a, -um

nearly, ferē

neighbor, finitimus, -ī, *m.*

neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um

neither, neque *or* nec; neither . . . nor,

neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)

never, numquam

nevertheless, tamen

new, novus, -a, -um

next day, postrīdiē eius diēi

next to, proximus, -a, -um

night, nox, noctis, *f.*

nine, novem

no, minimē; *or repeat verb with a negative* (§ 210)

no, none, nullus, -a, -um (§ 109)

no one, nēmō, nullius

nor, neque *or* nec

not, nōn

not even, nē . . . quidem

not only . . . but also, nōn solum . . . sed etiam

nothing, nihil *or* nihilum, -ī, *n.*

now, nunc

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

obey, pāreō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 153)

of, *sign of gen.*; dē, *with abl.*; out of, ē *or* ex, *with abl.*

often, saepe

on (*of place*), in, *with abl.*; (*of time*) *abl. without prep.*

on account of, propter, *with acc.*; *or abl. of cause*

on all sides, undique

once (*upon a time*), ōlim

one

one, ūnus, -a, -um (§ 108)
 one . . . another, alius . . . alius
 (§ 110)
 only (*adv.*), solum; tantum
 opportune, opportūnus, -a, -um
 opposite, adversus, -a, -um
 oracle, ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*
 orator, ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
 order, imperō, 1; iubeō, 2
 ornament, ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*
 other, alius, -a, -ud (§ 109)
 others (the), reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 ought, dēbeō, 2
 our, noster, -tra, -trum
 ourselves, nōs, *as reflexive object. See*
 self

overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3
 own (his, her, its, their), suus, -a, -um

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*
 peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
 people, populus, -ī, *m.*
 Perseus, Perseus, -ī, *m.*
 persuade, persuādeō, 2, *with dat.*
 (§ 153)
 pitch camp, castra pōnō
 place (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m.*
 place, arrange, conlocō, 1
 place, put, pōnō, 3
 place in command, praeficiō, 3, *with*
acc. and dat. (§ 426)
 plan (a), cōnsilium, cōnsilī, *n.*
 please, placeō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 154)
 pleasing, grātus, -a, -um
 plow, arō, 1
 Pompeii, Pompēiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 possible (as), *expressed by quam and*
superl.
 powerful (be), valeō, 2
 praise, laudō, 1

rest

prefer, mālō, mälle, mālūī, — (§ 497)
 prepare for, parō, 1, *with acc.*
 press hard, premō, 3
 protection, fidēs, fideī, *f.*
 province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
 public, pūblicus, -a, -um
 Publius, Pūblius, Pūblī, *m.*
 punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*; suppli-
 cium, supplīcī, *n.*
 purpose, for the purpose of, ut, quī,
or quō, with subjv.; ad, with ger-
und or gerundive; causā, following
the genitive of a gerund or gerun-
dive
 pursue, īnsequor, 3

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
 quickly, celeriter
 quite, *expressed by the comp. degree*

R

rampart, vālium, -ī, *n.*
 rear, novissimum agmen
 reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
 receive, accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3
 recent, recēns, -entis
 recently, nūper
 redoubt, castellum, -ī, *n.*
 refuse, recūsō, 1
 remain, maneō, 2
 remaining, reliquus, -a, -um
 reply, respondeō, 2
 report (*noun*), fāma, -ae, *f.*; rūmor,
 -ōris, *m.*
 report (*verb*), adferō; dēferō; referō
 (§ 498)
 republic, rēs pūblica
 require, postulō, 1
 resist, resistō, 3, *with dat.* (§ 154)
 rest (the), reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

restrain

restrain, contineō, 2
 retainer, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
 retreat, pedem referō; terga vertō
 return, redeō, 4; revertor, 3
 revolution, rēs novae
 Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
 right, dexter, -tra, -trum
 river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*; fluvius, fluvī, *m.*
 road, via, -ae, *f.*
 Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
 Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
 row, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*
 rule, regō, 3
 rumor, fāma, -ae, *f.*; rūmor, -ōris, *m.*
 run, currō, 3

S

sacrifice, sacrum, -ī, *n.*
 safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 sail, nāvigō, 1
 sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
 sake, for the sake of, causā, *following*
a gen.
 same, idem, eadem, idem (§ 287)
 savages, barbarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 save, servō, 1
 say, dīcō, 3
 school, lūdus, -ī, *m.*; schola, -ae, *f.*
 scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
 sea, mare, -is, *n.*
 second, secundus, -a, -um
 see, videō, 2
 seek, petō, 3
 seem, videor, 2, *passive of* videō
 seize, occupō, 1; rapiō, 3
 self, ipse, -a, -um (§ 286); suī (§ 281)
 send, mittō, 3
 set fire to, incendō, 3
 set out, proficiscor, 3
 seven, septem
 Sextus, Sextus, -ī, *m.*

stand

she, ea; haec; ista; illa (§ 115); *or not*
expressed [nāvigī, *n.*
 ship, nāvis, -is, *f.* (§ 243. 1); nāvigium,
 short, brevis, -e
 shout, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
 show, dēmōnstrō, 1
 Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.*
 sick, aeger, -gra, -grum
 side, latus, -eris, *n.*
 siege, obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 since, cum, *with subjv.* (§ 396); *the abl.*
abs. (§ 381)
 sing, canō, 3; cantō, 1
 sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
 sit, sedeō, 2
 size, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 skillful, perītus, -a, -um
 slave, servūs, -ī, *m.*
 slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 slow, tardus, -a, -um
 small, parvus, -a, -um
 snatch, rapiō, 3
 so, ita; sic; tam
 so great, tantus, -a, -um
 so that, ut; so that not, ut nōn
 soldier, miles, -itis, *m.*
 some, *often not expressed*; quis (quī),
 qua (quae), quid (quod); aliquī, ali-
 qua, aliquod
 some one, quis; aliquis (§ 487)
 some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī (§ 110)
 something, quid; aliquid (§ 487)
 son, filius, fili, *m.*
 soon, mox
 space, spatium, spatī, *n.*
 spear, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
 spirited, ācer, ācris, ācre; alacer,
 alacris, alacre
 spring, fōns, fontis, *m.*
 spur, calcar, -āris, *n.*
 stand, stō, 1

state

state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
 station, conlocō, *i*
 steadiness, cōstantia, -ae, *f.*
 stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*
 storm, oppugnō, *i*
 story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
 street, via, -ae, *f.*
 strength, vīs, (vīs), *f.*
 strong, fortis, -e; validus, -a, -um
 sturdy, validus, -a, -um
 such, tālis, -e,
 suddenly, subitō
 suffer punishment, supplicium dō
 sufficiently, satis
 suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
 summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
 sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
 supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
 surrender, trādō, *3*
 suspect, suspicor, *i*
 swift, celer, -eris, -ere; vēlōx, -ōcis
 sword, gladius, gladi, *m.*

T

take, capture, capiō, *3*
 take part in, intersum, -esse, -fuī,
 -futūrus, *with dat.* (§ 426)
 take possession of, occupō, *i*
 tall, altus, -a, -um
 task, opus, operis, *n.*
 teach, doceō, *2*
 teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
 tear (*noun*), lacrima, -ae, *f.*
 tell, dīcō, *3*; nārō, *i*
 ten, decem
 terrified, perterritus, -a, -um
 terrify, perterreō, *2*
 than, quam
 that (*conj.* after verbs of saying and the
 like), not expressed
 that (*pron.*), is; iste; ille

tree

that, in order that, in purpose clauses,
 ut; after verbs of fearing, nē (§§ 349,
 366, 372)
 that not, lest, in purpose clauses, nē;
 after verbs of fearing, ut (§§ 349,
 366, 372)
 the, not expressed
 their, *gen. plur. of is; reflexive*, suus,
 -a, -um (§ 116)
 their own, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
 then, at that time, tum
 then, in the next place, deinde, tum
 there, as expletive, not expressed
 there, in that place, ibi
 therefore, itaque
 they, ii; hī; istī; illi; or not expressed
 think, arbitror, *i*; exīstimō, *i*; putō, *i*
 third, tertius, -a, -um
 this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
 though, cum, *with subjv.* (§ 396)
 thousand, mille (§ 479)
 three, trēs, tria (§ 479)
 through, per, *with acc.*
 thy, tuus, -a, -um
 time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
 to, sign of *dat.*; ad, in, *with acc.*; ex-
 pressing purpose, ut, quī, *with subjv.*;
 ad, *with gerund or gerundive*
 to each other, inter, *with acc. of a*
 reflexive pron.
 to-day, hodiē
 toilsome, dūrus, -a, -um
 tooth, dēns, dentis, *m.*
 top of, summus, -a, -um
 tower, turris, -is, *f.* (§ 243. 2)
 town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
 townsman, oppidānus, -ī, *m.*
 trace, vestīgium, vestīgī, *n.*
 trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
 train, exerceō, *2*
 tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*

tribe

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
 troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
 true, vērūs, -a, -um
 trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
 try, cōnor, 1; temptō, 1
 twelve, duodecim
 two, duo, duae, duo (§ 479)

U

under, sub, *with acc. or abl.*
 undertake, suscipiō, 3
 unharmed, incolumis, -e
 unless, nisi
 unlike, dissimilis, -e
 unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —
 (§ 497)
 up to, sub, *with acc.*
 us, nōs, *acc. plur. of ego*

V

very, *superl. degree*; maximē; ipse, -a, -um (§ 285)
 victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*
 victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
 village, vicus, -ī, *m.*
 violence, vīs, (vīs), *f.*
 violently, vehementer
 voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, 3
 wagón, carrus, -ī, *m.*
 wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
 want, inopia, -ae, *f.*
 war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
 watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
 water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
 wave, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*
 way, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 468); via, -ae, *f.*
 way, manner, modus, -ī, *m.*
 we, nōs, *plur. of ego*; or not expressed

woman

weak, infirmus, -a, -um
 weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*; tēla, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 wear, gerō, 3
 weary, dēfessus, -a, -um
 what, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod) (§ 483)
 when, ubi; cum (§ 396); *often expressed by a participle*
 where, ubi
 which, quī, quae, quod (§ 482); which of two, uter, utra, utrum (§ 108)
 while, *expressed by a participle*
 whither, quō
 who (*rel.*), quī, quae (§ 482); (*interrog.*) quis (§ 483)
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)
 whose, cuius; quōrum, quārum, quōrum, *gen. of quī, quae, quod, rel.*; or of quis, quid, *interrog.*
 why, cūr
 wicked, malus, -a, -um
 wide, lātus, -a, -um
 width, lātitudō, -inis, *f.*
 wild beast, fera, -ae, *f.*
 willing (be), volō, velle, voluī, — (§ 497)
 win (*a victory*), reportō, 1
 wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
 wine, vinum, -ī, *n.*
 wing, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
 winter, hiems, -emis, *f.*
 wisdom, cōsiliū, consilī, *n.*
 wish, cupiō, 3; volō, velle, voluī, — (§ 497); wish not, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (§ 497)
 with, cum, *with abl.*; sometimes *abl. alone*
 withdraw, sē recipere
 without, sine, *with abl.*
 woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris, *f.*

wonderful

wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um

word, verbum, -ī, *n.*

work, labor, -ōris, *m.*; opus, -eris, *n.*

worse, peior, peius, *comp. of* malus

worst, pessimus, -a, -um, *superl. of*
malus

wound (*noun*), vulnus, -eris, *n.*

wound (*verb*), vulnerō, *1*

wreath, corōna, -ae, *f.*

wretched, miser, -era, -erum

wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

zeal

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*

yes, certē; ita; vērō; *or, more usually,*
repeat the verb (§ 210)

yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud

you, *sing.* tū; *plur.* vōs (§ 480); *or not*
expressed

your, *sing.* tuus, -a, -um; *plur.* vester,
-tra, -trum (§ 98. *b*)

Z

zeal, studium, studi, *n.*

INDEX

The numbers in all cases refer to sections.

- ā-declension of nouns**, 57, 461
- ā-verbs, conjugation of**, 488
- ablative case**, 48, 50
 - absolute, 381
 - after a comparative, 309
 - of accompaniment, 104
 - of agent, 181
 - of cause, 102
 - of description, 444, 445
 - of manner, 105
 - of means or instrument, 103
 - of measure of difference, 317
 - of place from which, 179, 264
 - of place where, 265
 - of separation, 180
 - of specification, 398
 - of time, 275
- accent**, 14-16
- accompaniment, abl. of**, 104
- accusative case**, 33
 - as subject of the infinitive, 214
 - object, 37
 - of duration and extent, 336
 - of place to which, 263, 266
 - predicate, 392
 - with prepositions, 340
- adjectives**, 54, 55
 - agreement, 65
 - comparison, regular, 301; by ad-verbs, 302; irregular, 307, 311, 312, 315
 - declension of comparatives, 303
 - of first and second declensions, 83, 93, 469
 - of third declension, 250-257, 471
 - with the dative, 143
- adverbs**, 319
 - comparison, 320, 323
 - formation, regular, 320, 321; irreg-ular, 322, 323
- agent, expressed by the abl. with *ā* or *ab*, 181**
- agreement**
 - of adjectives, 65, 215. *a*
 - of appositives, 81
 - of predicate nouns, 76
 - of relative pronouns, 224
 - of verbs, 28
- aliquis**, 487
- alius**, 108, 110, 470
- alphabet**, 1-3
- alter**, 108, 110
- antepenult**, 9. 3; **accent of**, 15
- apposition**, 80, 81
- article, not used in Latin**, 22. *a*
- base**, 58
- cardinal numerals**, 327-329, 478
- case**, 32. 2
- causal clauses with *cum*, 395, 396**
- cause, expressed by the abl.**, 102
- characteristic, subjv. of**, 389, 390
- comparative, declension of**, 303
- comparison**
 - abl. of, 309
 - degrees of, 300
 - of adjectives, 300-315; irregular, 311-315, 473, 475
 - of adverbs, regular, 320, 476; irreg-ular, 323, 477
 - positive wanting, 315
 - six adjectives in *-lis*, 307
- complementary infinitive**, 215
- compound verbs, with the dative**, 425, 426

concessive clauses with *cum*, 395,
396
conjugation stems, 184
conjugations, the four regular, 126.
488-491; irregular, 494-500
consonants, 2
copula, 21
cum, conjunction, 395
cum, preposition, 209

dative case, 43
 of indirect object, 44, 45
 of purpose, or end for which, 437
 with adjectives, 143
 with compound verbs, 426
 with special verbs, 153
dea, declension of, 67
declension, 23, 32
degree of difference, expressed by the
 abl., 317
demonstrative adjectives and pronouns,
 112-115, 290-292, 481
deponent verbs, 338, 339, 493
descriptive ablative and genitive, 441-
 445
descriptive relative clause, with the
 subjv., 389, 390
deus, declension of, 468
difference, measure of, 316, 317
diphthongs, 6
direct statements, 414
distributive numerals, 327. 3, 334
domī, locative, 267
domus, declension of, 468
duo, declension of, 479
duration of time, expressed by the
 acc., 336

ē-declension of nouns, 272, 273, 467
ē-verbs, conjugation of, 489
ē-verbs, conjugation of, 490
ego, declension of, 280, 480
enclitics, 16
eō, conjugation of, 499
extent of space, expressed by the acc.,
 336

fearing, subjv. after verbs of, 370-
 372
ferō, conjugation of, 498
fifth or ē-declension, 272, 273, 467
filia, declension of, 67
filius, declension of, 87-89
finite verb, defined, 173
fiō, conjugation of, 500
first conjugation, 488
first or ā-declension, 57, 461
fourth conjugation, 491
fourth or u-declension, 259, 260, 466
from, how expressed, 178-181
future participle, formation of, 374. c
future perfect, formation of, active.
 187. 3; passive, 202
future tense, formation of, 137, 156

gender
 in English and in Latin, 60
 in the first declension, 61
 in the second declension, 72
 in the third declension, 247
 in the fourth declension, 260
 in the fifth declension, 272
general observations on declension, 74
genitive case
 English equivalents of, 33
 of description, 443, 445
 of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 87
 partitive, 331
 possessive, 38, 409
gerund, a verbal noun, 402, 403
gerundive, a verbal adjective, 404;
 with *ad* to express purpose, 407

hic, declension and use of, 290, 291
how to read Latin, 17

i, consonant, 3
i-stems of nouns, 231, 241-244
i-verbs, conjugation of, 491
īdem, declension of, 287, 481
iēns, declension of, 472
ille, declension and use of, 290-293
 481

- imperative, formation of 161, 175; irregular, 161. 2 in commands, 161
- imperfect indicative, formation and use of, 133, 134, 165. 1
- imperfect subjunctive, 354
- indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 296, 297, 484-487
- independent clauses, 219
- indirect object, 44, 45
- indirect questions, 430-432
- indirect statements, 414-419
- infinitive
as object, 213
as subject, 216
complementary, 215
definition of, 173
does not express purpose, 352
formation of, 126, 174, 205, 206
in indirect statements, 415-419
used as in English, 213-216
- inflection, defined, 23
- instrument, abl. of, 100. *b*, 103
- intensive pronoun, *ipse*, declension and use of, 285, 286, 481
- interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 225-227, 483
- intransitive verbs, defined, 20. *a*; with the dative, 153
- īō*-verbs of the third conj., 492
- ipse*, declension and use of, 285, 481
- irregular adjectives, 108
- irregular comparison, of adjectives, 307, 311, 312; of adverbs, 323
- irregular nouns, 67, 246, 468
- irregular verbs, 494-500
- is*, declension and use of, 113-116
- iste*, declension and use of, 290, 292, 481
- iter*, declension of, 468
- Latin word order, 68
- locative case, 267
- magis and maximē, comparison by, 302
- mālō, conjugation of, 497
- manner, abl. of, 105
- means, abl. of, 103
- measure of difference, abl. of, 316, 317
- mille, declension of, 479; construction with, 331. *a*, *b*
- moods, defined, 121
- ne, enclitic, in questions, 210
- nē, conj., *that not, lest*, with negative clauses of purpose, 350. II; with verbs of fearing, 370
- nine irregular adjectives, 108-110
- nōlō, conjugation of, 497
- nominative case, 35, 36
- nōnne, in questions, 210
- nōs, declension of, 280, 480
- nouns, 19. 2
first declension, 57, 461
second declension, 71-74, 87-92, 462
third declension, 230-247, 463-465
fourth declension, 259, 260, 466
fifth declension, 272, 273, 467
- num, in questions, 210
- number, 24
- numerals, 327-334, 478, 479
- o-declension of nouns, 71-74, 87-92, 462
- object, 20; direct, 37; indirect, 44, 45
- order of words, 68
- ordinal numerals, 327. 2, 478
- participial stem, 201. 2
- participles, defined, 203
agreement of, 204
formation, of present, 374. *b*; of perfect, 201; of future, 374. *c*, *d*
of deponent verbs, 375
tenses of, 376
translated by a clause, 377
- partitive genitive, 330, 331
- passive voice, defined, 163; formation of, 164, 202
- penult, 9. 3; accent of, 15
- perfect indicative
formation, in the active, 185, 186;
in the passive, 202

meaning of, 190
 definite, 190
 indefinite, 190
 distinguished from the imperfect,
 190
 perfect infinitive, active, 195; passive,
 205
 perfect passive participle, 201
 perfect stem, 185
 perfect subjunctive, active, 361; pas-
 sive, 362
 person, 122
 personal endings, active, 122; passive,
 164
 personal pronouns, 280, 480
 place, where, whither, whence, 263-265;
 names of towns and *domus* and
 rūs, 266-268
 pluperfect indicative, active, 187. 2;
 passive, 202
 pluperfect subjunctive, active, 361;
 passive, 363
 plūs, declension of, 313
 possessive pronouns, 97, 98
 possum, conjugation of, 495
 predicate, defined, 19
 predicate adjective, defined, 55
 predicate noun, 75, 76
 prepositions, with the abl., 209; with
 the acc., 340
 present indicative, 128, 130, 147
 present stem, 126. *a*
 present subjunctive, 344
 primary tenses, 356
 principal parts, 183
 pronouns
 classification of, 278
 defined, 19. 2. *a*
 demonstrative, 481
 indefinite, 297, 484-487
 intensive, 285, 286, 481
 interrogative, 483
 personal, 480
 possessive, 97, 98
 reflexive, 281
 relative, 220, 221

pronunciation, 4-7
 prōsum, conjugation of, 496
 purpose
 dative of, 436, 437
 expressed by the gerund or gerun-
 dive with *ad*, 407
 not expressed by the infinitive,
 352
 subjunctive of, 348-350, 365-367

 quality, gen. or abl. of, 441-445
 quam, with a comparative, 308
 quantity, 11-13
 questions, direct, 210; indirect, 430-432
 quī, declension and use of, 220, 221, 482
 quīdam, declension of, 485
 quis, declension and use of, 225-227,
 483
 quisquam, declension of, 486
 quisque, declension of, 484

 reflexive pronouns, 281
 relative clauses of characteristic or
 description, 389, 390
 relative clauses of purpose, 348, 349
 relative pronouns, 220, 221
 result clauses, 384-387
 reviews, 502-528
 rūs, constructions of, 266

 sē, distinguished from *ipse*, 285. *a*
 second conjugation, 489
 second or o-declension, 71-93, 462
 sentences, simple, complex, compound,
 219
 separation, abl. of, 180
 separative ablative, 178-181
 sequence of tenses, 356-358
 space, extent of, expressed by the
 acc., 336
 specification, abl. of, 398
 stems, of nouns, 230; of verbs, 184
 subject, defined, 19. 2; of the infini-
 tive, 213, 214
 subjunctive, formation
 of the present, 344

- of the imperfect, 354
- of the perfect, 361, 362
- of the pluperfect, 361. *c*, 363
- subjunctive constructions**
 - characteristic or description, 389, 390
 - indirect questions, 430-432
 - purpose, 349, 366, 372
 - result, 385, 386
 - time, cause, or concession, with *cum*, 395, 396
- subjunctive ideas**, 346
- subjunctive tenses**, 342, 343
- subordinate clauses**, 219
- sui**, declension of, 281, 480
- sum**, conjugation of, 494
- suus**, use of, 98. *c*, 116
- syllables**, 8; division of, 9; quantity of, 13
- syntax**, rules of, 501
- temporal clauses with *cum***, 395, 396
- tense**, defined, 120
- tense signs**
 - imperfect, 133
 - future, 137, 156
 - pluperfect active, 187. 2
 - future perfect active, 187. 3
- tenses**, primary and secondary, 356; sequence of, 357, 358
- third conjugation**, 490, 492
- third declension of nouns**
 - classes, 231, 463
 - consonant stems, 232-238, 464
 - gender, 247
 - i*-stems, 241-244, 465
 - irregular nouns, 246
- time**, abl. of, 275
- time**, acc. of, 336
- towns**, rules for names of, 266, 267, 268
- transitive verb**, 20. *a*
- trēs**, declension of, 479
- tū**, declension of, 280, 480
- tuus**, compared with *vester*, 98. *b*
- u-declension of nouns**, 259, 260, 466
- ultima**, 9. 3
- verbs**
 - agreement of, 28
 - conjugation of, 126, 488-491
 - deponent, 338, 339, 493
 - irregular, 494-500
 - personal endings of, 122, 164
 - principal parts of, 183
- vester**, compared with *tuus*, 98. *b*
- vīs**, declension of, 468
- vocabularies**
 - English-Latin, pp. 332-343
 - Latin-English, pp. 299-331
 - special, pp. 283-298
- vocative case**, 56. *a*
 - of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, 73. *b*
 - of proper nouns in *-ius* and of *filius*, 88
- voice**, defined, 163
- volō**, conjugation of, 497
- vōs**, declension of, 280, 480
- vowels**, sounds of, 5, 6; quantity of, 12

PROPERTY OF

BOARD OF EDUCATION

